A. BRACHET

The Public School Elementary French Grammar

PART. I. ACCIDENCE

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

1/6

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

Publishers and Foreign Booksellers,

LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.

HACHETTE'S SERIES OF MODERN FRENCH AUTHORS.

With English Notes, etc., by eminent Professors.

(The Editors' Names are placed in Parenthesis.)

	s.	d.
About. Contes choisis, etc. (Brette, Masson and Testard)	2	0
***About.** La Fille du Chanoine. (Testard)	0	10
***About.** L'Homme à l'Oreille cassée. (Testard)	2	6
***About.** Nouvelles, etc. (Huguenet)	2	0
***About.** Le Roi des Montagnes. (Testard)	2	0
Vocabulary (separately)	0	6
Aubigné. Histoire de Bayart. (Bué)	2	0
Augier et Sandeau. Le Gendre de M. Poirier. (Petilleau)	2	0
Balzac. EugénieGrandet.(Petilleau)	2	0
Bernardin de St. Pierre. Paul et Virginie. (Dubourg)	0	10
***Beissier.** Histoire d'un Moineau. (Lallemand)	0	10
***Bonnechose.** Bertrand du Guesclin. (Ludwig)	2	0
***Bonnechose.** Lazare Hoche. (Bué)	1	6
Chateaubriand. Aventures du dernier Abencérage (Roulier)	0	10
***Claretie, J. Pierrille.** (Naftel)	2	0
Daudet, A. Le Petit Chose. Part I.: Le Petit Chose en Province. (Petilleau)	2	0
Daudet, A. LePetitChose. Part II.: Le Petit Chose à Paris. (Petilleau). *In preparation*	2	0
***Dumas.** Un Drame de la Mer. (Clapin)	0	10
***Dumas.** L'Exploit du Chevalier d'Artagnan. (Berthon)	2	0
* —— The Same, Part I (Chapters 1 to 13) separately. (Berthon)	1	0
—— **Exercises for re-translation** based on the First Part of 'L'Exploit du Chevalier d'Artagnan'	0	8
Dumas. La Tulipe Noire. (Blouët)	1	6
Vocabulary to 'La Tulipe Noire'	0	6
Énault. Le Chien du Capitaine, (H. Bué)	1	6
Erckmann-Chatrian. Le Conscrit. (Berthon)	3	0
—— Vocabulary to 'Le Conscrit'	0	6
Erckmann-Chatrian. Waterloo. (Naftel)	3	0
—— Vocabulary to 'Waterloo'	0	6
Erckmann-Chatrian. Madame Thérèse. (Oger)	3	0
—— Vocabulary to 'Madame Thérèse'	0	6
Erckmann-Chatrian. Le Blocus. (F. Spencer)	3	0
—— Vocabulary to 'Le Blocus'	0	6
***Feuillet.** Roman d'un jeune homme pauvre. (H. Bué)	3	6
***Féval, P.** Chouans et Bleus. (Ludwig)	2	0
***Genin.** Le Petit Tailleur Bouton. (Attwell.)	0	10
Guizot. Alfred le Grand.(Lallemand)	2	6
Guizot. Edouard III. (Clapin)	1	6
Guizot. Guillaume le Conquérant. (Dubourg)	2	0
***Guizot.** Récits Historiques. Vol. I. (Clapin)	1	6
***Guizot.** Récits Historiques. Vol. II. (Naftel)	1	6
Halévy. L'Abbé Constantin. (Petilleau)	3	6
Vocabulary to 'L'Abbé Constantin'	0	6
***Hugo.** La Chute (Épisode tiré de 'Les Misérables'). (Berthon)	1	6
Lacombe. Petite Histoire du Peuple Français. (Bué)	2	0
***Lamartine.** La Bataille de Trafalgar. (Clapin)	0	10
Lamartine. Christophe Colomb. (Clapin)	1	6
***Lamartine.** Jeanne d'Arc. (Oger)	1	6
***Lamartine.** Le Tailleur de Pierres de Saint-Point. (Barlet)	1	6
***Macé.** Contes du Petit Château. Ire Serie. (Barlet)	1	0
***Macé.** Contes du Petit Château. 2e Serie. (Barlet)	1	0
***Macé.** Contes du Petit Château. 3e Serie. (Barlet)	1	0
Maistre, X. de. La Jeune Sibérienne; Le Lépreux de la Cité d'Aoste. (V. Kastner)	1	6
—— Vocabulary to same	0	6

* *The Volumes indicated by Asterisks* (*) *have French-English Vocabularies appended.*

1. 1902.]

[*Continued on next page.*

GALE
Bookseller, Bookbinder
& Stationer

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

Publishers and Foreign Booksellers.

LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.

Hachette's Modern French Authors.—*Continued.*

(The Editors' Names are placed in Parenthesis.)

	s.	d.
*Maistre, X. de. Les Prisonniers du Caucase. (J. Spiers)	0	10
*Maistre, X. de. Un Voyage autour de ma Chambre. (Bué)	0	10
*Malot. Capi et sa Troupe. Episode de "Sans Famille." (F. Tarver)	1	6
*Malot. L'Ile Déserte. (Naftel)	1	6
*Malot. Remi et ses Amis. Episode de "Sans Famille." (Rey)	1	6
—— Exercises for re-translation based on 'Remi et ses Amis'	0	8
*Malot. Remi en Angleterre. (Naftel)	1	6
—— Exercises for re-translation based on 'Remi en Angleterre'	0	8
*Malot. Sous Terre. Episode de "Sans Famille." (Dupuis)	1	6
*Malot. Sur Mer. (Testard)	1	6
*Marmier. Le Protégé de Marie-Antoinette. (Belfond)	2	0
*Mérimée. Chronique du Règne de Charles IX. (Rey)	2	0
*Mérimée. Colomba. (Brette)	2	0
Vocabulary to "Colomba"	0	6
Michaud. Histoire de la Première Croisade. (Naftel)	2	0
*Michelet. Louis XI et Charles le Téméraire. (Davis)	2	0
*Michelet. Récits d'Histoire de France. (Esclangon). Part I.	2	0
*Michelet. Récits d'Histoire de France. (Esclangon). Part II	2	0
*Musset. Croisilles. (Masson et H. Tarver)	0	10
*Musset. Histoire d'un Merle blanc. (Delhavé)	0	10
*Musset. Pierre et Camille. (Masson et H. Tarver)	0	10
Musset. Selections. (Masson)	2	0
*Ohnet, G. Le Chant du Cygne. (Testard)	2	0
*Ponsard. Charlotte Corday. (Davis)	2	0
Ponsard. Le Lion Amoureux. (De Candole)	2	0
Pressensé. Rosa. (Masson)	2	0
Quinet. Lettres à sa Mère. (Kastner)	2	0
*Richebourg. Deux Amis. (Julien)	0	10
*Rousset. Alma et Balaclava. (Huguenet)	0	10
*Rousset. La Bataille d'Inkermann. (L. Sers)	0	10
Saint-Germain. Pour une Epingle. (Kastner)	2	0
Saintine. Picciola. (Baume)	1	6
—— Vocabulary to "Picciola"	0	6
*Sand. La Mare au Diable. (Davis)	1	6
Sardou. Perle Noire. (Lamart)	1	6
Scribe. Bertrand et Raton (Bué)	1	6
Souvestre. Au Coin du Feu. (Lallemand)	1	6
Souvestre. Un Philosophe sous les Toits. (J. Bué)	1	6
—— Vocabulary to same	0	6
*Souvestre. Une Philosophe sous les Toits. (H. Attwell)	1	6
*Souvestre. Le Serf. (Davis)	0	10
*Souvestre. Le Chevrier de Lorraine. (Davis)	0	10
*Souvestre. Le Serf. Le Chevrier de Lorraine (in one vol.)	1	6
—— The Vocabulary to "Le Serf and "Le Chevrier de Lorraine," separately	0	6
Staël, Mme. de. Le Directoire. (Oger)	1	6
—— Key to a Series of Examination Papers on "Directoire." (Oger)	1	0
Theuriet. Les Enchantements de la Forêt. (Lallemand)	2	6
Thierry, Aug. Récits des Temps Mérovingiens. I.-III. (Testard)	2	0
Thierry, Augustin. Récits IV.—VII. (Testard)	2	0
Töpffer. Histoire de Charles, Histoire de Jules. (Brette)	0	10
Vigny. Cinq Mars. (Oger)	3	6
*Vigny. Le Canne de Jonc. (Clapin)	1	6
Villemain. Lascaris. (Dupuis)	1	6
Witt. De Glaçons en Glaçons. (L. Delbos)	1	6
Witt. Derrière les Haies. (De Bussy)	2	0
*Witt. Les Héroines de Harlem. (Barbier)	2	0
Zeller. François Ier. (Petilleau)	2	0
Zeller. Henry IV. (Barlet)	2	0
Zola. L'Attaque du Moulin. (Julien)	1	6

The Volumes indicated by Asterisks (*) have French-English Vocabularies appended.

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

Publishers and Foreign Booksellers.

LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.

Hachette's Modern French Authors.—*Continued.*

	s.	d.
Half-Hours with Modern French Authors—Prose and Verse (*New and enlarged edition*), including Typical Extracts from popular Writers of the Day. One hundred and twenty-five choice pieces of high literary merit, providing good and varied material in every kind of style. Edited with Vocabulary by JULES LAZARE, B. ès L.	2	0
Unseen Passages from Modern French Authors—Prose and Verse (*New and enlarged edition*), for Practice in French Reading and Translation at sight. (Contains the same pieces as in '*Half-Hours with Modern French Authors*' (see above) but without Vocabulary or any other 'Aid')	1	6
Petits Chefs-d'Œuvre contemporains. Short attractive Tales by popular Authors (Arène, Claretie, Coppée, Maupassant, Richepin and Theuriet), with Notes and Vocabulary by JULES LAZARE, B. ès L.	1	6
Gems of Modern French Poetry, including typical Selections from contemporary French Poets (Coppée, Gautier, V. Hugo, Lamartine, Manuel, A. de Musset, Sully-Prudhomme, Theuriet, etc., etc.), with Introduction on French Versification, Biographical Notices, and Vocabulary in the Order of the Text by JULES LAZARE, B. ès L.	1	6
Premières Lectures en Prose et en Vers, for Elementary and Intermediate Classes. Short and Interesting Narratives *in easy French* by Modern Authors, with Conversational Questions and a full Vocabulary, by JULES LAZARE, B. ès L.	1	0

THÉATRE FRANÇAIS.

Popular French Plays. With Summaries of the Plots and Explanatory Notes by experienced French Teachers.

FIRST SERIES (for Schools and Families).

Price per Volume, in Paper Cover, 9d.

Labiche et Jolly. Le Baron de Fourchevif.
Scribe, E. La Camaraderie, ou La courte Échelle.
Legouvé et Labiche. La Cigale chez les Fourmis.
Raymond et Ordonneau. Maître Corbeau.
Labiche, Lefranc et Jessé. Le Major Cravachon.
Gréville, H. Ma Tante.
Bisson, A. Le Sanglier
Legouvé, E. Ma Fille et mon Bien. La Matinée d'une Étoile.
Bornier, H. de. Un Cousin de Passage.
Ordonneau, Valabrègue et Keroul. Les Boulinard.
Ferrier, P. Le Codicille.
Labiche, E. La Lettre chargée.
Gill et Richard. Un Caissier.
Gréville, H. A la Campagne.
Augier et Sandeau. Le Gendre de M. Poirier.
Gréville, H. Les Cloches cassées.
Labiche et Martin. La Poudre aux Yeux.

SECOND SERIES (for Adult Students).

Price per Volume, in Paper Cover, 1s.

Coppée, F. Le Passant.
Scribe, E. Une Chaîne.
Damien, E. La Peur d'être grand'mère.
Ohnet, G. Le Maître de Forges.
Ordonneau et Chivot. Les Petites Godin
Coppée, F. Pour la Couronne.

HACHETTE'S Catalogue with full particulars of above, free on application.

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR

IN TWO PARTS

By AUGUSTE BRACHET

Adapted for the use of English Schools and Persons engaged in Elementary Teaching

BY THE LATE

REV. P. H. E. BRETTE, B.D.

OF CHRIST'S HOSPITAL, LONDON

AND

GUSTAVE MASSON, B.A.

OF HARROW SCHOOL

FORMERLY EXAMINERS IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON

NEW EDITION

REVISED BY

ELPHÈGE JANAU

Assistant French Master, Christ's Hospital, London; late Assistant Examiner in the University of London

PART I.—ACCIDENCE

With Notes explaining the 'tolérances' authorised by the French Minister of Public Instruction (February 1901)

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

LONDON: 18 KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS

PARIS: 79 BOULEVARD SAINT-GERMAIN

1901

[*All rights reserved*]

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE PRESENT EDITION. (OCTOBER 1901.)

In the present edition will be found many simplifications of certain difficulties in French Grammar, etc., which were felt—especially in elementary schools and classes—to be vexatious and useless. These simplifications have been authorised by the French Minister of Public Instruction, and henceforth, no mistakes will be counted against candidates at examinations who avail themselves of the licences afforded by this new Ministerial Decree (February 1901).

It is hardly necessary to remark, that the new regulations are by no means intended to revolutionise or suppress any fundamental rule of French Grammar, but simply to relieve the pupil of the need of mastering certain grammatical subtleties which the authorities regard as *not essential* to the study of the Syntax and Orthography of the language.

The leading examining bodies in the United Kingdom (including H.M. Civil Service Commissioners; the Society of Arts; the Delegates of the Local Examinations, Oxford; the College of Preceptors, etc., etc.) have sanctioned these changes; and Students, Professors, and Examiners, will now be free to take advantage of the options and facilities afforded by this new and important decision.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THE adapted translation of M. Brachet's *Nouvelle Grammaire Française*, published by us at the beginning of the year, and which has been received with such signal success, was intended to meet the wants of pupils belonging to our ordinary Grammar Schools. On the present occasion we address ourselves to those with whom philological details, and discussions of etymological or scientific problems would be completely out of place.

M. Brachet's *Petite Grammaire* simply gives the various rules both of accidence and of syntax, without attempting to enter into explanations which beginners nine or ten years old could not possibly understand. We have adopted the same method, but introduced into the work all modifications necessary for making our 'ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR' a practical and useful book for English class-rooms. Each section is followed by a set of questions, and by exercises which should be written out and committed to memory after they have been corrected.

In many instances the Accidence alone is required for examination purposes; accordingly we have thought it best to print the Grammar in two distinct parts, containing respectively the Accidence and the Syntax, each part being followed by a complete French-English and English-French Vocabulary. As the translation of the *Nouvelle Grammaire Française* is now adopted

in most of our English Grammar and Preparatory Schools, so the *Petite Grammaire*, by its cheapness and completeness, will commend itself to School Boards and persons engaged in elementary teaching.

It gives us much pleasure to acknowledge the valuable assistance which Mr. E. JANAU, French Master at Blackheath Proprietary School, has given us in preparing the present volume.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THE sale of several thousand copies of this little work in less than six months is a sufficient proof that it has met a want felt by the persons for whom it was chiefly designed. The present edition, thoroughly revised and corrected, is accompanied by a very complete French-English and English-French Vocabulary, arranged by Mr. A. DUPUIS, B.A., First French Master at King's College School, to whom we have to tender our thanks for his kind assistance; beginners will thus be spared the necessity of referring to separate dictionaries.

We take the opportunity of reminding our friends that a supplementary set of Exercises on the Accidence and the Syntax will be ready very shortly.

P. H. ERNEST BRETTE.
GUSTAVE MASSON.

March 1877.

PREFACE TO THE NEW EDITION

THE great and steadily-increasing popularity of this Grammar has made it necessary for the publishers to issue a new edition worthy of the support hitherto accorded to it, and calculated to ensure a continuation of the favour in which it has been held by teachers of French.

The work has undergone a thorough revision, and numerous alterations have been made, which will render the rules, if possible, clearer in some places and more complete in others. The new and clear type used for this edition will be found to be an improvement.

Unfortunately it has been impossible to keep, as was at first hoped, an exact correspondence in the pages with the previous editions; but as the arrangement of the paragraphs has been scrupulously maintained throughout, there will be no difficulty in using the new and the old editions together in class teaching.

ELPHÈGE JANAU.

January 1892.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

PAGE

Preliminary Remarks on the History and Geography of the French Language 1
Object and Definition of Grammar 6

BOOK I.—STUDY OF LETTERS.

CHAPTER I.

Of the French Alphabet 7
SECTION I.—Of the Vowels 8
SECTION II.—Of the Consonants 11

CHAPTER II.

Of Syllables,—Orthographic Signs 14

BOOK II.—STUDY OF WORDS.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Noun or Substantive 18
SECTION I.—Of Gender in Nouns 19
SECTION II.—Of Number in Nouns 21
SECTION III.—Formation of Substantives . . . 24

CHAPTER II.

Of the Article 33

CHAPTER III.

Of the Adjective 35
SECTION I.—Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives 36
SECTION II.—Formation of the Plural of Adjectives . 40
SECTION III.—Of the Degrees of Signification in Adjectives 42
SECTION IV.—Formation of Adjectives 44
SECTION V.—Agreement of the Adjective with the Substantive 47

PAGE

SECTION VI.—Determinative Adjectives 47
I. Numeral Adjectives 47
Comparative Table of the Numeral Adjectives 49
II. Demonstrative Adjectives 52
III. Possessive Adjectives 53
SECTION VII.—Indefinite Adjectives 54

CHAPTER IV.

Of the Pronoun 56
SECTION I.—Personal Pronouns 57
SECTION II.—Demonstrative Pronouns 61
SECTION III.—Possessive Pronouns 62
SECTION IV.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns . 64
SECTION V.—Indefinite Pronouns 66

CHAPTER V.

Of the Verb 68
1. Stem.—2. Termination 69
3. Numbers 69
4. Persons 70
5. Moods 70
6. Tenses 71
Auxiliary Verbs 72
Conjugation 73
SECTION I.—Auxiliary Verbs 74
I. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb **avoir** (=*to have*) 74
II. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb **être** (=*to be*) 78
SECTION II.—Active Verbs 82
I. First Conjugation—Verb **aimer** (=*to love*) . 82
II. Second Conjugation—Verb **finir** (=*to finish*) . 86
III. Third Conjugation—Verb **recevoir** (=*to receive*) 89
IV. Fourth Conjugation—Verb **rompre** (=*to break*) 93
SECTION III.—Conjugation of Verbs.—1. Interrogatively; 2. Negatively; 3. Interrogatively with a negative 96
SECTION IV.—Remarks on the Formation of the Tenses 99
SECTION V.—Passive Verbs 103
Conjugation of the Passive Verb **être aimé** (=*to be loved*) 104

PAGE

SECTION VI.—Neuter Verbs 107
Conjugation of the Verb **tomber** (=*to fall*) . . 108
SECTION VII.—Reflexive Verbs 110
Conjugation of the Reflexive Verb **se reposer** (=*to rest*) 111
SECTION VIII.—Impersonal Verbs 115
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb **neiger** (=*to snow*) 116
SECTION IX.—Irregular and Defective Verbs . . 117
1. First Conjugation: **er** 117
2. Second Conjugation in **ir** with Imperfect in **issais** 119
3. Second (direct) Conjugation in **ir** . . . 120
4. Third Conjugation: **oir** 127
5. Fourth Conjugation: **re** 133
SECTION X.—Formation of the Verbs 149
SECTION XI.—Rules for the Agreement of the Verb with its Subject 151

CHAPTER VI.

Of the Participle 152

CHAPTER VII.

Of the Adverb 154

CHAPTER VIII.

Of the Preposition 159
SECTION I.—Formation of the Simple Prepositions . 160
SECTION II.—Formation of Prepositive Locutions . 161
SECTION III.—Government of Prepositions . . . 162

CHAPTER IX.

Of the Conjunction 163

CHAPTER X.

Of the Interjection 165

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb **avoir** (=*to have*) negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negative 167

PAGE

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb être (=*to be*) negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negative 171

Models of reflexive verbs conjugated negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negative . 175

Index 181

French-English Vocabulary 185

English-French Vocabulary 206

EXPLANATION OF SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

a. / act.	active
adj.	adjective
adv	adverb
art.	article
aux.	auxiliary
coll.	collective
comp.	comparative
conj.	conjunction
def.	defective
dem.	demonstrative
f. / fem.	feminine
ind.	indefinite, indicative
interr.	interrogative
m. / masc.	masculine
n.	neuter
num.	numeral
obj.	object
p.	proper
part.	participle
pers.	personal
pl.	plural
poss.	possessive
pr. / pron.	pronoun
prep.	preposition
pres.	present
r. / ref.	reflexive
rel.	relative
s.	substantive
s.f.	substantive, feminine
s.m.	substantive, masculine
s.m.f.	substantive, masculine *or* feminine
sub.	subject
v.	verb
v.a.	verb active
v.def.	verb defective
v.int.	verb intransitive
v.n.	verb neuter
v.r.	verb reflexive
v.t.	verb transitive

In the Exercises

Words in *italics* must not be translated;

Words followed by (*m.*) or (*f.*) are the same—the (*m.*) or (*f.*) shows their gender in French;

Words in brackets must be translated into French although unnecessary or incorrect in English.

INTRODUCTION

PRELIMINARY REMARKS ON THE HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE

1. Geography.—The French language extends over the whole of France, with the exception of one single province, Brittany, where, out of a population of 1,800,000, one million of individuals speak a language known by the name of **Bas-Breton**, which is Celtic in its origin. To this important exception three small groups can be further added: the department of the North, where 200,000 inhabitants out of 1,200,000 speak the **Flemish language**, an offshoot from the German; the department of Lower Pyrenees, where 120,000 persons speak the **Basque**, a very ancient idiom, the origin of which is unknown; finally, the department of Eastern Pyrenees (formerly the province of Roussillon), where 130,000 inhabitants speak the **Catalonian** language, derived from the Latin.

If the domains of the French language do not correspond exactly with the present territory of France, they include, on the other hand, several important districts outside the limits of that country, which represent an aggregate of a little more than 3,060,000 inhabitants, distributed as follows:—Belgium, 1,600,000; Germany, 1,000,000; French Switzerland, 400,000; finally, the Channel Islands, 60,000.

To these numbers we must add, out of Europe, the English colonies of Canada and Mauritius, which have retained the use of the French language, to say nothing of the French settlements (Algeria, Guiana, Senegal, etc.); we find thus 1,500,000 inhabitants more to be placed to the account of the French linguistic wealth.

With reference to the language, France is divided into two regions, **North** and **South**, the limits of which can be marked by tracing on the map a line extending from La Rochelle to Grenoble.

North of this line all cultivated people speak French; the peasants understand French, but make use of *patois* closely connected with it. These *patois* are four in number: 1. The **Norman**, spoken in the western district; 2. The **Picard**, in the north-western; 3. The **Lorrain**, in the eastern; 4. The **Burgundian**, in the central and

south-eastern. The analogy which these *patois* present with the French language has caused them to be collectively designated as *French patois.*

South of the line, linguistic circumstances are entirely different. Cultivated people, indeed, understand and write French; but in the relations they hold with each other they have recourse by preference (even in the large towns) to their own *patois*, which is an idiom as different from French as is Italian or Spanish. The inhabitants of the rural districts, notwithstanding the efforts made by the teachers in elementary schools, seldom speak anything but these *patois*, which are likewise four in number:—1. The **Gascon**; 2. The **Limousin**; 3. The **Languedocian**; and 4. The **Provençal**; the names sufficiently point out the provinces where these idioms are respectively used; they are called collectively *Provençal patois*, in opposition to the *French patois* spoken north of the line mentioned above.

2. **Latin introduced into Gaul.**—Every one knows that the earliest inhabitants of Gaul, so far as we are aware, at least, were the *Galli*, who spoke a language belonging to the *Celtic* family, that is to say, akin to the idioms used in France by the natives of Lower Brittany, and, in the British Isles, by the Scotch Highlanders, the Irish, and the Welsh.

In the course of the first century B.C., the legions led by Cæsar conquered Gaul, and reduced it to the position of a Roman province. Far superior to the *Galli*, in point both of science and of civilisation, the Romans forced upon them the Latin language together with the yoke, in the same way as the French have forced their language upon the Arabs of Algeria. It seems to be a historical law that, when one people conquers another, the language of the more highly civilised people is adopted by the other.

3. **Classical and popular Latin.**—At Rome, however, just as in the France of the nineteenth century, there were two languages co-existing: that of the people and the peasants, the **popular Latin**, in a word; and that of the learned and the *literati*, which is known as **classical** or **literary Latin**—the former was less fettered, the latter was more refined: but both often employed different words to express the same idea. Thus, whilst the classical *Latin* had the substantive *equus* as an equivalent for *horse*, the colloquial Latin said *caballus*; whence the French *cheval.*

It is the **colloquial Latin**, naturally, which the Roman soldiers introduced amongst the peasants of Gaul; these, in their turn, transformed it into French, by dint of altering the pronunciation. If we notice how the English who speak the French language all modify

the pronunciation of the French in the same manner, we shall easily understand how Latin uttered by the *Galli* was altered according to one uniform system; it is precisely this altered Latin which is called *French*.

4. **Romance language.**—The colloquial Latin thus changed through the Celtic pronunciation began to make its appearance about the fifth century, at the downfall of the Roman empire, as a distinct language, which the *savants* of the day contemptuously called *lingua Romana Rustica* (the Latin of the peasants); hence the designation **Romance language**. The invasion of the barbarians was then destroying the empire; in the storm, everything bearing the Roman stamp disappeared—administration, schools, justice, aristocracy, literature; the *literary* Latin shared the same fate—that idiom which had been both the organ and the result of intellectual activity.

5. **Langue d'oïl and langue d'oc.**—As colloquial Latin produced **French** in Gaul, so it became **Italian** in Italy, and **Spanish** in Spain. In France the *Romance language* was subdivided into two great varieties corresponding with the rival races of the north and south. North of the Loire we find the *Langue d'oïl*, or French, properly so called; south of the Loire, we find the *Langue d'oc*, or Provençal; these curious names result from the custom, frequently resorted to during the Middle Ages, of designating languages by the sign of affirmation *oui* (yes); *oui* was *oïl* in the north, and *oc* in the south.

6. **Dialects of the langue d'oïl.**—The northern language, the *Langue d'oïl*, was in its turn divided, during the eleventh century, into four principal dialects: the **Norman**, the **Picard**, the **Burgundian**, and, finally, the **French** dialect, which was originally the one spoken in the province called *Ile-de-France*. (In the Middle Ages the name *Français* was given specially to the inhabitants of Ile-de-France.) These four dialects were equal in power and in influence, because there did not exist then, as there does to-day, one single centre, one capital of the kingdom, capable of setting to the whole country the model of elegant speaking. The Dukes, whether of Normandy or of Burgundy, the equals of the Dukes of France, (we mean, of Ile-de-France), employed respectively in their official acts the language of their province, Norman or Burgundian.

How was it that these four languages were subsequently reduced to one? Why was the *French* dialect ultimately adopted as the common language, rather than the Burgundian or the Norman? As long as the Capetian monarchs, humble lords of Ile-de-France and of Orléanais, remained destitute of all influence

beyond the limits of their royal domain (that is to say, from the tenth to the twelfth century), the French dialect enjoyed no notoriety out of these two provinces. But with the beginning of the twelfth century, the petty Kings of France began to extend their possessions at their neighbours' expense; they annexed successively Berry (1101), Touraine (1203), Normandy (1204), Champagne (1284), and Picardy came permanently into their power in 1482. They brought with them into these newly-acquired provinces the dialect of Ile-de-France, the *French*, which took, in each of them, the place of the native dialect; and being the *language of the king*, it was soon adopted as the speech of good society. Resisting this invasion, the people alone, in each province, retained their old dialect, and refused to accept the French. As they ceased then to be used in writing, the idioms of Picardy, Burgundy, and Normandy fell immediately from the rank of *dialects* (that is to say, of *literary* languages both written and spoken) to the humble position of *patois* (we mean of idioms not written, but only spoken). This date (the fourteenth century), when the provincial dialects became patois, whilst the dialect of Ile-de-France assumed the place of the common language of the kingdom, marked the death of the *Langue d'oïl* and the historical birth of the *French language.*

The *patois*, which we find at the present day in the rural districts of Picardy, Normandy, and Burgundy, are not therefore, as is commonly believed, the *literary French corrupted on the lips of the peasants*; they are the *débris* of the old provincial dialects reduced by political events from the rank of written languages to that of *patois.*

7. **Dialects of the langue d'oc.**—The *Langue d'oïl* had disappeared to make room for the French; south of the Loire, the *Langue d'oc* likewise vanished away. The terrible rivalry between the inhabitants of the south and those of the north was ended by the crusade against the Albigenses, and the defeat of the Southerners struck the death-blow at the *Langue d'oc.* In 1272, Languedoc was annexed to France, and the introduction of the French language speedily followed as a matter of course. The *Langue d'oc* ceased to be used as a medium for writing; it fell from the rank of a literary language to that of a patois, and the **Limousin, Gascon, Languedocian,** and **Provençal** patois, which still persist at the present day in the rural districts of southern France, are merely the *débris* of that *Langue d'oc* which shone with so brilliant a lustre in the time of the troubadours.

8. **Recapitulation.**—To sum up: we see that French is by no means

formed from the corrupted *débris* of the Celtic language, as some grammarians still persist in saying; and its history may be concisely stated thus: the *popular* Latin, introduced into Gaul by the soldiers of Cæsar, soon took the place of the native language, the *Celtic*, and, through a series of slow and imperceptible transformations, gave birth to a new idiom, the **Romance language**, to which the barbarians added a certain number of German words, about 400 (such as *fief*, fief, *sénéchal*, seneschal, *baron*, baron, *échevin*, alderman, sheriff, etc.) relating to the feudal system, to war, and hunting. Towards the eighth century, this *Romance language* was divided into two branches: the *Langue d'oc*, south of the Loire, and the *Langue d'oïl*, north of that river. One of the four dialects of the *Langue d'oïl*, that of Ile-de-France, gradually supplanted all the others, and became, in the fourteenth century, the *French language*.

This old stock of the language may be called **popular French.**

9. **Foreign and learned words.**—Two classes of new words have become superadded, from the thirteenth century to the nineteenth.

A. Foreign words have been imported as the result of several political circumstances, the principal of which are (1) in the thirteenth century, the Crusades and the commercial relations with the East; (2) in the sixteenth, the Italian wars, and the influence of the Renaissance; (3) in the seventeenth, the influence exercised by Spain over the court of Louis XIII., and the wars of Germany with France; and (4) in the present century, the commercial, industrial, and social relations which the French are carrying on with England, and which are daily increasing.

To the first of these causes is due the introduction of a small number of Arabic or Oriental words (*sultan*, sultan, *caravane*, caravan, *derviche*, dervis, *alcool*, alcohol, *sequin*, sequin, etc.); to the second, the French language is indebted for more than five hundred words of Italian origin (especially terms of war and of the fine arts—*spadassin*, fighter *or* hired assassin, *brave*, brave, *gabion*, gabion, *parapet*, parapet;—*costume*, dress, *fresque*, fresco. *aquarelle*, water-colour, *galbe*, entasis, *torse*, torso, etc.); the third has contributed a few Spanish words (*mantille*, mantilla, *duègne*, duenna, *matamore*, bully, *hâbler*, to boast, etc.), and a certain number of special German military expressions (*vaguemestre*, baggage-master, *schlague*, military flogging, *bivouac*, bivouac, *blockhaus*, blockhouse, etc.); finally, the invasion of English words is still going on very steadily (*whist*, *turf*, *spleen*, *tunnel*, *wagon*, *rail*, *coke*, *express*, *fashionable*, *budget*, *jury*, etc.).*

* For the etymology of all these words, see Brachet's *Dictionnaire étymologique*.

B. Learned words.—There is another class of words formed by the learned. It began in the eleventh century, and has been increasing ever since. This **learned French** consists of words borrowed directly by the *savants*, either from the Greek (*autopsie, aristocratie, microscope, cosmographie*), or from the Latin (*relation, proportion, préméditation, précession, co-ordination*, etc.).

10. **Conclusion.**—Let us close these short historical remarks by showing in what proportions the three elements—**popular** French, words of **foreign origin**, and **learned** or **artificial** words—have combined to form the French language. We shall take as the basis of our calculation the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie française*, last edition, 1878, which contains about 32,000 words: out of these 20,000 are of **learned** or of **foreign** origin, leaving only 12,000 constituting what we have called **popular** *French*. Of these 12,000 words about 8000, such as *pauv***rette** (=poor creature), *faibl***ir** (=to grow weak), *maigr***ir** (=to get lean *or* thin), are immediately created by the French with the help of the simple words *pauvre* (=poor), *faible* (=weak), *maigre* (=lean), etc. The simple words, which constitute the real substratum of the language, are therefore reducible to about 4200, of which 3800 are of Latin origin, whilst the remaining 400 are German words introduced by the Teutonic conquerors at the time of the invasion (fifth century).

OBJECT AND DEFINITION OF GRAMMAR.

We express ourselves by means of **phrases**, which are composed of **words**; words, in their turn, are composed of **letters**.

The French grammar is the series of rules to be observed in the French language for the assemblage of *letters* into words, and the combination of *words* into *sentences*. Hence three divisions in the grammar: the study of **letters**, the study of **words**, and the study of **sentences**.

BOOK I

STUDY OF LETTERS.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE FRENCH ALPHABET.

1. We express our thoughts by means of *words*, which are composed of one or several *sounds*, represented in writing by signs called *letters*.

2. The collection of all the letters used in a language is called its *Alphabet*.

The French alphabet is composed of twenty-six letters, as follows:*

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W,† X, Y, Z.

These twenty-six letters do not express all the sounds of the French language; there are some other simple sounds which are expressed by joining together two letters of the alphabet, thus forming a new group. *Ch*, for instance, is a simple sound represented by two letters.

Why does the French alphabet allow this curious order in which consonants and vowels are jumbled together indiscriminately? Because it is derived from the Latin, whose alphabet was already arranged in this order. The Latins borrowed their alphabet from the Greeks, and the Greeks took theirs from the Phœnicians.

3. All the sounds of the French language are divided into two classes, viz., **vowels** and **consonants**.

* We do not attempt any equivalent pronunciation of the French Alphabet; the pupil must learn from the master how the letters are pronounced.

† *W* is used in words taken from English and German, and in their French derivatives.

SECTION I.

OF THE VOWELS.

4. The sound produced by a simple emission of the voice (*a*, *o*, *u*), is called a *vowel*. There are seven vowels in French:

a, e, i (or **y**), **o, u, eu, ou.**

All the vowels can be pronounced by themselves without the help of any other sound.

5. All the vowels can be either **short** or **long**, according as they are pronounced **quickly** or **slowly**, thus: *a* is short in *patte* (=paw, foot), because it is pronounced rapidly; whilst it is long in *pâte* (=dough), because we lay a stress on the *â*. In the same way—

e is long in	*bête*	(=beast),	and short in	*jette*	(=he *or* she throws)
i ,,	*gîte*	(=lodging),	,,	*petite*	(=small)
o ,,	*côte*	(=coast),	,,	*dévote*	(=devout)
u ,,	*flûte*	(=flute),	,,	*butte*	(=butt, mound)
eu ,,	*heure*	(=hour)	,,	*jeune*	(=young)
eu ,,	*jeûne*	(=fast)	,,	*creuser*	(=to dig)
ou ,,	*voûte*	(=vault)	,,	*toute*	(=all)

Out of the seven vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *eu*, *ou*, the first five are represented in French by a single letter; the last two are expressed by the joining of two letters, namely *e* and *u*, *o* and *u*. Although appearing to the eye compound vowels, they give to the ear only one sound, *eu*, *ou*, as simple as that of *a* or *o*.

6. No remarks are needed about *a* and *i*; but *e*, *o*, and *eu* require some observations to be made—

The letter *e* is used in French to express **three sounds**, which in reality ought to be considered as three distinct vowels:

1. A very *dull* sound, called **e muet** (mute), as in *homme* (=man), *venir* (=to come).

2. An *acute* sound, called **e fermé** (close), as in *aimé* (=loved), *bonté* (=goodness). This *e* is generally denoted by the sign (′), called **acute accent** (*accent aigu*).

The *e* is likewise close in words ending by the letter *r* when the *r* is not pronounced. Thus *verger* (=an orchard), *rocher* (=a rock), *aimer* (=to love).

3. A very open sound, which is heard in *terre* (=earth, land), *mer* (=sea), *enfer* (=hell), *succès* (=success), *procès* (=lawsuit), and uttered by opening the mouth wide. This **e** is called **ouvert** (open), and is generally marked by the sign (`), called **grave accent** (*accent grave*). No accent is used when the open *e* is followed by two consonants, as in *peste* (=plague), *reste* (=remainder), *fresque* (=fresco), or when it is followed by a sounded *r* at the end of a word, as in—

amer	(=bitter)	*fer*	(=iron)
cancer	(=cancer)	*hier*	(=yesterday)
cher	(=dear)	*hiver*	(=winter)
enfer	(=hell)	*ver*	(=worm)

This sound of the open *e* is also rendered either by *ai*, as in—

a*ire*	(=threshing-floor),	pronounced	*ère*
chair	(=flesh),	,,	*chère*
clair	(=clear),	,,	*clère*
éclair	(=lighting),	,,	*éclère*
pair	(=equal),	,,	*père*

Or by *ei*, as in—

peine	(=trouble),	pronounced	*pène*
Seine	(=Seine),	,,	*sène*
veine	(=vein),	,,	*vène*

7. The sound *eu* is represented in French in three different ways, viz.—

eu,	as in	*heure* (=hour),
œu,	,,	*bœuf* (=ox), *œuf* (=egg), *sœur* (=sister)
œ and *ue*,	,,	*œil* (=eye), *accueille* (=greet [thou]), *cueille* (=pluck [thou]), *orgueil* (=pride),

which are pronounced as if written—

acc*œu*ille, c*œu*ille, org*œu*il.

8. The vowel *y* between two consonants is pronounced *i*, as in *analyse* (=analysis, parsing), *martyr* (=martyr), *presbytère* (=parsonage); but between two vowels it is sounded like two *i*'s, that is to say, that the first *i* is joined to the preceding vowel, as in *aboyer* (=to bark), pronounce *aboi-ier*, and not *aboi-er*; and in *pays* (=country), pronounce *pai-is*, and not *pa-is*.

9. A **diphthong** is the combination of two simple vowels pronounced by a single emission of the voice, as *ui* in *huileux* (=oily). *Ui*, being a compound of the two vowels *u* and *i*, is a diphthong.

Diphthong comes from the Latin *diphthongus* which, itself, was borrowed from the Greek, and means two sounds.

10. In French, diphthongs are formed with the four vowels *i*, *o*, *u*, *ou*, followed by some other vowel of the alphabet.

Thus *i* forms: ia, as in *piano* (=piano)
ie, ,, *pied* (=foot)
io, ,, *piocher* (=to dig);
o forms: oa, as in *moabite* (=moabite)
oe, ,, *moelle* (=marrow)
oi, ,, *roi* (=king);
u forms: ue, as in *écuelle* (=bowl)
ui, ,, *huile* (=oil)
,, ,, *suif* (=tallow);
ou forms: oua, as in *douanier* (=custom-house officer)
oue, ,, *fouetter* (=to whip)
oui, ,, oui (=yes)
,, ,, *Louis* (=Louis)

EXERCISE 1.

Write out the following words in French and in English

A. *Underlining with one dash the* **short**, *and with two dashes the* **long vowels** [see § 5]:

pâté	petite	cru	fleur	pôle
thé	chute	crû	malheur	île
âge sage	fête	du	pécheur	jeûne
cravate	épître	dû	pêcheur	jeune
fourchette	sucre	mot	mur	tache
joute	apôtre	août	mûr	tâche
croûte	châsse	louve	sur	bûche
route	chasse	succès	sûr	feu

B. *Underlining the* e *mute* (a); *the* e *close* (b); *and the open* e *or its equivalents* (c) [see § 6]:

(*a*)	pureté	tenir	somme	élever	sentence
	mener	bijouterie	Rome	batelier	féroce
(*b*)	aimé	méchanceté	beauté	sobriété	présent
	dîner	légèreté	boucher	boulanger	péril
(*c*)	excès	élève	hiver	pair	haine
	arrêt	presque	chaise	chair	reine

C. *Underlining the* **eu** *or its equivalents* [*see* § 7]:

beurre	fauteuil	deuil	nœud	œuf
cœur	écureuil	cueille	vœu	neuf
chœur	orgueil	écueil	demeure	œuvre

D. *Arranging under two heads those where the* **y** *stands for* **i**, *and those where the* **y** *stands for* **ii** [*see* § 8]:

croyant	foudroyant	fuyard	cyprès	presbytère
bruyant	rayon	syllabe	style	martyr
paysan	citoyen	symbole	analyse	acolyte

E. *Underlining the* **diphthongs** [*see* §§ 9 and 10]:

diable	huile	médiocre	étoile	écuelle
acier	tuile	ennui	poire	queue
cahier	guide	cuir	roue	équestre
période	liquide	louage	Louis	quille.

SECTION II.

OF THE CONSONANTS.

11. In the French alphabet there are twenty consonants:

B, C, D, F, G, H, J, K, L, M, N, P, Q, R, S, T, V, W, X, Z,

to which CH and PH should be added.

Several of these consonants express the same sound, thus *c*, *k*, *q*, have the sound of *c hard*, *e.g.*, **c***avalier* (= horseman), **k***a***k***atoès* (= cockatoo), **qu***alifier* (= to qualify).

S and *c* are sounded alike in *s*ervir (= to serve), and *c*ervelle (= brains);

J and *g* in j'*ai* (= I have), and *g*eai (= jay), *j*oli (= pretty), and *g*eôlier (= jailer);

Z and *s* in z*é*ro (= zero, nought), and *d*ése*r*teur (= deserter), which is pronounced *dézerteur*.

These letters are called CONSONANTS, from the Latin word *consona* (that which is pronounced with, by the help of), because the Roman grammarians believed that a consonant could never be pronounced without the help of a vowel.

12. The consonants are produced by three different parts of the vocal mechanism: the *throat*, the *teeth*, and the *lips*. The six consonants, **c**, **k**, **q**, **g**, **j**, **ch**, which are produced by the *throat*, are for that reason called **gutturals** (from the Latin *guttur*, throat); two of them,

c and **g**, have a double sound, viz., *hard* before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, as in **c***a*marade (=comrade), **g***a*min (=street Arab), **c**orridor (=passage), **g***o*belet (=goblet); **c***u*muler (=to accumulate), **g***u*ttural (=guttural); and *soft* before the vowels *e* and *i*, as in **c***e*rveau (=brains), **g***e*rmer (=to sprout); **c***i*rer (=to black, to polish), **g***i*bier (=game).

13. **T**, **d**, **s**, **z**, which are produced by the *teeth*, are, for that reason, called **dentals** (from Lat. *dens*, *dentis*, tooth).

s placed between two vowels is sounded like **z**:—

cloison (=partition) *pronounce cloizon*
poison (=poison) ,, *poizon*

14. The consonants produced by the help of the *lips*, and for that reason called **labials** (from the Latin *labia*, lips), *are* **p**, **b**, **f** (and **ph**), **v**.

15. The two consonants **l** and **r** are called **liquids** (from the Latin *liquidus*, liquid, flowing), because these two letters are easily joined to other consonants, such as *p*, *b*, *c*, to form groups of letters quite liquid (*easy to pronounce*), such as *bl* in **bl***anc* (=white), *pl* in **pl***aine* (=field), *cl* in **cl***ameur* (=clamour, outcry), *gl* in **gl***oire* (=glory), or *pr* in **pr***emier* (=first), *cr* in **cr***oire* (=to believe), *br* in **br***uit* (=noise), *gr* in **gr***andir* (=to grow).

16. The two consonants **m** and **n** are called **nasal** (from the Latin *nasus*, nose), because they give to the vowels a peculiar sound proceeding from the *nose*, as *an* in **m***an*ger (=to eat), *om* in **t***om*ber (=to fall).

The liquid *l* and the nasal *n* become liquid (*mouillée*) in some cases, that is to say, they are pronounced as if followed by a very weak *i*, audible, for instance, in *campa***gn***ard* (=countryman), and *trava***ill***er* (=to work).

17. **x** is a double consonant, pronounced sometimes like *cs* (*lu***x***ueux*=luxurious), sometimes like *gz* (*e***x***act* =exact).

18. **H** is the weakest of all the consonants, just as *e silent* or *mute* is the weakest vowel. There are two kinds of *h's*:—

1. *H silent* (or *mute*), which does not represent any sound, and over which leaps the elision of the article *le* or *la*, exactly as if the article was coming into contact with the vowel itself. Examples:

L'h*omme* (=the man), l'h*abitude* (=the habit);

Exactly as in—

L'a*baissement* (=the abasement), l'o*béissance* (=the obedience).

2. *H aspirate*, which in French is not heard any more than *h silent*, but which differs from it by preventing the elision:

Le h*éros* (=the hero), la h*oulette* (=the shepherd's crook).

Care must be taken not to sound *les-zéros*, *les-zoulettes* in the plural.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. How are *words* formed?
2. How are *sounds* represented?
3. What is the *alphabet*?
4. How many letters are there in the French alphabet?
5. What is the origin of the French alphabet?
6. What are *vowels*?
7. Give a list of the French vowels.
8. What is a short vowel?—a long vowel?
9. What is the *e* mute?—the *e* close?—the *e* open?
10. What is to be noticed with reference to the letter *y*?
11. What is a *diphthong*?
12. Name the principal diphthongs.
13. How many *consonants* are there in French?
14. Name the *gutturals* — the *dentals* — the *labials* — the *liquids*—the *nasals*.
15. When do the consonants *l* and *n* become liquid?
16. When is *h* a mute letter?—When does it become aspirate?

EXERCISE 2.

Write out the following words in French and in English:

A. *Underlining the* **guttural consonant** (*see* § 12):

cristal	jumeau	kilomètre	question	goût
camp	joyeux	requête	chaleur	dégât

B. *Underlining with one dash the* **c** *and* **g hard**, *and with two dashes the* **c** *and* **g soft**:

cascade	garçon	courte	céleste	golfe
cervelas	géant	gibier	cible	guêtre

C. *Underlining the* **dentals** (a); *the* **labials** (b); *and the* **liquids** (c) [*see* §§ 13—15]:

(*a*)	teindre	attentif	dimanche	seigneur	zéro
	tempête	danser	savoir	sucre	zone
(*b*)	poulet	boucle	figure	perte	revers
	peuple	faiblesse	verbe	vertu	bible
(*c*)	blé	grand	bruit	plateau	plume
	croisée	blanc	prairie	trouble	prune

D. *Underlining the* **nasal** (a), *and the* **liquid l** *and* **n** (b) [*see* § 16]:

(*a*)	menton	mensonge	un	fonction	festin
	tenture	leçon	puissance	prompt	vilain
(*b*)	mouille	campagne	pille	vermeil	gouvernail
	oreille	règne	aiguille	sommeil	Gascogne

E. *Underlining with one dash the* **x** *employed instead of* **cs**, *and with two dashes the* **x** *employed instead of* **gz** (*see* § 17):

luxe	texte	exhaler	exprès	exposer
exemple	exigu	vexer	annexion	exigeant

F. *Underlining with one dash the* **h mute**, *and with two dashes the* **h aspirate** (*see* § 18):

habile	hagard	hache	hasard	héritier
haie	habit	habitation	herbage	hibou

CHAPTER II.

OF SYLLABLES.—ORTHOGRAPHIC SIGNS.

19. A **syllable** is one or several sounds which are pronounced without interruption, and by a single emission of the voice. Thus *ôté* (=taken away, past participle of *ôter*), is formed of two syllables, the first of which is composed of only one vowel (*ô*), and the second of a consonant (*t*) and a vowel (*é*).

In French, words are divided according to sound, the consonant at the beginning: *blan-chir* (=to wash), *a-pla-nir* (=to level), *im-pri-mer* (=to print).

When a syllable ends with an *e silent* (or *mute*), as *me*, in *j'aime* (=I love), it is called **silent** (or **mute**).

20. The name of **orthographic signs** is given to certain signs used in writing, either to indicate the changes of the same vowel, as *o* and *ô*, *é* and *è*, *ai* and *aï*; or the suppression of a letter, as in *l'épée*, for *la épée* (=the sword); or lastly, the joining of two or three words into one, as *arc-en-ciel* (=rainbow), *pied-à-terre* (=temporary lodging, resting-place).

There are five kinds of *orthographic signs*, viz., the *accents*, the *cedilla*, the *diæresis*, the *apostrophe*, and the *hyphen*.

The **accents** are three in number: the *acute* (´), the *grave* (`), and the *circumflex* (^).

The *acute* accent is placed over *close* **é**: *bonté* (=kindness), *santé* (=health).

The *grave* accent is placed over *open* **è**: *procès* (=lawsuit), *succès* (=success). It is also placed over **à** (=to), *là* (=there), *où* (=where), *dès* (=as soon as), to prevent the confusion with *a* (=[he *or* she] has), *la* (=the, *fem. article, or* her, *pers. pronoun*), *ou* (=or), *des* (=of the, *defin. art., or* some, *indefin. art.*).

The *circumflex* accent is placed over long vowels: *côte* (=coast, shore, rib), *gîte* (=dwelling).

The circumflex accent usually shows that a letter has been suppressed. Thus, the words *tête* (=head), *fête* (=festival), *bête* (=beast), were originally spelt *teste, feste, beste*, and they preserved that spelling till the middle of the eighteenth century. It was only in 1740 that the *Académie française* replaced the consonant *s* by a circumflex accent in the above words and similar ones.

21. In order to show when two vowels following each other are to be pronounced separately, the sign (¨) called **tréma** (diæresis) is placed over the second: thus **uë** in *ciguë* (=hemlock). Without the diæresis this word would be pronounced *cig*, because *ue* would be mute as in *figue* (=fig), *ligue* (=league).

The **apostrophe** (') denotes the suppression of the vowels *a, e, i*, in *le, la, je, me, te, se, de, que, si*, and *a*

few other words before another word beginning with a *vowel* or *h silent*, as in—

L'épée	(=the sword)	instead of	*la-épée*
J'arrive	(=I arrive)	,,	*je-arrive*
S'il vient	(=if he comes)	,,	*si-il vient*
L'honneur	(=the honour)		*le-honneur*

22. The **cedilla** is a sign (,) placed under the *c* before *a*, *o*, *u* when it has a soft sound, as in *façade* (=frontage, façade), *façon* (=form, shape), *rinçure* (=rinsings), instead of its regular hard sound before the same vowels, as in *camarade* (=comrade), *colombe* (=dove), *curieux* (=inquisitive).

23. The **hyphen**, called in French **trait d'union**, joins together either the different parts of a compound word, as *arc-en-ciel* (=rainbow), *chef-lieu* (=chief *or* county town), *vis-à-vis* (=opposite);—or the verb with its subject (in the interrogative conjugation), as in *irai-je* (=shall I go)? *viendrez-vous* (=will you come)?—or with its object, as in *croyez-moi* (=believe me), *venez-y* (=come hither).*

All these signs were introduced into the French language by the grammarians of the sixteenth century. The accents are borrowed from the Greek language, in which, however, they were used for a very different purpose. *Trema* is a Greek word which means 'point, dot,' or, more properly, 'hole.' *Apostrophe*, likewise borrowed from the Greek, means 'that which wards off,' the suppression of the vowel preventing, or *warding off*, the hiatus which would be caused by the discordant meeting of two vowels. The *cedilla* was borrowed from the Italian printers, who called *zediglia* a little crotchet like a *z* placed under *c*, when it was to be pronounced *z* instead of *k*. The Italian word comes from *zeta* (*z*), and means properly 'small z.'

24. The three accents just described must not be mistaken for the *tonic accent* (from the L. *tonus*, a tone).

The raising of the voice on a particular syllable in every word is called the **tonic accent**, and the syllable on which that accent falls is called the **accented** or **tonic syllable**.

* The suppression of the hyphen is now tolerated in examinations.

In French the accented syllable is always the last of the word, as *mouton* (=sheep), *cheval* (=horse), *il aima* (=he loved), except when the word ends in *e mute*, as table (=table), aimable (=amiable), lisible (=legible), in which case the tonic accent is carried back to the penultimate: **ta**ble, **ai**ma**ble**, **li**sible.

It results from this, that when two mute syllables would otherwise come together at the end of a word, as in the feminine of adjectives, and in verbs (*mu*ete=dumb; *com-ple*te=complete; *appeler*=to call, *j'app*ele=I call; *acheter*=to buy, *j'ach*ete=I buy; *mener*=to lead, *je m*ene=I lead), the sound of the e in the last syllable but one is increased either by putting a grave accent over it (*complète, je mène, j'achète*), or by doubling the following consonant (*j'appelle, muette*).

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is a *syllable*?—How many syllables are there in *résidence*?
2. What is a *mute* syllable?
3. What is meant by *orthographic signs*?
4. Enumerate the orthographic signs used in French.
5. Where is the *acute* accent placed?—What are the various uses of the *grave* accent?—What does the *circumflex* accent generally show?
6. Where is the *tréma* placed?
7. Explain the use of the *apostrophe*, the *hyphen*, the *cedilla*.
8. State the orig'n of the various orthographic signs.
9. What do you mean by the *tonic accent*?
10. Which is the *accented syllable* in French words?

Exercise 3.

Write out the following words in French and in English

A. *Underlining the* **tonic** *syllable* (*see* § 24):

aimant	président	souvent	président (*verb*)	veille
aiment	expédient	trouvent	expédient (*verb*)	veillent

B. *Underlining with one dash the* **tonic** *syllable, and with two dashes the* **atonic** *one* (*see* § 24):

édifice	touffe	froment	plancher	soulèvement
forêt	avoine	charrue	assiette	fondement

C. *Divide into syllables all the words in* **A** *and* **B.**

BOOK II.

STUDY OF WORDS.

25. There are ten classes of words used in the French language, viz.:

1. **Le nom** (noun)
2. **L'article** (article)
3. **L'adjectif** (adjective)
4. **Le pronom** (pronoun)
5. **Le verbe** (verb)
6. **Le participe** (participle)
7. **La préposition** (preposition)
8. **L'adverbe** (adverb)
9. **La conjonction** (conjunction)
10. **L'interjection** (interjection).

These ten kinds of different words, which by their combination form the French language, may be compared to the different parts of the human body, and for that reason have been called by grammarians **parts of speech**—that is to say, *the parts of the language.*

All these parts of speech (with the exception of the article, unknown to the Romans) passed from Latin into French.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE NOUN OR SUBSTANTIVE.

26. The **noun** or **substantive** is a word used to name persons, animals, or things.

There are two kinds of nouns: **proper** nouns and **common** nouns.

The **proper** noun applies either to one *person* only, as *Pierre* (=Peter), *Paul* (=Paul), *Louis* (=Louis), or to one *thing* only, as *le Rhône* (=river Rhone), *la Loire* (=river Loire).

REMARK.—Proper nouns always begin with a capital letter.

The **common** noun designates either all the *persons* of the same nature, as *enfant* (=child), *marchand* (=merchant), *soldat* (=soldier); or *things* of the same kind, as *cour* (=court, yard), *jardin* (=garden), *maison* (=house).

27. **Collective** nouns are those which express a collection of persons or things, as *foule* (=crowd), *troupe* (=troop), *multitude* (=multitude).

Compound nouns are those which, although formed of two or three words, designate one single person or thing, as *chou-fleur* (=cauliflower), *arc-en-ciel* (=rainbow).

28. In nouns two things are to be studied and examined—*gender* and *number*.

SECTION I.

OF GENDER IN NOUNS.

29. Gender is the difference or distinction which is made between male and female beings.

In French there are two genders:—the **masculine** and the **feminine**.

Men and males of animals, as *le père* (=the father), *le lion* (=the lion), are of the masculine gender. Women and females of animals, as *la mère* (=the mother), *la lionne* (=the lioness), are of the feminine gender.

Moreover, names of things which belong to neither sex have been made, by imitation, masculine or feminine. Thus *le bois* (=the wood), *le château* (=the castle), *le pays* (=the country), are masculine; whilst *la cour* (=the court, yard), *la grille* (=the grate, railing), *la lune* (=the moon), are feminine.

30. Feminine nouns are generally formed by adding an **e mute** to the masculine:

marquis	(=marquis)	*marquise*	(=marchioness)
ours	(=bear)	*ourse*	(=she-bear)

When the masculine noun ends with **en** or **on**, the *n* is doubled in the feminine:

baron	(=baron)	*baron***ne**	(=baroness)
chrétien	(=Christian)	*chrétien***ne**	(=Christian)
lion	(=lion)	*lio***nne**	(=lioness)

When the masculine ends in **er**, the fem. takes a grave accent (`) over the **e**: *portier* (=door-keeper), *portière*.

EXCEPTIONS.—About twenty substantives form their feminine by changing **e** final into **esse**, as: *nègre* (=negro), *négresse* (=negress); *tigre* (=tiger), *tigresse* (=tigress); *prophète* (=prophet), *prophétesse* (=prophetess); *hôte* (=host), *hôtesse* (=hostess), etc.

30A. Nouns ending in **eur** have their feminine in **euse**, when they are formed from a participle present by the

change of *ant* into *eur*; *march***ant** (=walking), *march***eur** (=walker); *achet***ant** (=buying), *achet***eur** (=buyer);

Otherwise **eur** is changed into **rice**: *act***eur** (=actor), *act***rice** (=actress); *direct***eur** (=director), *direct***rice** (=director). But:

*demand***eur***	(=plaintiff) makes		*demand***eresse**	Law terms
*défend***eur**	(=defendant)	,,	*défend***eresse**	
*vend***eur***	(=vendor)	,,	*vend***eresse**	
*baill***eur**	(=lessor)	,,	*baill***eresse**	
*enchant***eur**	(=enchanter)	,,	*enchant***eresse**	
*péch***eur**	(=sinner)	,,	*péch***eresse**	
*veng***eur**	(=avenger)	,,	*veng***eresse**	
*chass***eur**	(=hunter)	,,	*chass***eresse** (in poetry) / *chass***euse**	
*invent***eur**	(=inventor	,,	*invent***rice**	
*inspect***eur**	(=inspector)	,,	*inspect***rice**	
*débit***eur***	(=debtor)	,,	*débit***rice**	
*exécut***eur**	(=executor)	,,	*exécut***rice**	
*persécut***eur**	(=persecutor)	,,	*persécut***rice**	
*empер***eur**	(=emperor)	,,	*impérat***rice**	
*chant***eur**	(=singer)	,,	*cantat***rice** (for a celebrated singer) / *chant***euse**	
*gouvern***eur**	(=governor)	,,	*gouvern***ante**	
*serv***iteur**	(=servant)	,,	*serv***ante.**	

Many nouns, denoting professions generally followed by men only, have no feminine: *imprimeur* (=printer), *graveur* (=engraver).

Exercise 4.

Write out the feminine of the following substantives, and give the meaning of each.

(*a*)	marquis	ouvrier	chien	gardien	Louis
	cousin	lion	comédien	mercier	écolier
	orphelin	paysan	magicien	portier	ours
	châtelain	Européen	jardinier	Anglais	Italien
	filleul	Français	Romain	berger	Gascon
(*b*)	pair	chasseur	maître	Suisse	traître
	prophète	tigre	défendeur	prince	comte
	nègre	chanoine	hôte	pécheur	enchanteur
(*c*)	baigneur	nageur	pêcheur	sauteur	chanteur
	voyageur	joueur	travailleur	voleur	faucheur
	acheteur	laveur	polisseur	flatteur	danseur
(*d*)	délateur	bienfaiteur	fondateur	conducteur	directeur
	acteur	moteur	admirateur	adorateur	instituteur

* *Demand***eur**, *vend***eur** become, in ordinary language, *demand***euse**, *vend***euse**. *Débit***eur** (=retailer) has *débit***euse** for its feminine.

SECTION II.

OF NUMBER IN NOUNS.

31. **Number** is the difference or distinction which is made between one single thing and several things collected together.

In French, as in English, there are two numbers—the **singular**, to denote one person or one thing, as *le lion* (=the lion), *le livre* (=the book); and the **plural**, to denote several persons or things, as *les lions* (=the lions), *les livres* (=the books).

32. GENERAL RULE.—The plural of nouns is formed by adding **s** to the singular*: *L'homme* (=man), *les hommes* (=men); *le livre* (=the book), *les livres* (=the books).

The reason why French forms its plural in *s*, in preference to *m* or *b*, or any other letter, may be briefly stated thus: the French language has borrowed from the Latin accusative both its singular and its plural; and the letter *s* was generally the sign of the accusative plural in Latin.

33. When a noun in the singular already ends in *s*, *x*, or *z*, it does not change in the plural:

le fils (=the son)	*les fils* (=the sons)
la voix (=the voice)	*les voix* (=the voices)
le nez (=the nose)	*les nez* (=the noses)

34. EXCEPTIONS.—Nouns whose singular ends in *au* or *eu* take **x** in the plural:

un bateau (=a boat)	*des bateaux* (=some boats)
le neveu (=the nephew)	*les neveux* (=the nephews)

likewise the seven following nouns ending in *ou*:

le bijou (=the jewel)	*les bijoux* (=the jewels)
un caillou (=a pebble)	*des cailloux* (=some pebbles)
un chou (=a cabbage)	*des choux* (=some cabbages)
le genou (=the knee)	*les genoux* (=the knees)
le hibou (=the owl)	*les hiboux* (=the owls)
un joujou (=a toy)	*des joujoux* (=some toys)
un pou (=a louse)	*des poux* (=lice)

N.B.—All the other nouns ending in *ou* follow the general rule, and take **s** in the plural:

un clou (=a nail)	*des clous* (=some nails)
un verrou (=a bolt)	*des verrous* (=some bolts)

* Mark that this **s** is not pronounced.

This irregularity is one of the remains of the old language. In the Middle Ages, and indeed until the end of the seventeenth century, the letters **s**, **x**, **z** were used indifferently at the end of words: *nes* or *nez*; *vois*, *voiz*, or *voix*; *caillous* or *cailloux*.

The **x** has remained in *bijoux*, *genoux*, etc.; whilst the plural of *clou*, *verrou*, etc., is spelt *clous*, *verrous*.

35. Nouns in *al* change *al* into *aux* in the plural:

le cheval (=the horse) *les chevaux* (=the horses)
un mal (=an evil) *des maux* (=evils)

EXCEPT:—*bal* (=ball [to dance at]) *chacal* (=jackal)
carnaval (=carnival) *régal* (=regale, feast, treat)
and a few others less frequently used, which take **s** in the plural:—*des bals* (=balls), etc.

Seven substantives ending in *ail* follow the same rule—

un bail (=a lease) *des baux* (=leases)
le corail (=coral) *les coraux* (=the corals)
l'émail (=the enamel) *les émaux* (=the enamels)
un soupirail (=an air-hole) *des soupiraux* (=air-holes)
le travail (=work) *les travaux* (=the works)
le vantail (=the leaf of a door) *les vantaux* (=the leaves of doors)
un vitrail (=a stained-glass window) *des vitraux* (=stained-glass windows)

N.B.—Bestiaux is used as the plural of *bétail* (=cattle).

But all the other nouns in *ail* take **s**:

un gouvernail (=a helm) *des gouvernails* (=helms), etc.

At the birth of the French language—that is, in the time of Hugh Capet—*al* became *als* in the plural: un cheval, des chevals, un mal, des mals; but in the thirteenth century (about the time of St. Louis) *al* was softened, and became *au* before a consonant. Traces of this alteration are found in the expressions: *chevau-léger* (=a light dragoon), and *Vaugirard*, still used instead of *cheval-léger*, Val *Girard* (le vallon de Girard=the vale of Girard): *chevals* then became *chevaus*, and, subsequently, *chevaux*. (*See* § 34.)

36. The following nouns have two plural forms, one regular, the other irregular. The irregular generally leaves to the noun the same meaning it has in the singular, whilst the regular gives it a peculiar signification:

IRREGULAR.

*l'aïeul**	(=the grandfather)	*les aïeux*	(=the ancestors)
le ciel	(=sky, heaven)	*les cieux*	(=the heavens)
l'œil	(=the eye)	*les yeux*	(=the eyes)
le travail	(=the work)	*les travaux*	(=the works)

REGULAR.

les aïeuls (=the grandfathers)
les ciels (=skies in pictures, bed-testers)
les œils, in compound nouns, as *œils-de-bœuf* (=oval windows)
des travails (=a minister's reports, *or* brakes for shoeing vicious horses).

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. How many kinds of words are there in French?
2. What is the meaning of the expression: *parts of speech*?
3. What is a *common* substantive?—a *proper* one?
4. What is a *collective* noun?—a *compound* one?
5. What are the two points to be studied in connection with nouns?
6. What is meant by the *gender* of a noun?—How many genders are there in French?
7. What is the general rule for the formation of the feminine in French nouns?
8. Give the feminine of the following nouns: *chien—traître—lecteur—chanteur—pêcheur.*
9. What is meant by the *number* of a noun?—How many numbers are there in French?
10. How do you form the *plural* of French nouns?
11. How do you account for *s* being the sign of the plural in French?
12. How do you form the plural of nouns ending, 1. in *s, x, z*; 2. in *au* or *eu*; 3. in *ou*?
13. How do you explain the irregularity in the case of nouns ending in *ou*?
14. How do you form the plural of nouns ending, 1. in *al*; 2. in *ail*?—What are the exceptions?
15. What is the origin of the plural in *aux*?
16. Give the plural of *aïeul, ciel, œil.*

EXERCISE 5.

Write out the plural of the following substantives, giving the meaning of each.

(*a*)	vaisseau	homme	maître	excès	château
	richesse	mer	siècle	bambou	hameau
	pois	trou	élève	tableau	caillou
	vice	ami	navigateur	vertu	acajou
	verrou	oiseau	perdrix	noix	feu
(*b*)	maréchal	canal	régal	camail	gouvernail
	cheval	arsenal	bal	détail	rail
	bocal	cristal	carnaval	éventail	vitrail
	signal	végétal	chacal	bail	travail
	amiral	vassal	soupirail	corail	général
	mal	journal	attirail	émail	capital

* *Aïeul* keeps its original meaning in the regular plural.

SECTION III.

FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

37. New substantives are formed by joining together, either:

1. **two nouns:** un *chat-tigre* (=a tiger-cat).
2. **a noun and an adjective:** une *basse-taille* (=a bass voice).
3. **a noun and a verb:** un *tire-bouchon* (=a cork-screw).
4. **a noun and a preposition:** un *sous-officier* (=a non-commissioned officer).
5. **a verb and an adverb:** un *passe-partout* (=a master-key).
6. **two nouns joined by a preposition:** un *arc-en-ciel* (=a rainbow).*

38. From a simple substantive, as *boutique* (=shop), two new words can be derived in French:

(*a*) A **derivative**, with a new termination called **suffix** (from the Latin *suffixus*=*affixed to* or *after*) placed *after* the word, as *ier* in *boutique***ier** (=shopkeeper). The part of the simple word which remains unaltered, and to which the suffix is added, is termed *stem.*

(*b*) A **compound**, with the help of a new word called **prefix** (from the Latin *prafixus*=*affixed before*), which is placed *before* the simple word, as **arrière**-*boutique* (=back-shop).

PREFIXES.

39. The prefixes used in French to form new substantives are:

après,	as in	*un après-midi* (=an afternoon)
avant,	,,	*un avant-coureur* (=a forerunner, precursor)
arrière,	,,	*une arrière-boutique* (=a back-shop)
contre,	,,	*un contre-ordre* (=a counter-order)
entre,	,,	*un entre-côte* (=a rib of beef)
non,	,,	*un non-sens* (=a nonsense)
sans,	,,	*un sans-façon* (=an off-handed manner)
sous,	,,	*un sous-officier* (=a non-commissioned officer)

* The suppression of the hyphen is now tolerated in examinations.

The three particles, *bis*, *mi*, *vice*, are also used to form compound nouns—

bis (=twice), as *bisaïeul* (=great-grandfather); *biscuit* (=biscuit, *lit.* twice baked)

mi (=half), as *la mi-carême* (=mid-Lent); *la mi-juillet* (=the middle of July); *minuit* (=midnight)

vice (=instead of, in the place of), as *vice-roi* (=viceroy), *vice-amiral* (=vice-admiral).

SUFFIXES.

40. Derivative substantives are formed in French by adding to substantives already existing, to adjectives, or to verbs *eleven* suffixes: **ade, age, ain, ard, at, é, ée, er (ier), ie (erie), esse, iste.**

1. *Substantives formed from substantives already existing.*

From *colonne* (=a column), we get *colonn***ade**, *i.e.* a collection of columns.

plume (=a feather) ,, *plum***age**, *i.e.* a collection of feathers (=plumage).

chapelle (=a chapel) ,, *chapel***ain** (=a chaplain).

bille (=a ball) ,, *bill***ard** (=a billiard table).

marquis (=a marquis) ,, *marquis***at** (=a marquisate).

comte (=a count *or* earl) ,, *comt***é** (=a county *or* earldom).

bouche (=a mouth) ,, *bouch***ée** (=a mouthful).

horloge (=a clock) ,, *horloge***r** (=a clockmaker).

pomme (=an apple) ,, *pomm***ier** (=an apple-tree).

boucher (=a butcher) ,, *boucher***ie** (=a butcher's shop, butchery).

âne (=an ass) ,, *âne***sse** (a she-ass).

journal (=a journal *or* newspaper) ,, *journal***iste** (=a journalist).

41. There is a particular class of suffixes which, indicating *diminution*, are used to form derivatives, whose meaning is less than that of the simple word. For this reason they are called *diminutive suffixes*. Such are, for instance, *illon* in *négr***illon**=*petit* nègre (=little negro); *eau* in *chevr***eau**=*petite* chèvre (=kid).

Some of these suffixes, whilst lessening the significa-

tion of the simple word, give to it, at the same time, a meaning of depreciation and contempt, as *aille* in—

*la fer***raille** (=old iron), from *fer* (=iron)
*la valet***aille** (=flunkeys), ,, *valet* (=valet, footman), etc. etc.

42. The diminutive suffixes are six in number:

1. **aille**: *valet* (=valet), *valet***aille** (=flunkeys);

2. **as**: *plâtre* (=plaster), *plâtr***as** (=rubbish of plaster); (*in the feminine*, **asse**); *paille* (=straw), *paill***asse** (=straw-mattress).

3. **et**: *livre* (=book), *livr***et** (=small-book); (*in the feminine*, **ette**); *chanson* (=song), *chanson***nette** (=little song, ditty), hence the compound **elette**: *goutte* (=drop), *gout***telette** (=small drop).

4. **on**: *âne* (=ass), *â***non** (=foal of an ass); hence the compounds **illon** and **eron**: carpe (=carp), *carp***illon** (=small carp); *mouche* (=fly); *mouch***eron** (=gnat).

5. **eau**: *prune* (=plum), *prun***eau** (=small plum); (*in the feminine*, **elle**), *prun***elle** (=sloe).

The suffix **eau** makes **elle** in the feminine, because the old French language had the masculine termination *el* instead of *eau*; thus, *chapel*, the old form of *chapeau* (=hat), subsists still in *chapelier* (=hatter).

6. **ot**: *île* (=island), *îl***ot** (=small island).

2. *Substantives derived from Adjectives.*

43. New substantives are formed by adding to adjectives the five following suffixes: **esse, ise, ie, té, ure.** All these nouns, thus derived from adjectives, are feminine:

*la faibl***esse** (=weakness) from *faible* (=weak)
*la sott***ise** (=foolishness) ,, *sotte*, *f.* of *sot* (=foolish)
*la malad***ie** (=illness) ,, *malade* (=ill)
*la pauvr***eté** (=poverty) ,, *pauvre* (=poor)
*la courb***ure** (=bending) ,, *courbe* (=curved)

3. *Substantives derived from Verbs.*

44. New substantives are formed from verbs in three different ways, either—

(1) by using as substantives the **infinitive**, the **present participle**, and the **past participle**, as *le manger* (=eating), which is the infinitive of *manger* (=to eat); *le*

tranchant (=the edge), from *tranchant* (=cutting), present participle of *trancher* (=to cut); *le reçu* (=the receipt), past participle of the verb *recevoir* (=to receive);

Or, (2) by striking off the termination *er* from verbs belonging to the first conjugation; thus, from *replier* (=to fold back) we get *repli* (=fold); from *débuter* (=to begin) we get *début* (=outset); from *appeler* (=to call), we get *appel* (=call, appeal);

Or, (3) by adding to the stem of the verb the suffixes **ade, age, ance, eur** (or **isseur**), **is, ment** (or **ement**), **oir, on, aison** (or **ison**), **ure.**

Thus from—

promener	(=to walk)	comes *promenade*	(=walk)
laver	(=to wash)	,, *lavage*	(=washing)
surveiller	(=to superintend)	,, *surveillance*	(=superintendence)
chasser	(=to hunt)	,, *chasseur*	(=hunter)
régir	(=to rule)	,, *régisseur*	(=steward, bailiff)
hacher	(=to chop, to mince)	,, *hachis*	(=hash, minced meat)
hurler	(=to howl)	,, *hurlement*	(=howling)
parler	(=to speak)	,, *parloir*	(=parlour)
jurer	(=to swear)	,, *juron*	(=oath)
lier	(=to connect)	,, *liaison*	(=connection)
guérir	(=to cure)	,, *guérison*	(=cure, healing)
blesser	(=to wound)	,, *blessure*	(=wound).

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. How are new substantives formed in French?
2. Define a *prefix*;—a *suffix*.
3. Form a few substantives with the prefixes *contre, sous, sans.*
4. What is the meaning of *mi, bis, vice*?
5. Form a few substantives with the suffixes *at, on, aille, as, er, iste.*
6. What is meant by a *diminutive suffix*?
7. Form substantives with the suffixes *on, eau, ot, as.*
8. How are new substantives formed from adjectives?
9. What parts of the verbs are sometimes used as substantives?
10. What suffixes are used to form fresh substantives from verbs? Give a list of substantives formed from the verbs *nettoyer, abreuver, épancher, frémir, sentir, brûler, assurer.*

Exercise 6.

Write a list of the following substantives with the PREFIX *indicated, and give the meaning of both the simple and the compound substantives.*

(*a*) prefix **après**: coup, midi, demain, dîner
(*b*) ,, **arrière**: garde, saison, boutique, neveu, pensée
(*c*) ,, **avant**: poste, coureur, garde, goût, propos
(*d*) ,, **contre**: coup, sens, marque, amiral, maître
(*e*) ,, **entre**: côte, mets, sol, pont
(*f*) ,, **non**: sens, valeur, payement
(*g*) ,, **sans**: façon, gêne, dent
(*h*) ,, **sous**: officier, préfet, maître, intendant, sol
(*i*) ,, **vice**: roi, président, amiral
(*j*) ,, **mi**: nuit, jambe, juillet, partie
(*k*) ,, **bis**: aïeul, sac.

Exercise 7.

Write a list of compound substantives, by adding to the following one of the SUFFIXES *given below, and give the meaning of both the simple and the compound words.*

(a) *suffix* **ade** (*fem.*):

aube	limon	colonne	poivre	arc
peuple	face	galop	recul	bourg
balustre	rodomont	orange	bourre	œil

(b) *suffix* **at** (*masc.*):

solde	consul	assassin	syndic
externe	interne	Auvergne	forme
tribun	cardinal	marquis	économe

(c) *suffix* **age** (*masc.*):

herbe	esclave	bande	jardin	feuille
bord	branche	brigand	corde	ermite
langue	magasin	échafaud	vagabond	ligne
pèlerin	grille	mari	moule	plume
jambe	ferme	coquille	homme	ancre

(d) *suffix* **ain** (*fem.* **aine**):

Masc.	monde	république*	Rome	proche
	public	Afrique*	terre	Amérique*
	Toulouse	Maroc	quatre	diocèse
Fem.	Dix†	huit	quarante	cinquante
	soixante	cent	trente	vingt
	douze	quinze		

* *Que* is changed into *c*. † The *x* is changed into *z*.

(e) *suffix* **ard** (*fem.* **arde**):

Masc.:	campagne	montagne	bille
Fem.:	poule	bombe	moût

(f) *suffix* **é**:

Masc.:	comte	doigt
Fem.:	parent	prévôt

(g) *suffix* **ée** (*fem.*):

assiette	soir	rang	matin	niche
écuelle	jatte	table	cuiller	plume
pâte	bouche	train		

(h) *suffix* **ier** [*or* **er** *after* **ch, g,** *or* **ill**] (*masc.*):

cerise	amande	gomme	grenade	pomme
poire	châtaigne	groseille*	rose	orange
pêche	ferme	douane	barbe	botte
plomb	guerre	bourse	vache	cloche
carrosse	tapis	cheval	école	cuisine
serrure	porte	horloge	couteau	salade
colombe	cendre	sucre	(*O.F.coutel*)	oreille
encre	huile	moutarde	sable	houille

(i) *suffix* **erie** [*or* **ie** *when the substantive already ends in* **er**] (*fem.*)

acier	berger	boulanger	horloger	pirate
boucher	argent	bois	corde	fruit
ébéniste	gendarme	lait	singe	marbre

(j) *suffix* **iste** (*masc.* or *fem.*):

dent	monarchie	copie	art	journal
mode	auberge	capital	chimie	fleur
morale	ébène	latin	paysage	machine

(k) *suffix diminutive* **aille** (*fem.*):

roc	pierre	fût	mur

(l) *suffix diminutive* **as** (*fem.* **asse**):

papier†	fil	terre	(these are *fem.*)

(m) *suffix* **et** (*fem.* **ette**):

Masc.	croc‡	couple	coussin	livre
	cabine	poule	jardin	vers
	sac‡	feuille	coffre	boule
Fem.	broche	fourche	chèvre†	poule
	bûche	langue	boule	table
	cache	mie	épaule	chaîne

* Has *ier*.

† See § 24 and in § 30A note *eur*, *eresse*.

‡ These take *h* before *et*.

(n) *suffix* **et** (*fem.* **ette**) *preceded by* **el**:

Masc.:	bras*	cerveau	château	marteau	manteau
Fem.:	bande	côte	goutte	tarte	

(o) *suffix* **on** (masc.):

1.

jambe	dinde	ceinture	jupe	âne
corde	guide	aiguille	aigle	glace
caisse	carafe	rejet	médaille	lard

2. *preceded by* **ill** (*masc.*):

croix† cotte‡ nègre carpe

3. *preceded by* **er** (*masc.*):

aile vigne bûche mouche chape

(p) *suffix* **eau** (*fem.* **elle**):

Masc.	chèvre	orme	prune	cave
	tombe	barre	écrit	table
	corde	pomme	plat	tonne
Fem.	canne	prune	tour	ombre
	citron	tonne	dent	rue

(q) *suffix* **ot** (*masc.*):

balle île bille maille Charles

Exercise 8.

Write a list of the substantives formed by adding to the following adjectives the SUFFIXES *indicated, and give the meaning of both the adjective and the compound noun.*

(a) *suffix* **esse** (*fem.*):

rude	sage	molle	haute	petite
hardie	faible	tendre	juste	triste

(b) *suffix* **ise** (*fem.*)

franche gourmand marchand sotte fainéant

(c) *suffix* **ie** (*fem.*):

félon perfide monotone barbare jaloux

(d) *suffix* **erie** (*fem.*):

coquette drôle espiègle fourbe infirme

* *s* changes into c. † *x* changes into s. ‡ The derivative takes only one t.

(e) *suffix* **té** (*fem.*):

âcre	âpre	varié	immense	trivial
honnête	chrétien	avide*	intime	facile
pauvre	dure	acide	sincère	absurde
ferme	nette	banal	timide	agile
ancienne	sûre	docile	tranquille	crédule

Exercise 9.

Write a list of the substantives formed from the following verbs, giving the meaning of both substantive and verb.

(a) *by taking the infinitive as a substantive*:

souvenir	sourire	souper	savoir	goûter
manger	déjeuner	devoir	avoir	toucher
rire	dîner	pouvoir	boire	dire

(b) *by putting the verb in the present participle*:

pencher	mendier	débiter	assister	commander
protester	combattre	stimuler	commercer	habiter
assiéger	trancher	passer	conquérir	émigrer

(c) *by putting the verb in the past participle*:

Masc.	pendre	apercevoir	devoir	contenir
	procéder	réduire	précipiter	élire
Fem.	enjamber	bouffer	voler	gorger
	armer	revoir	ranger	couver
	conduire	aller	étendre	entrer
	venir	trancher	arriver	échapper
	fumer	monter	renommer	pousser

(d) *by taking off the termination* **r** *to form feminine, and* **er** *or* **tre** *to form masculine nouns*:

Masc.	arrêter	oublier	soupirer	plier
	galoper	crier	désirer	débuter
	siéger†	soucier	souhaiter	débattre
	appeler	rebuter	combattre	rabattre
Fem.	scier	rallonger	râper	vendanger

(e) *by adding the suffix* **ade** *to the stem*:

griller	rouler	embrasser	parer
enfiler	fusiller	glisser	ruer

(f) *with suffix* **age** (*masc.*):

laver	ouvrer	raffiner	piller	trier
témoigner	tirer	plier	savonner	chômer

* All the following adjectives have **ité** after the consonant.

† In this word only the *r* is dropped. The *Académie* now spells *siège* with a grave accent. *See* § 166.

(g) *with suffix* **ance** (*fem.*):*

dépendre	confier	délivrer	suffire	médire
tempérer	croire	espérer	obliger	prévoir
venger	ressembler	reconnaître	répugner	remontrer
assister	souffrir	convenir	naître	obéir

(h) *with suffix* **eur** (*masc.*):*

pêcher	pécher	relier	tricher	venger
rire	tailler	compter	ramer	diviser
vaincre	flâner	fournir	enchérir	polir
régir	blanchir	acheter	acquérir	nager

(i) *with suffix* **is** (*masc.*):

hacher	loger	rouler	gâcher	semer
tailler	colorer	cliqueter	laver	croquer

(j) *with suffix* **ment** *or* **ement** (*masc.*):*

affaisser	abattre	agencer	amuser	bâiller
abonner	accabler	accomplir	appauvrir	agrandir
applaudir	amollir	établir	éclaircir	rugir

(k) *with suffix* **oir** (*fem.* **oire**):

Masc.	cracher	saler	repousser	moucher
	peigner	fermer	réserver	percher
	promener	mirer	abreuver	parler
Fem.:	nager	mâcher	manger	balancer

(l) *with suffix* **on** (*masc.*):

jurer	plonger		brouiller
boucher	grogner	bâiller	couper

(m) *with suffix* **aison** (*fem.*):

combiner	conjuguer	terminer
comparer	lier	décliner

(n) *with suffix* **ison** (*fem.*):

garnir	guérir	trahir

(o) *with suffix* **ure** (*fem.*):*

aller	border	ferrer	parer	blesser
chausser	user	voiler	couper	flétrir
moisir	meurtrir	polir	élargir	bouffir

Exercise 10.

Write all the derivatives of the following words, with the meaning of each.

orange	dent	plume	ébène
rang	barbe	table	bouche
limon	médaille	jardin	corde
bûche	balle	poivre	face

* Must be added to stem of the present participle.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE ARTICLE.

45. The **article** is a word generally placed before the substantive, and agreeing with it in gender and in number.

There are two kinds of articles: 1. the **definite** article, placed before substantives the meaning of which is clearly determined, as **le** *cheval* in the following sentence: **le** *cheval de mon père est noir* (=my father's horse is black). The words *de mon père*, which accompany the substantive *cheval*, serve to determine it.

2. The **indefinite** article, placed before substantives the meaning of which is indeterminate, that is to say, vague, not precise, as **un** *cheval* in the following sentence: **un** *cheval s'est abattu* (=a horse has fallen down).

46. The definite article has both genders and numbers:

SINGULAR.

le (for the masc.)	**le** *père* (=the father)
la (for the fem.)	**la** *mère* (=the mother)

PLURAL.

les (for both genders)	**les** pères (=the fathers) **les** mères (=the mothers).

47. There are two remarks to make with reference to the definite article:

1. When *le* or *la* comes before a substantive beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the vowel (*e* or *a*) is cut off and replaced by an apostrophe. Thus:

*le-a*mour	(=the love)	must be written	l'*amour*
*la-e*nvie	(=the envy)	,,	l'*envie*
*le-h*onneur	(=the honour)	,,	l'*honneur*
de le-amour	(=of the love)	,,	de l'*amour*
de la-envie	(=of the envy)	,,	de l'*envie*
à le-honneur	(=to the honour)	,,	à l'*honneur*

This suppression of the vowel is called **elision.**

No elision takes place before *huit* (=eight), *huitième* (=eighth), *oui* (=yes), *onze* (=eleven), *onzième* (=eleventh), *ouate* (=wadding), *yacht* (=yacht), *yole* (yawl).

The word *élision* (=elision) is derived from the Latin acc. *elisionem*, which means 'a striking out *or* forcing out.'

2. When the masculine definite article, preceded by the prepositions *de* (=of, from), or *à* (=to), is placed before a substantive beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate, both the article and the preposition are blended into one word. Thus:

de le becomes **du**: **du** *père* (=of the father)
: **du** *héros* (=of the hero)
à le „ **au**: **au** *père* (=to the father)
: **au** *héros* (=to the hero)

Before all plural substantives, *de les* is changed into **des**, and *à les* into **aux**:

des *pères* (=of the fathers), instead of **de les** *pères*
des *héros* (=of the heroes), „ **de les** *héros*
des *mères* (=of the mothers), „ **de les** *mères*
aux *pères* (=to the fathers), „ **à les** *pères*
aux *héros* (=to the heroes), „ **à les** *héros*
aux *mères* (=to the mothers), „ **à les** *mères*

This blending of the definite article with the two prepositions *de* and *à* is called **contraction.**

48. The **indefinite article** in French is:

un =a *or* an, before masculine substantives,
une =a *or* an, before feminine substantives,
des =some, before substantives of both genders;

as:

un *homme* (=a man), **des** *hommes* (=some men)
une *femme* (=a woman), **des** *femmes* (=some women)

N.B.—1. *Some* or *any*, which is frequently omitted in English, must be expressed in French, and repeated before every substantive: *Il a* **de** *l'argent* (=he has money); *j'ai* **des** *pommes et* **des** *poires* (=I have apples and pears).

2. If an adjective precedes the substantive, or if the sentence is negative, **de** only is used: *J'ai* **de** *bonnes pommes* (=I have good apples), *je n'ai pas* **de** *pommes* (=I have no apples).

3. The possessive case is expressed in two ways in English; 'My father's horse,' and 'the horse of my father,' but in French only one way (the latter) is used:

le cheval **de** *mon père*; *le livre* **du** *maître* (=the master's book).

NOTE that whereas in English we may say either 'an iron bar' or 'a bar of iron,' in French the latter way can alone be used: *une barre* **de** *fer*; *une montre* **d'***or* (=a gold watch), *une table* **de** *marbre* (=a marble table).

EXERCISE 11.

1. Le pain, du pain, de bon pain. 2. Le père a du pain. 3. Les bateaux sont sur l'eau. 4. Les joujoux des enfants. 5. Les fleurs des champs. 6. Les oiseaux ont des ailes. 7. Le marin est sur le rivage. 8. Donnez-moi des noisettes. 9. J'ai de bonne viande. 10. L'arbre a des branches. 11. Les bijoux de la mère. 12. Le maître de l'enfant. 13. L'encrier de porcelaine.

[1] livre (*m.*). [2] nous avons. [3] jeu (*m.*). [4] reine (*f.*). [5] racine (*f.*). [6] tronc (*m.*). [7] feuille (*f.*). [8] aile (*f.*). [9] herbe (*f.*). [10] rivage (*m.*). [11] discours (*m.*). [12] général (*m.*). [13] ville (*f.*). [14] chat (*m.*). [15] souris (*f.*). [16] marin (*m.*). [17] rame (*f.*). [18] voiture (*f.*). [19] princesse (*f.*). [20] école (*f.*). [21] maître d'école (*m.*). [22] splendeur (*f.*). [23] roi (*m.*). [24] verre (*m.*).

1. The father has a book[1]. 2. We have[2] some horses. 3. The sports[3] of the children. 4. The queen[4] has some jewels. 5. A tree has roots[5]; a trunk[6] has branches and leaves[7]. 6. The wings[8] of the birds. 7. The grass[9] of the fields. 8. From the boats to the shore[10]. 9. The speeches[11] of the generals[12]. 10. From a village (*m.*) to a town[13]. 11. A cat[14] and a mouse[15]. 12. A collection (*f.*) of fans. 13. The sailor's[16] oars[17]. 14. To the carriage[18] of a princess[19]. 15. Some bread, some meat, and some nuts. 16. The owls of the castles. 17. To a school[20] and to a schoolmaster[21]. 18. The eyes of the grandfathers. 19. To the splendour[22] of the heavens. 20. The ancestors of the king[23]. 21. A glass[24] inkstand.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the *article*?
2. How many kinds of *articles* are there?
3. What is the *definite* article?
4. When is the article *elided*?
5. Define the word *elision*.
6. When is the article *contracted*?
7. What is the *indefinite* article?
8. How do you translate *some* or *any*?
9. When do you use *des* and when *de*?
10. How is the possessive case expressed in French?

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

49. The **adjective** is a word added to the substantive to express the quality of the person or thing—that

is to say, to indicate 'what is' that person or thing. Thus, when we say, *L'homme est mortel* (=man is mortal), or, *Le cheval est noir* (=the horse is black), *mortel* makes us know that man is *mortal*; and *noir*, that the horse is *black*. *Mortel* and *noir* are adjectives.

The word *adjective* comes from the Latin *adjectivus*, and means "added to."

50. There are three different sorts of adjectives:—

1. *Qualifying.*
2. *Determinative.*
3. *Indefinite.*

(1) **Qualifying** adjectives express only the quality, as 'les *grands* hommes'=the *great* (celebrated) men.

(2) **Determinative** adjectives show precisely the object designated by the substantive to which they refer, as '*mon* chapeau'=*my* hat; '*ce* cheval'=*this* horse.

(3) **Indefinite** adjectives mark that the substantive is used in a vague and general manner, as '*Chaque* pays a ses coutumes'=every country has its customs; '*plusieurs* hommes sont venus'=several men have come.

51. Adjectives take the mark of **both genders and numbers.** (*See* §§ 74-76.)

SECTION I.

FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

52. GENERAL RULE.—The feminine of adjectives is formed *by adding an* **e mute** *to the masculine*:

méchant	(=wicked)	*méchant***e**
saint	(=holy)	*sainte*

53. EXCEPTIONS.—Adjectives ending in **e mute** in the masculine do not change for the feminine:

un chapeau large (=a broad-brimmed hat)
la rivière est large (=the river is wide)
un homme maigre (=a thin man)
une femme maigre (=a thin woman)
un homme sage (=a wise man)
une politique sage (=a wise policy)

54. To form the feminine of adjectives ending in **eil,**

el, en, et, and **on**—the final *l*, *n*, or *t must be doubled* before the final **e mute** is added:

MASC.		FEM.
*cru***el**	(=cruel)	*cru***elle**
*pare***il**	(=alike)	*pare***ille**
*anci***en**	(=ancient)	*anci***enne**
*europé***en**	(=European)	*europé***enne**
*bo***n**	(=good)	*bo***nne**
*mue***t**	(=dumb)	*mue***tte**

55. Adjectives ending in **ier, er,** and the six adjectives *complet, concret, discret, inquiet, replet, secret,* instead of doubling the final consonant, take a grave accent on the *e* which precedes the *r* or the *t*. (*See* § 24.)

MASC.		FEM.
*compl***et**	(=complete)	*compl***ète**
*concr***et**	(=concrete)	*concr***ète**
*discr***et**	(=discreet)	*discr***ète**
*inqui***et**	(=uneasy)	*inqui***ète**
*repl***et**	(=replete)	*repl***ète**
*secr***et**	(=secret)	*secr***ète**
*alti***er**	(=haughty)	*alti***ère**
*étrang***er**	(=foreign)	*étrang***ère**

56. *b***eau** (=beautiful) becomes *b***elle** in the feminine

*jum***eau**	(=twin)	,,	*jum***elle**	,,
*nouv***eau**	(=new)	,,	*nouv***elle**	,,
*f***ou**	(=foolish, mad)	,,	*f***olle**	,,
*m***ou**	(=soft)	,,	*m***olle**	,,
*v***ieux**	(=old)	,,	*v***ieille**	,,

These adjectives were formerly spelt in the masculine *bel, jumel, nouvel, fol, mol, vieil*; hence the feminine in *elle* (*belle, jumelle,* etc.). The masculine forms *bel, nouvel, fol, mol, vieil,* are still used before nouns which begin with a vowel or an *h* mute; thus we say:

un **bel** *homme*	(=a fine man)	instead of	un *beau* homme
le **nouvel** *an*	(=the new year)	,,	le *nouveau* an
le **fol** *enfant*	(=the mad, wild boy)	,,	le *fou* enfant
le **mol** *édredon*	(=the soft eider-down)	,,	le *mou* édredon
un **vieil** *ami*	(=an old friend)	,,	un *vieux* ami.

57. To form the feminine of adjectives ending in **x**, change **x** into **s**, and add *e mute*, as:

MASC.		FEM.
*jalou***x**	(=jealous)	*jalou***se**
*heureu***x**	(=happy)	*heureu***se**

Some adjectives even double that **s**, as.

MASC.	FEM.
*fau***x** (=false)	*fau***sse**
*rou***x** (=sandy [of the hair])	*rou***sse**

Exception—

*dou***x** (=sweet)	*dou***ce.**

Formerly *fau***x**, *rou***x** were spelt *fau***s**, *rou***s**, the feminine form being *fau***sse**, *rou***sse**, just as the feminine of *gra***s** is *gra***sse**, and that of *gro***s** is *gro***sse**. (*See* § 61.)

58. Adjectives ending in **f** in the masculine form their feminine by changing the final **f** into **v**, and adding *e mute*:

MASC.		FEM.
*bre***f**	(=short)	*brè***ve**
craintif	(=fearful, timid)	*craintive*
*neu***f**	(=new)	*neu***ve**

59. **Blanc** (=white), **franc** (=frank), **sec** (=dry), **frais** (=fresh, cool), have for their feminine, respectively, *blan***che**, *fran***che**, *sè***che**, *fraî***che.**

But most adjectives ending in **c** hard (sounded as *k*), form their feminine by changing **c** into **que**, as—

MASC.		FEM.
caduc	(=decayed)	*caduque*
public	(=public)	*publique*
turc	(=Turkish)	*turque*

N.B.—The adjective **Grec** (=Greek) keeps the final **c** before the last syllable **que**—*i.e.* = *Grecque.*

The feminine of **long** is *long***ue**, and that of **oblong**, *oblong***ue.**

If *e mute* only had been added to *caduc*, *public*, *turc*, we should have had the forms *caduce*, *publice*, *turce*, in which the *c* would have lost its hard sound. In order to preserve it in the feminine form, it was necessary to replace *c* by its equivalent *qu*; for the same reason *long* (=long) makes *longue*, and not *longe* (which is a substantive feminine—*e.g.* 'longe de veau'=a loin of veal).

60. Adjectives ending in **eur** generally form their feminine by changing *eur* into **euse**: *trompeur* (=deceptive), *trompeuse*; *menteur* (=lying), *menteuse*.

Except *meilleur* (=better), *majeur* (=greater, of age), *mineur* (=minor), and a few others ending in **érieur**; *intérieur* (=interior), *inférieur* (=inferior), etc., which follow the general rule, and add *e mute* to the masculine: *meilleure*, *majeure*, *mineure*, etc.

Accusateur (=accusing), *débiteur* (=owing), *protecteur* (=protecting), and many others in **teur**, change into **trice**: *accusatrice*, *débitrice*, *protectrice*, etc. (*See* § 30 A.)

Pécheur (=sinful), *enchanteur* (=charming), *vengeur* (=avenging), make *pécheresse*, *enchanteresse*, *vengeresse*. We have already seen (§ 30 A) that *eresse* is only the softening of *euresse*.

61. The feminine of *bénin* (=good-natured) is *bénigne*
,, *malin* (=malicious) ,, *maligne*
,, *favori* (=favourite) ,, *favorite*
,, *coi* (=quiet, tranquil) ,, *coite*
,, *dissous* (=dissolved) ,, *dissoute*
,, *tiers* (=third) ,, *tierce*
,, *bellot* (=pretty) ,, *bellotte*
,, *pâlot* (=palish) ,, *pâlotte*
,, *sot* (=foolish) ,, *sotte*
,, *vieillot* (=oldish) ,, *vieillotte*
,, *bas* (=low) ,, *basse*
,, *gras* (=fat) ,, *grasse*
,, *las* (=tired) ,, *lasse*
,, *épais* (=thick) ,, *épaisse*
,, *exprès* (=express, positive) ,, *expresse*
,, *gros* (=big, large) ,, *grosse*
,, *nul* (=nul) ,, *nulle*
,, *gentil* (=pretty, amiable) ,, *gentille*
,, *hébreu* (=Hebrew) ,, *hébraïque*
,, *traître* (treacherous) ,, *traîtresse* (*see* § 30).

Notice also that a diæresis is placed over the final **e** in the feminine of adjectives when the masculine ends in **gu**, in order to keep the sound of the **u**: *aigu* (=acute), *contigu* (=contiguous), *aiguë*, *contiguë*; otherwise the **gue** would be pronounced as in *figue* (=fig).

Exercise 12.

1. Ma tante est riche. 2. L'histoire ancienne est interessante. 3. La nature du tigre est cruelle. 4. La couleur du vin est vermeille. 5. Cette poire est bonne. 6. Vous êtes trop prudente pour ne pas être discrète. 7. Votre fille est jalouse. 8. La température est douce. 9. Sa chevelure est rousse. 10. Craignez la foudre vengeresse. 11. Cette robe est vieille. 12. Cette paysanne est grecque. 13. La viande est trop fraîche. 14. J'ai rencontré votre sœur favorite chez (at the house of) mon oncle. 15. Sa lettre est très flatteuse.

[1] dame. [2] L'Espagne. [3] dernièrement. [4] bienfaiteur. [5] des pauvres. [6] je n'aime pas. [7] voix (*f.*). [8] main (*f.*). [9] punir. [10] coupable. [11] je la regarde comme. [12] affligé. [13] flotte (*f.*). [14] armée (*f.*). [15] nouvelle (*f.*).

1. My favourite sister. 2. Your letter is too flattering. 3. This lady[1] is discreet and prudent. 4. Spain[2] is rich in fruits. 5. Have you met this countrywoman lately[3]? 6. The queen is the benefactress[4] of the poor[5]. 7. I do not like[6] (a) red (head of) hair. 8. He has a cruel disposition. 9. Her voice[7] is sweet. 10. The avenging hand[8] of (the) justice punished[9] the guilty[10]. 11. Your aunt is very kind; I consider her as[11] the consoler of the afflicted[12]. 12. The Turkish fleet[13] and the Greek army[14]. 13. The news[15] is false. 14. That child's face is ruddy.

SECTION II.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

62. General Rule.—The plural of adjectives is formed like that of substantives, *i.e.* by adding **s** to the singular:

MASC. SING.	MASC. PL.	FEM. PL.
grand (=great, tall)	*grands*	*grandes*
saint (=holy)	*saints*	*saintes*

63. When the adjective, in the singular, ends already in **s** or **x**, there is no change in the plural masculine:

MASC. SING. { *gros* (=big), *épais* (=thick), *glorieux* (=glorious) } MASC. PL. { *gros*, *épais*, *glorieux* }

des hommes gros (=big men) *des murs épais* (=thick walls)
des souvenirs glorieux (=glorious recollections)
de mauvais devoirs (=bad exercises)

64. EXCEPTIONS.—I. Adjectives ending in **al** change that termination into **aux** in the masculine plural, as:

MASC. SING. { *ég***al** (=equal), *lég***al** (=legal), *loy***al** (=faithful) — MASC. PL. { *ég***aux**, *lég***aux**, *loy***aux**

The adjectives *fatal* (=fatal), *glacial* (=icy), *final* (=final), *naval* (=naval), and a few others to be learned by use, form their masculine plural by adding **s** to the singular (*fatal***s**, *glacial***s**, etc.).

II. Adjectives ending in **eau** take **x** in the plural masculine:

MASC. SING. { *b***eau** (=beautiful), *nouv***eau** (=new) — MASC. PL. { *beaux*, *nouveaux*

64A. *Hébr***eu** (=Hebrew) takes **x**; *bl***eu** (=blue) and *f***eu** (=deceased, late) take **s** in the plural, and **tout** loses **t** in the masculine plural, which is spelt *tous*: *to***us** *ces rideaux sont bl***eus** (=all these curtains are blue), *des livres hébr***eux** (=Hebrew books).

NOTE ON THE POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.—Adjectives are placed after the substantive in French, but the following generally precede it:

Ancien (=ancient), *beau* (=beautiful, fine), *bon* (=good), *grand* (=large), *gros* (=big), *jeune* (=young), *joli* (=pretty), *mauvais* (=bad), *meilleur* (=better), *nouveau** (=new), *petit* (=small), *vieux* (=old), *vilain* (=ugly).

EXERCISE 13.

1. Les généraux sont vieux. 2. Les chapeaux sont neufs. 3. Les fils sont bons. 4. Les souliers sont grands. 5. Les hommes sont égaux. 6. Ces accidents sont fatals. 7. Les palais sont beaux. 8. Les sujets sont loyaux. 9. Les livres sont épais.

[1] élève. [2] église. [3] étaient arrivés. [4] école (*f.*) communale. [5] spacieux. [6] salle (*f.*). [7] bail (*m.*), pl. baux. [8] difficulté (*f.*).

1. The hats are old. 2. These pupils[1] are equal. 3. These books are thick. 4. These men are loyal. 5. The churches[2] are old. 6. The royal palaces are beautiful. 7. The fatal days had come[3]. 8. The parish school[4] has very spacious[5] rooms[6]. 9. These leases[7] are new. 10. Legal difficulties[8]. 11. These books are moral.

* *Neuf* (=new) never precedes the noun. *Neuf* means recently made: *une maison neuve* (=a new house, *i.e.* recently built). *Nouveau* generally means: *newly acquired, other.*

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is an *adjective*?
2. How many kinds of adjectives are there?
3. Define the *qualifying, determinative, indefinite* adjectives.
4. How is the feminine of adjectives generally formed?
5. Give the feminine of *cruel, pareil, bon,* etc.; also of *complet, concret,* etc.; explain the peculiar formation of the feminine of *beau, nouveau,* etc.
6. Account for the formation of the feminine of adjectives in *x*.
7. What is the feminine of adjectives ending in *f*?
8. Give the feminine of *blanc, turc, grec, long, trompeur, protecteur, meilleur, vengeur, bénin, favori.*
9. How is the plural of adjectives formed?
10. Give the plural masculine of *beau.*
11. How do you form the plural masculine of adjectives ending in *al*? State some exceptions.
12. Where is the qualifying adjective placed in French?

SECTION III.

OF THE DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION IN ADJECTIVES.

65. There are three degrees of signification in adjectives: the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative.*

The **positive** is the adjective itself: *mon cheval est* **noir** (=my horse is black); *noir*=black, which expresses simply a quality, is the *positive.*

66. The adjective is in the **comparative** when it expresses the quality with an idea of *comparison.*

The **comparative** may either express—

(*a*) *superiority*, in which case the adverb **plus** (=more), is placed before the adjective, and **que** (=than), after it, as:

mon cheval est **plus** noir **que** *le vôtre* (=my horse is blacker than yours);

or (*b*) *inferiority*, in which case the adverb **moins** (=less), is placed before the adjective, and **que** (=than), after it:

mon cheval est **moins** *noir* **que** *le vôtre* (=my horse is less black than yours, *or*, not so black as yours);

or (*c*) *equality*, in which case the adverb **aussi** (=as) precedes the adjective, and **que** (=as), follows it:

mon cheval est **aussi** *noir* **que** *le vôtre* (=my horse is as black as yours).

In a negative sentence **si** is often used instead of **aussi**:

mon cheval n'est pas **si** *noir* **que** *le vôtre* (= my horse is not so black as yours).

There are, therefore, three comparatives: (*a*) of *superiority*; (*b*) of *inferiority*; (*c*) of *equality*.

67. EXCEPTIONS.—Three adjectives have their comparative formed irregularly:—

bon (= good)	**meilleur** (= better)
mauvais (= bad)	**pire** (= worse) *plus mauvais*
petit (= small)	**moindre** (= smaller) *plus petit*

Be careful not to mistake the above with their corresponding adverbs:—

bien (= well)	**mieux** (= better)
mal (= ill, badly)	**pis** (= worse) *plus mal*
peu (= little)	**moins** (= less)

68. The superlative may be *relative* or *absolute*.

A. It may express the result of a comparison of several things, one of which possesses a quality, either:

(1) In the highest degree:

mon cheval est **le plus noir** *de la ville* (= my horse is the blackest in the town);

or (2) in the lowest degree:

ma sœur est **la moins forte** *de nous tous* (= my sister is the least strong [*i.e.* the weakest] of us all).

The first is called the *superlative of superiority*, the second, the *superlative of inferiority*.

Both being the result of a comparison, are said to be in the **superlative relative**.

This superlative relative is always formed by placing *le*, *la*, *les*, or *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, etc., before the comparative.

B. The superlative may also express that a quality

exists in a very nigh degree without any comparison with any other thing :

mon cheval est **très** *noir* (= my horse is very black)
ma sœur est **très** *forte* (= my sister is very strong)

This is called the **superlative absolute,** and is expressed in French by **très, fort, extrêmement,** which correspond to the English *very, most* :

il est **très** *heureux* (= he is very happy, *or* most happy)

NOTE.—*Plus, moins, très* must be repeated before every adjective.

Beaucoup answers to both *much* and *very much.*

EXERCISE 14.

1. La rose est la plus belle des fleurs. 2. Le meilleur livre de ma bibliothèque. 3. Il est moins aimable que son frère. 4. Vous êtes plus âgé que moi. 5. Il n'est pas si avancé que votre ami. 6. Le moindre mal. 7. Il va mieux. 8. Ce qui est pis, c'est que la bataille est perdue. 9. Ce livre est très intéressant.

[1] Beau. [2] doux. [3] avancé. [4] eux. [5] santé (*f.*). [6] jeune. [7] mort (*f.*). [8] perte (*f.*), bataille (*f.*). [10] ceci. [11] cela.

1. Fine,[1] finer, finest. 2. Gentle,[2] less gentle, the least gentle. 3. Small, smaller, smallest. 4. A good book, a better book. 5. He is as forward[3] as they[4]. 6. His health[5] is better. 7. I am not so young[6] as your sister. 8. The death[7] of the general is less fatal than the loss[8] of the battle[9]. 9. This[10] is well, that[11] is better. 10. My sister is much better.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What are the three degrees of signification in adjectives?
2. How many different comparatives are there? How are they formed?
3. Give the comparatives of *bon, petit, mauvais.*
4. How is the superlative formed?
5. State what are the different kinds of superlative.

SECTION IV.

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

69. French adjectives are formed in the same way as nouns—that is to say, by *composition* and by *derivation.*

Adjectives formed by *composition* :—(*a*) either two simple adjectives are joined together, such as *aigre* (=

sour) and *doux* (=sweet), to form a compound adjective: *aigre-doux* (=sourish), or (*b*) a prefix is placed before simple adjectives (*see* § 38 [*b*]), for the purpose of giving them a new meaning; as **bien***heureux* (=happy, blessed); **mal***heureux* (=unhappy), **in***constant* (=variable); **sous-***marin* (=submarine); **sur***humain* (=superhuman). The prefixes most often used are: **archi, anti, bien, demi, in, mal, sous, sur, ultra.**

70. New adjectives are formed by *derivation* with the help of substantives, adjectives, and verbs *already existing in French*:

(*a*) **Substantives**: *pierr***eux** (=stony), from *pierre* (=stone);

(*b*) **Adjectives**: (*nor***âtre** (=blackish), from *noir* (=black);

(*c*) **Verbs**: *tromp***eur** (=deceptive), from *tromper* (=to deceive).

71. New adjectives are formed from substantives by adding to the substantives the terminations **eux, ain, in, é, er, u.** Thus: *courage* (=courage), *courag***eux** (=courageous); *monde* (=world), *mond***ain** (=worldly); *enfant* (=child), *enfant***in** (=childish); *aile* (=wing), *ailé* (=winged); *mensonge* (=lie), *mensong***er** (=untrue, lying); *barbe* (=beard), *barb***u** (=bearded).

72. New adjectives are formed from existing adjectives with the help of the four terminations—**âtre, et** (and **elet**), **ot,** and **aud.** These are called *diminutive suffixes*:

Gris (=grey), *gris***âtre** (=greyish); *aigre* (=sour), *aigr***et** and *aigr***elet** (=sourish); *vieux* (=old), *vieill***ot** (=oldish); *lourd* (=heavy), *lourd***aud** (=clumsy).

73. The French language makes new adjectives from verbs, either by taking the **participles** (*present* or *past*) of the verb, or by adding to the stem of the verb the three suffixes **able, ard, if.** Thus *charmer* (=to charm) gives *charm***ant** (charming); *polir* (=to polish), *poli* (=polished); *comparer* (=to compare), *compar***able**

(=comparable); *piller* (=to plunder), *pill***ard** (=plundering); *penser* (=to think), *pens***if** (=pensive).

Exercise 15.

Write a list of compound adjectives by adding to the following one of the **prefixes** *enumerated below; give the feminine of each, and also the meaning of the compound words*:

(*a*)	prefix	*archi*,	ducal, diaconal, épiscopal, fou
(*b*)	,,	*anti*,	social, fébrile, religieux, monarchique
(*c*)	,,	*bien*,	heureux, séant, aimé,* faisant
(*d*)	,,	*demi*,*	nu, fin, mort, fermé
(*e*)	,,	*in*,	constant, suffisant, différent, variable
(*f*)	,,	*mal*,	formé, sain, habile, heureux, intentionné
(*g*)	,,	*sous*,*	marin, jacent, entendu, axillaire
(*h*)	,,	*ultra*,*	libéral, mondain, royaliste, zodiacal

Write in the same manner a list of derived adjectives:

(*a*) From substantives with the suffix:

eux:	pierre, rabot, joie, brume, heur
ain:	monde, Rome, château, proche
in:	enfant, mal
é:	aile, bât, sangle, laite
er:	message, mensonge, passage, potage
u:	pointe, barbe, branche, bosse

(*b*) From verbs with the suffix:

able:	comparer, séparer, voler, punir
ard:	piller, baver, vanter, brouiller
if:	penser, pousser

(*c*) From adjectives with the diminutive suffix:

âtre:	noir, bel (beau), rouge, doux
et (*elet*):	aigre, rond, mou, fou
ot:	vieil (vieux), pâle
aud:	noir, sale, rouge, fin

Questions for Examination.

1. How do the French form new adjectives from adjectives already existing?
2. What are the parts of the verb which are used in the formation of adjectives?
3. Give a list of adjectives formed with the prefixes *bien*, *sous*; and with the suffixes *âtre*, *if*, *able*, etc.
4. How are adjectives formed from substantives?
5. What suffixes are added to the stem of the verb?

* These words take a hyphen.

SECTION V.

AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.

74. The adjective takes the same gender and number as the substantive which it qualifies. Thus: *Dieu est* **clément** (=God is merciful); *ma mère est* **bonne** (=my mother is good); *les hommes sont* **mortels** (=men are mortal).

75. When an adjective qualifies several substantives in the singular, it is put in the plural. Thus: *le riche et le pauvre sont* **égaux** *devant Dieu* (=the rich and the poor are equal in the sight of God).

76. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective is put in the masculine plural. Thus: *le roi et la reine sont* **prudents** (=the king and the queen are prudent).

SECTION VI.

DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

77. There are three sorts of determinative adjectives:

Numeral adjectives,
Demonstrative adjectives,
Possessive adjectives.

I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

78. Numeral adjectives are those which denote *number*, *order*, or *rank*.

There are two kinds of *numeral* adjectives: the *cardinal*, and the *ordinal*.

79. Numeral adjectives indicating the *number* or *quantity* of objects, as *trois* (=three), *quatre* (=four), *cinq* (=five), are called **cardinal**.

With the exception of *zéro*, which comes from the Arabic, all the numeral adjectives are of Latin origin; for the French number as the Romans did, and have adopted their terms of numeration. *Septante*, *octante*, and *nonante*, were formerly used as synonyms of *soixante-dix*, *quatre-vingts*, and *quatre-*

vingt-dix, respectively. During the Middle Ages the *even decades* (60, 80, 120, 140, etc.) stood thus:

trois-vingts for 60 *six-vingts* for 120
quatre-vingts for 80 *sept-vingts* for 140;

—that is to say, three times twenty, four times twenty, etc. Traces of this ancient usage remain even in our day (to say nothing of *quatre-vingts* = 80), as in the hospital 'des *Quinze-Vingts*' (15 × 20 = 300), founded by St. Louis to support 300 Crusaders, whose eyes had been put out by the infidels; so also Bossuet and Voltaire have made use of the expression *six-vingts ans* for 120 *ans* (= 120 years).

Millier (= thousand), *million* (= million), and *milliard* (= a thousand millions), are derived from *mille* with the suffixes *ier*, *on*, and *ard*. All three are nouns.

NOTE.—Care must be taken not to mistake *un* (= a *or* an), indefinite article, for *un* (= one), numeral adjective.

80. **Ordinal** numeral adjectives point out the *rank* or *place* occupied by the object. They are formed, with the exception of *premier* (= first), and *second* (= second), by adding the termination **-ième** to the cardinal adjectives, as:

trois	(= three)	*trois***ième**	(= third)
six	(= six)	*six***ième**	(= sixth)
sept	(= seven)	*sept***ième**	(= seventh)
vingt	(= twenty)	*vingt***ième**	(= twentieth), etc.

When the cardinal adjective ends in *e mute*, that *e* is cut off, as:

quatre	(= four)	*quatr***ième**	(= fourth)
onze	(= eleven)	*onz***ième**	(= eleventh)
douze	(= twelve)	*douz***ième**	(= twelfth)

☞ *Neuf* (= nine), changes *f* into *v*:

neuf	(= nine)	*neuv***ième**	(= ninth)

Cinq (= five), adds *u* before the termination *ième*:

cinq	(= five)	*cinqu***ième**	(= fifth.)

Formerly *prime*, *tiers*, *quint* were used in French as well as *premier*, *troisième*, *cinquième*. Traces of these old forms remain in some few phrases, as *de* **prime** *abord* (= at first sight); *de* **prime** *saut* (= spontaneously); *le* **tiers** *état* (= the third estate, the Commons); *Charles*-**Quint** (= Charles the Fifth, Emperor of Germany and King of Spain, the great rival of Francis the First, King of France); *Sixte*-**Quint** (= Pope Sixtus Quintus, the fifth).

N.B.—The cardinal number is used instead of the ordinal in the following cases: (*a*) after the names of Sovereigns: *Henri* **quatre*** (=Henry IV.); (*b*) in speaking of the days of the month: *le* **trois** *mars* (=the third of March); (*c*) chapters, pages, etc.: *page* **quarante** (=page forty).

☞ But *Premier* (=first) is an exception to this rule: *François* **premier*** (=Francis I.); *le* **premier** *mars* (=the first of March). In compound numbers, *first* is to be translated by *un*: *Le pape Jean vingt et* **un** (=Pope John XXI.); *le vingt et* **un** *juin* (=the twenty-first of June).

81. **Nouns of number** which express a collection are:

8. **une huitaine**	40. **une quarantaine**
10. **une dizaine**	50. **une cinquantaine**
12. **une douzaine**†	60. **une soixantaine**
15. **une quinzaine**	100. **une centaine** / **un cent**
20. **une vingtaine**	
30. **une trentaine**	1000. **un millier**

also *un million* (=a million) and *un milliard* (=a thousand million).

Twofold, etc., are expressed by *double* (=twofold), *triple* (=threefold), *quadruple* (=fourfold), *quintuple* (=fivefold), *décuple* (=tenfold), *centuple* (=a hundredfold).

Fractions are, $\frac{1}{2}$ *un demi* (abstract), *une moitié* (concrete), $\frac{1}{3}$ *un tiers*, $\frac{1}{4}$ *un quart*, $\frac{1}{5}$ *un cinquième*, etc.

Repetition is expressed by *une fois* (=once), *deux fois* (=twice), etc.

A Comparative Table of the Numeral Adjectives.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.	ORDINAL NUMBERS.
N.B.—**Un** is the only cardinal which takes the mark of the feminine: **une.**	*N.B.*—**Premier** and **second** are the only ordinals which are variable: **première, seconde.**
1. un, une	1*st.* premier, première
2. deux	2*nd.* second, -e, *or* deuxième
3. trois	3*rd.* troisième
4. quatre	4*th.* quatrième
5. cinq	5*th.* cinquième
6. six	6*th.* sixième

* Some people put a capital letter to those adjectives—*Henri Quatre, François Premier*, but the *Académie* always spells them with a small letter. *Charles-Quint, Sixte-Quint* are the only exceptions.

† The article **a** which precedes these collectives in English, in sentences like the following, is expressed in French by **la**: *combien* la *douzaine* (=how much a dozen?).

Cardinal Numbers—*continued.*	Ordinal Numbers—*continued.*
7. sept	7*th* septième
8. huit	8*th*. huitième
9. neuf	9*th*. neuvième
10. dix	10*th*. dixième
11. onze	11*th*. onzième
12. douze	12*th*. douzième
13. treize	13*th*. treizième
14. quatorze	14*th*. quatorzième
15. quinze	15*th*. quinzième
16. seize	16*th*. seizième
17. dix-sept	17*th*. dix-septième
18. dix-huit	18*th*. dix-huitième
19. dix-neuf	19*th*. dix-neuvième
20. vingt	20*th*, vingtième
21. vingt et un	21*st*. vingt et unième
22. vingt-deux	22*nd*. vingt-deuxième
23. vingt-trois	23*rd*. vingt-troisième
24. vingt-quatre	24*th*. vingt-quatrième
25. vingt-cinq	25*th*. vingt-cinquième
26. vingt-six	26*th*. vingt-sixième
27. vingt-sept	27*th*. vingt-septième
28. vingt-huit	28*th*. vingt-huitième
29. vingt-neuf	29*th*. vingt-neuvième
30. trente	30*th*. trentième
31. trente et un, etc.	31*st*. trente et unième
40. quarante	40*th*. quarantième
41. quarante et un, etc.	41*st*. quarante et unième
50. cinquante	50*th*. cinquantième
51. cinquante et un, etc.	51*st*. cinquante et unième
60. soixante	60*th*. soixantième
61. soixante et un, etc.	61*st*. soixante et unième, etc.
70. soixante-dix	70*th*. soixante-dixième
71. soixante et onze	71*st*. soixante et onzième
72. soixante-douze	72*nd*. soixante-douzième
73. soixante-treize	73*rd*. soixante-treizième
74. soixante-quatorze	74*th*. soixante-quatorzième
75. soixante-quinze	75*th*. soixante-quinzième
76. soixante-seize	76*th*. soixante-seizième
77. soixante-dix-sept	77*th*. soixante-dix-septième
78. soixante-dix-huit	78*th*. soixante-dix-huitième
79. soixante-dix-neuf	79*th*. soixante-dix-neuvième
80. quatre-vingts*	80*th*. quatre-vingtième

t sounded: 21–29

* See Syntax, Chapter III. Vingt and cent take s when multiplied by a number and not followed by another, so *deux* cent *un* (=201) has no *s*.

Cardinal Numbers—*continued.*	Ordinal Numbers—*continued.*
81. quatre-vingt-un, etc.	81*st.* quatre-vingt-unième, etc.
90. quatre-vingt-dix	90*th.* quatre-vingt-dizième
91. quatre-vingt-onze	91*st.* quatre-vingt-onzième
92. quatre-vingt-douze	92*nd.* quatre-vingt-douzième
93. quatre-vingt-treize	93*rd.* quatre-vingt-treizième
94. quatre-vingt-quatorze	94*th.* quatre-vingt-quatorzième
95. quatre-vingt-quinze	95*th.* quatre-vingt-quinzième
96. quatre-vingt-seize	96*th.* quatre-vingt-seizième
97. quatre-vingt-dix-sept	97*th.* quatre-vingt-dix-septième
98. quatre-vingt-dix-huit	98*th.* quatre-vingt-dix-huitième
99. quatre-vingt-dix-neuf	99*th.* quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième
100. cent	100*th.* centième
101. cent un	101*st.* cent unième
102. cent deux	102*nd.* cent deuxième
103. cent trois	103*rd.* cent troisième
200. deux cents*	200*th.* deux centième
300. trois cents,* etc.	300*th.* trois centième, etc.
1000. mille†	1000*th.* millième
5000. cinq mille	5000*th.* cinq millième
10,000. dix mille	10,000*th.* dix millième
1,000,000. un million	1,000,000*th.* millionième

t mute

N.B.—The words *one*, *and*, in expressions like *cent deux*= one *hundred* and *two*, are suppressed. *Million* and numbers above are substantives, and must be followed by *de*.

Exercise 16.

1. Soixante-treize; Charles-Quint; Louis quatorze. 2. J'ai six mille volumes dans ma bibliothèque. 3. Le premier janvier. 4. L'an mil huit cent soixante. 5. Cette armée se compose de vingt mille hommes. 6. Il a perdu deux cents francs, et sa sœur en a gagné deux cent cinquante. 7. Une douzaine de chemises. 8. Il a mangé le tiers de sa fortune. 9. J'ai dépensé un millier de francs pendant mon voyage. 10. Il est une heure un quart. 11. Il est deux heures moins dix.

[1] Pape Pie. [2] furent massacrés à. [3] perdu. [4] combien. [5] argent. [6] gagne. [7] coûtent. [8] Pouvez-vous manger. [9] gâteau (*m.*). [10] dépensé. [11] un millier (*m.*). [12] livre (*f.*). [13] dînons.

1. 99; 2,846,578. 2. (The) Pope Pius [1] the Fifth. 3. The Protestants were murdered in [2] Paris in 1572. 4. The twenty-first *of* January. 5. Your brother has lost [3] 375 francs. 6. How much [4] (of) money [5] have you gained [6]? 25,000 francs. 7. These

* See Syntax, Chapter III. Vingt and cent take s when multiplied by a number and not followed by another, so *deux* cent *un* (=201) has no *s*.

† Mille, in dates of the Christian era, is spelt mil.

shirts cost[7] 36 shillings a dozen. 8. Four is the third of twelve. 9. Can you eat[8] thirteen cakes[9]? 10. He has spent[10] about a thousand[11] (of) pounds.[12] 11. It was ten minutes to four. 12. We dine[13] at a quarter past seven.

II. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

82. Demonstrative adjectives are used to point out the person or thing spoken of:

ce *château* (=this castle) ce *héros* (=this hero)

The demonstrative adjectives are:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
MASC.	FEM.	(BOTH GENDERS.)
cet (=this *or* that) before a vowel or *h mute*	cette (=this *or* that)	ces (=these *or* those)
ce (=this *or* that)		

cet *enfant* (=this *or* that child)
cet *homme* (=this *or* that man)
ce *lion* (=this *or* that lion)
cette *femme* (=this *or* that woman)
ces *garçons* (=these *or* those boys)
ces *filles* (=these *or* those girls)

☞ When it is necessary to show whether the person or thing we speak of is **near** or **far** from us the adverbs **-ci** (=here) and **-là** (=there) are joined to the substantive by a hyphen, as:

cet *enfant*-ci *est brun* (=*this* child (*i.e.* close to me) is dark)
cet *enfant*-là *est blond* (=*that* child (*i.e.* far from me) is fair)
ces *hommes*-là *sont grands* (=those men are tall)

-ci is the abridgment of *ici*, adverb of place.

Exercise 17.

1. Cette gravure est très belle. 2. Cet enfant a un vilain caractère. 3. J'aime ce cheval-ci, mais ce cheval-là est trop vieux pour moi. 4. Ces jardins-ci sont la propriété de mon père. 5. Cette dame est très aimable. 6. Pourquoi battez-vous ces enfants-là? 7. Que dites-vous de ces jeunes personnes? 8. Ces raisins sont excellents. 9. Ce dictionnaire-ci n'est pas complet. 10. Ces souliers-là sont trop étroits.

[1] Soulier (*m.*), blessent. [2] jeune demoiselle. [3] dites que. [4] déchiré. [5] aimable vieillard. [6] maire (*m.*). [7] prenez. [8] mûr. [9] vu. [10] large. [11] propriété (*f.*). [12] caractère (*m.*). [13] battez. [14] habit (*m.*) *h* m.

1. This child. 2. These generals. 3. I do not like these old horses. 4. This garden belongs to my father. 5. Those shoes hurt[1] that young lady.[2] 6. You say that[3] this engraving is

torn.[4] 7. That amiable old man[5] is the mayor[6] of the town. 8. Take[7] these grapes; they are ripe.[8] 9. Have you seen[9] that dictionary? 10. These hats are too wide.[10] 11. This lady has a fine estate.[11] 12. The temper[12] of that child is abominable. 13. Dust[13] this coat.[14]

III. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

83. Possessive adjectives are placed before the noun to point out *to whom the object belongs*:

mon *cheval* = my horse—*i.e.* the horse which belongs to me
ton *chapeau* = thy hat— *i.e.* the hat „ „ thee
son *bâton* = his stick— *i.e.* the stick „ „ him

The possessive adjectives are:

A. When the object belongs to one person only: **mon** *chien* (= *my* dog):

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
MASC.	FEM.	(FOR BOTH GENDERS).
mon	**ma** [mon]	**mes** my
ton	**ta** [ton]	**tes** thy
son	**sa** [son]	**ses** his, her, its

B. When the object belongs to several persons at the same time: **notre** *chien* (= *our* dog); **nos** *chevaux* (= *our* horses):

SINGULAR. (FOR BOTH GENDERS.)	PLURAL. (FOR BOTH GENDERS.)	
notre	**nos**	our
votre	**vos**	your
leur	**leurs**	their

☞ The masculine forms *mon*, *ton*, *son* are placed before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or *h mute*, instead of the feminine *ma*, *ta*, *sa*; thus we must say:

mon *âme* (= my soul) instead of *ma-âme*
ton *épée* (= thy sword) „ *ta-épée*
son *humeur* (= his *or* her temper), „ *sa-humeur*

In Old French *mon* was strictly kept for masculine, and *ma* for feminine nouns. Whenever *ma*, *ta*, *sa* came before a word beginning with a vowel, the *a* was elided, as it is now for the feminine definite article *la*, and people then said

m'âme, t'épée, s'amie, just as we now say *l'âme, l'épée, l'amie*. Towards the fourteenth century the use of the masculine forms *mon, ton, son* superseded this elision, which has, however, survived in the term of endearment *m'amie*, *ma amie* (=my love), which later on became, by corruption, *ma mie*; hence came the expressions *ta mie, sa mie* (=thy, his lady-love).

NOTE that in French the possessive adjective agrees with the thing possessed, not with the possessor:

mon *père* (=my father)	**son** *père* (=his *or* her father)
ma *mère* (=my mother)	**sa** *mère* (=his *or* her mother)

also, that it must be repeated before each noun:

son *père*, **sa** *mère et* **sa** *sœur* (=his *or* her father, mother, and sister).

EXERCISE 18.

1. Où est votre plume, et où sont mes livres? 2. Notre maison est grande. 3. Je parlerai de vous à mon père. 4. Vos craintes sont ridicules. 5. Ma montre avance. 6. Ton habit est taché. 7. Je vous montrerai ses gravures. 8. Ma mère est à la campagne. 9. Son cheval est boiteux. 10. J'aime beaucoup nos cousins; ils sont très aimables.

[1] Amitié (*f.*) pour. [2] sincère. [3] loi (*f.*). [4] suprême. [5] livre (*m.*). [6] sont à. [7] à la campagne (*f.*). [8] vous montrerai-je. [9] sur la table. [10] gant (*m.*). [11] canne (*f.*). [12] quand. [13] maison (*f.*). [14] brûlé. [15] parlerai. [16] rapporté. [17] chaque pays. [18] coutume (*f.*).

1. Your engravings are good. 2. My friendship for[1] you is sincere.[2] 3. His laws[3] are supreme.[4] 4. These books[5] belong to[6] my mother. 5. Our cousins (*m.*) are in the country.[7] 6. I have lost my watch. 7. Shall I show you[8] his horses? 8. My pens are on the table.[9] 9. Give me my coat, my gloves,[10] and my walking-stick.[11] 10. When[12] have you seen your cousin? 11. His house[13] is burnt.[14] 12. I shall speak[15] to your officer. 13. Her friend has brought back[16] his book. 14. Each country[17] has its own laws and customs.[18]

SECTION VII.

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

84. Indefinite adjectives denote that the noun is used in a vague and general manner, as: **aucune** *lettre n'est arrivée* (=*no* letter has arrived); **quelque** *malheur nous menace* (=*some* misfortune threatens us).

These adjectives are twelve in number:

aucun	any, no, none	**nul**	no, more
autre	other	**plusieurs**	several
certain	some, some one, certain	**quelconque***	whatever, any
chaque	each, every	**quelque**†	some
maint	many a	**tel**	such
même	same, self	**tout**	all, every

chaque and *plusieurs* never vary.

N.B.—**Certain** is an indefinite adjective when it means *un, quelque* (=one, some), as: *certain homme* (=a man, some man). But when it means *sûr* (=sure), it is a qualifying adjective, as: *j'en suis certain* (=I am sure of it).

Aucun and **nul** are accompanied by *ne*: *Je* **ne** *connais* **aucun** *de ses frères* (=I don't know any of his brothers).

Tous les is often used instead of *chaque*:

tous les *jours* every day

Such a is **un tel**, and *the whole* is **tout le**:

dans **une telle** *maison* (=in such a house)
toute la *nuit* (=the whole night).

Exercise 19.

1. Je n'ai aucune envie de punir un autre élève. 2. Certain renard gascon; d'autres disent normand. 3. Chaque jour amène avec lui son travail. 4. Maint écrivassier se croit poète. 5. J'ai rencontré plusieurs soldats dans la rue. 6. Il n'a nulle pitié. 7. Tel maître, telle maison. 8. Tous les matins je lis un livre quelconque. 9. Tel qui rit vendredi, dimanche pleurera. 10. Plusieurs de vos amis sont ici.

[1] élève (*m.*). [2] ne sortira vendredi. [3] semaine (*f.*). [4] écrivassier (*m.*). [5] voiture (*f.*). [6] ferait plus de. [7] vu. [8] personne (*f.*). [9] sentiment (*m.*). [10] vais. [11] rebelle (*m.*). [12] renard (*m.*).

1. Have you (of) such pupils[1]? 2. None of these soldiers shall go out on Friday.[2] 3. Every week[3] my father brings with him many a scribbler.[4] 4. Like master, like man. 5. Your friend has several horses. 6. Are you of another opinion (*f.*)? 7. I have seen several fine carriages.[5] 8. Another poet would do more[6] work every day. 9. Have you seen[7] the same persons[8]? 10. Every child likes (the) cakes. 11. He has no sense[9] of envy. 12. I am going[10] to punish several rebels.[11] 13. I have met no fox[12] in the street.

* *quelconque* always follows the noun. † *quelques* means *a few*.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. Give a list of the *determinative adjectives.*
2. What are the *numeral adjectives?*
3. Give a list of the cardinal numbers.
4. What is the difference between *un* indefinite article, and *un* numeral?
5. How do you form the French *ordinal* numbers?
6. What are the numerals which serve to *multiply?*
7. Write down the *demonstrative adjectives.*
8. Remark on the demonstrative adjective *ce.*
9. Give a list of the *possessive adjectives.*
10. State the peculiar use made of the words *mon, ton, son.*
11. What are the *indefinite adjectives?*
12. Remark on the adjective *certain.*

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE PRONOUN.

85. The **pronoun** is a word which takes the place of the noun. In the sentence **Henri** *est espiègle, mais* **il** *deviendra raisonnable* (=Henry is frolicsome, but he will grow steady), the word **il**, being put there instead of **Henri**, is a pronoun.

Pronoun is the Latin *pronomen* (*pro*=instead of, *nomen* =noun).

86. The pronoun takes the gender and number of the noun instead of which it is used. *Les hirondelles partent;* **elles** *vont dans les pays chauds* (=the swallows are on the wing; they go to warm countries). **Elles** is feminine plural, because **hirondelles** is feminine plural. *Votre maison est grande;* **la mienne** *est plus petite* (=your house is large; mine is smaller). **La mienne** is feminine singular to agree with **maison.**

87. There are five kinds of pronouns:

1. *The* **Personal,**
2. *The* **Demonstrative,**
3. *The* **Possessive,**
4. *The* **Relative,**
5. *The* **Indefinite.**

SECTION I.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

88. Personal pronouns are those which point out the persons, and indicate the part they play in the speech.

In the sentence je *devine que* tu *viens de chez* lui (=I guess you come from his house), we distinguish at once three different persons, *je*, *tu*, *lui*, as being the actors in this little drama. These actors have different parts, which are indicated here by three distinct words: the *first* part (je=I) is that of the actor *who speaks*; the *second* (tu=thou), that of the actor *spoken to*; and the *third* (lui=him), that of the actor *spoken of*.

These three *characters*, or rather *parts*, are called **personnes**=persons (from the Latin [*dramatis*] *personæ*), and represented by the **personal pronouns**, which point out beings *by the part they act in* that short piece called a *sentence*.

89. The personal pronouns are divided into *conjunctive*, *disjunctive*, and *reflexive*.

The **conjunctive personal pronouns**, or pronouns immediately connected with the verb, are:

SINGULAR.

Nom.	je	I	tu	thou	il, elle he, she, it
Gen.					en of it, of him, of her
Dat.	me	to me	te	to thee	lui, y (*of things*), to him, to her, to it
Acc.	me	me	te	thee	le, la him, her (it)

PLURAL.

Nom.	nous	we	vous	you	ils, elles they
Gen.					en of them
Dat.	nous	to us	vous	to you	leur to them
Acc.	nous	us	vous	you	les them

90. Conjunctive pronouns, used as SUBJECT, are placed *before* the verb, except when the sentence is interrogative: il *vient* (=he comes); *vient*-il? (=does he come?).

91. When the personal pronouns are used as OBJECT:

A. If the verb *is not* in the imperative affirmative,

the pronouns are placed *before* the verb and in order of person:

je **te le** *donne* (=I give it thee)
vous le *donne-t-il?* (=does he give it you?)
il **me le** *dira* (=he will tell it me)

If both pronouns are in the same, *i.e.* the third person, the direct object precedes the indirect:

je **le lui** *donnerai* (=I will give it him)
ne **le leur** *dites pas* (=do not say it to them)

B. If the verb *is* in the imperative affirmative, the pronouns are placed *after* the verb, and the direct object comes before the indirect. **Me, te,** then become **moi, toi,** unless followed by **en,** when they are written **m', t':**

donnez-**moi** *cela* (=give me that)
apportez-**le-moi** (=bring it me)
donnez-**m'en** (=give me some)
dites-**le-lui** (=say it to him *or* to her)

92. 1. All these pronouns are used for both genders, with the exception of:

il, le, ils, which are reserved for the masculine; and
elle, la, elles, which are reserved for the feminine.

2. **Vous** is used for politeness' sake instead of **tu,** and the adjective remains in the singular: *Paul,* **vous** *êtes triste* (=Paul, you are sad).

3. The pronouns **le, la, les** must not be mistaken for the definite article *le, la, les*; the former always accompany a verb, the latter a substantive: *Voici* **le** *livre que je vous ai promis, prenez*-**le** (=here is *the* book I promised you; take *it*).

4. **Leur** is a personal pronoun when it means *to them,* and accompanies a verb. In that case it never takes the mark of the plural, as: *Je* **leur** *ai donné un livre* (=I have given them a book). It is a possessive adjective when it means *their,* and is placed before a substantive, as: *Ces enfants ont perdu* **leurs** *livres* (=these children have lost their books).

5. **En** is a pronoun when it is used instead of *de lui* (=of him, of it); *d'elle* (=of her, of it); *d'eux, d'elles*

(=of them): *J'aime cet enfant et j'*en *suis aimé* (=I love this child, and I am loved by him). Otherwise it is either an adverb, *j'*en *viens* (=I come from thence), or a preposition, *je suis* en *France* (=I am in France).

6. **Y** is a pronoun when it means *à cette chose* (=to this thing), *à ces choses* (=to these things), *à cela* (=to that): *L'affaire est importante, j'*y *donnerai tous mes soins* (=the affair is important; I shall bestow all my care upon it). Otherwise it is an adverb: *Tu* y *cours* (=thou runnest there).

93. The **disjunctive personal pronouns**, or pronouns used apart from the verb, are:

SINGULAR.

Nom.	**Moi**	I	**toi**	thou	**lui** he	**elle** she
Gen.	**de moi**	of me	**de toi**	of thee	**de lui** / **d'elle**	of him / of her
Dat.	**à moi**	to me	**à toi**	to thee	**à lui** / **à elle**	to him / to her
Acc.	**moi**	me	**toi**	thee	**lui** him	**elle** her

PLURAL.

Nom.	**Nous**	we	**vous**	you	**eux, elles**	they
Gen.	**de nous**	of us	**de vous**	of you	**d'eux, d'elles**	of them
Dat.	**à nous**	to us	**à vous**	to you	**à eux, à elles**	to them
Acc.	**nous**	us	**vous**	you	**eux, elles**	them

These are sometimes called the emphatic forms of the personal pronouns.

94. The disjunctive pronouns are always the same, whether used as subject or as object of a verb. They are used as subject only when it is necessary to establish a distinction between two persons or things, or for emphasis: **Lui** *m'a donné de l'argent*, **eux** *m'ont donné à manger* (=*he* gave me money, *they* gave me to eat); **moi**, *je vous le dis* (=*I* tell you so).

95. These pronouns are used in French after the verb **être**, after a preposition or conjunction, and also in answer to questions: *C'est* **moi** (=it is I); *c'était* **lui** (=it was he); *ce livre est à* **moi** (=this book is mine, belongs to me); *il parle contre* **toi** (=he speaks against

you); *il est plus grand que* **moi** (= he is taller than I); *qui vient là?* **Moi** (= who comes there? *I*).

In order to give still greater force to the expression, the adjective *même* is joined by a hyphen to these pronouns, as:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
moi-même	myself	**nous-mêmes**	ourselves
toi-même	thyself	**vous-mêmes**	yourselves
lui-même	himself	**eux-mêmes**	themselves
elle-même	herself	**elles-mêmes**	themselves

soi-même, oneself, himself, herself, etc.

96. The **reflexive personal pronoun** (conjunctive, *se*; disjunctive, *soi*) is used only for the third person, and for both genders and both numbers. The first and second persons are formed with the pronouns given above. (See p. 111.)

N.B.—In modern French, *soi* is only used when the subject of the verb is *on*, *tout le monde*, *chacun*, etc., or after an impersonal verb.

Exercise 20.

1. Il travaille avec soin. 2. C'est moi qui irai le voir. 3. Je crois que c'est à toi qu'il parle. 4. Adressez-vous à lui. 5. Elle lui parlera de votre affaire. 6. Je le vois d'ici. 7. Elle est si bonne que je veux la récompenser. 8. Ces fleurs me plaisent beaucoup. 9. Croyez-moi, consentez-y. 10. J'ai lu votre livre, et j'en parlerai dans la revue.

[1] marche. [2] vois. [3] voyons. [4] pensez. [5] jouent. [6] dansent. [7] donnerai. [8] qui plaisent. [9] croyez. [10] récompenser. [11] consens. [12] parle. [13] venons. [14] en. [15] montrerai. [16] c'était. [17] parlez. [18] souvenez-vous de. [19] loin. [20] allez. [21] allons. [22] font tout. [23] on ne doit jamais parler. [24] flattent. [25] sais.

Conjunctive pronouns:—1. I walk[1]; thou seest[2] these flowers; he has read your book; your sisters are very good. 2. She works with much (of) care; we see,[3] you think,[4] they (*masc.*) play,[5] they (*fem.*) dance.[6] 3. I shall give[7] him these flowers which please[8] (to) him. 4. Go *and* (to) see him. 5. You believe[9] that I wish to recompense[10] her. 6. We have read the review of your book. 7. I consent[11] to it; I speak[12] of him; he has some of them; we come[13] from that place.[14] 8. I will show[15] it to you; don't show it to her.

Disjunctive pronouns:—1. It is he; it was[16] I; speak[17] to themselves (*masc.*); remember[18] them (*fem.*). 2. Far[19] from thee; go[20] with them; let us go[21] there ourselves; they do everything[22] themselves (*fem.*). 3. One should never speak[23] of oneself. 4. They flatter[24] themselves. 5. I who was there (I) know[25] it better than he.

SECTION II.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

97. Demonstrative pronouns are used to point out the person or thing spoken of: *Mon cheval est plus grand que* **celui-ci** (=my horse is higher than this one).

98. The demonstrative pronouns are the following:—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Neuter.	**ce**	this, that, it	——	
Masc.	**celui**	the one	**ceux**	the ones, these
Fem.	**celle**	this, that	**celles**	those

ce *sera* (=it, that will be); **c'***est lui* (=it, that is he)
ce *qui arrive* (=it, the thing which happens)
ce *que nous entendons* (=it, the thing which we hear)
celui *qui viendra* (=the one, he who shall come)
ceux *que vous voyez* (=the ones, those whom you see)

99. When it is necessary to express distance **ci** or **là** is added to **ce** (without a hyphen), **ceci, cela,*** to **celui** (with a hyphen), **celui-ci, celui-là, celle-ci, celle-là, ceux-ci, ceux-là,** etc.

100. Ce is a pronoun—

1. When it accompanies a verb:

Ce *doit être son frère* (=it must be his brother); *est-***ce** *lui?* (=is it he?).

2. When it is placed before the pronouns *qui* (=who), *que* (=whom), *quoi* (=what), *dont* (=whose):

J'irai voir **ce** *qui est arrivé* (=I will go and see what has happened); *je ferai* **ce** *que vous me demandez* (=I will do what you ask me).

---

* **cela** is familiarly shortened into **ça.**

But placed before a noun **ce** is an adjective: **Ce** *livre* (=this book); **ce** *chapeau* (=that hat).

Exercise 21.

1. Mon livre et celui de mon frère. 2. Ma chaise et celle de ma cousine. 3. Ses crayons et ceux de Guillaume. 4. Vos offres et celles de votre ami. 5. Préférez-vous ce couteau-ci ou celui-là? 6. Gardez ces bottes-là; je choisis celles-ci. 7. Ceci mérite attention. 8. Cela ne vaut rien. 9. Quel est ce monsieur? Ce doit être son colonel. 10. Est-ce bien lui?

[1] préfère. [2] qui faites. [3] commode. [4] mais. [5] ne vaut rien. [6] paire (*f.*). [7] choisis. [8] parce que ce doit être. [9] ouvrage (*m.*). [10] récompense (*f.*).

1. I prefer[1] these boots to those. 2. Is it you who make[2] these offers? 3. Give me this or that. 4. Your chairs are not so comfortable[3] as those of your friend. 5. These knives are excellent, but[4] this one is good for nothing.[5] 6. Of several pairs[6] of boots, this one or that one? these or those? 7. I choose[7] this book, because it must be[8] an excellent work.[9] 8. Your brother's attention deserves a reward.[10] 9. I do not like that. 10. The one that I show you.

SECTION III.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

101. Possessive pronouns take the place of the noun, and at the same time denote possession: *Mon chapeau est meilleur que* **le vôtre** (=my hat is better than yours); *ton cheval est plus noir que* **le sien** (=thy horse is blacker than his).

When there is **only one** possessor the possessive pronouns are:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
1st Person	Masc. **le mien** ...	**les miens** ...	mine
	Fem. **la mienne** ...	**les miennes**	
2nd Person	Masc. **le tien**... ...	**les tiens** ...	thine
	Fem. **la tienne** ...	**les tiennes**...	
3rd Person	Masc. **le sien**... ...	**les siens** ...	his, hers, its
	Fem. **la sienne** ...	**les siennes**...	

Mien, tien, sien are softened forms of *mon, ton, son.* In the Middle Ages the pronouns *mien, tien, sien* could be used as adjectives, that is to say, placed between the article and the name of the possessed object; people said indiscrimin-

ately either *mon frère* (=my brother), *ton vassal* (=thy vassal), or *le* **mien** *frère*, *le* **tien** *vassal*, etc. This rule soon disappeared, but some remains of it are still found in the familiar expressions: *un* **mien** *cousin* (=a cousin of mine), *le* **tien** *propre* (=thine own), *une* **sienne** *tante* (=an aunt of his), etc.

When there are **several** possessors the possessive pronouns are:

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1ST PERSON	MASC. **le nôtre** ... .. / FEM. **la nôtre**		**les nôtres**	ours
2ND PERSON	MASC. **le vôtre** ... ... / FEM. **la vôtre**		**les vôtres**	yours
3RD PERSON	MASC. **le leur**... ... ... / FEM. **la leur**...		**les leurs**	theirs

Mine, thine, etc., are often expressed by **à moi, à toi**, etc.:

ce livre est **à moi** (=this book is mine)

Of mine, etc., is rendered in a different way:

c'est un **de mes** *cousins* (=he is a cousin of mine)
une **de ses** *lettres* (=a letter of his)

EXERCISE 22.

1. Votre fusil est plus lourd que le mien. 2. J'aime votre maison, mais je n'aime pas la leur. 3. Est-il à ma place ou à la sienne? 4. Voici mes patins; montrez-moi les vôtres. 5. Donne-moi un morceau de ton gâteau, le mien n'est pas encore arrivé. 6. Quels jolis enfants! Sont-ce les vôtres? 7. Le domestique m'a apporté mes lettres et les leurs. 8. Il a parlé à mon colonel et au sien. 9. Je vois souvent vos amis et les siens. 10. Je trouve mon pays meilleur que le vôtre.

[1] domestique (*m.*). [2] n'est pas encore arrivé. [3] canif (*m.*). [4] pays (*m.*). [5] Angleterre (*f.*). [6] confiance (*f.*). [7] joli. [8] étang (*m.*).

1. Your servant[1] is here, but mine has not arrived yet.[2] 2. My colonel's gun is heavier than yours. 3. Is that your pen-knife[3]? No; it is his. 4. (The) France is my country[4]; (the) England[5] is yours. 5. My friend deserves your confidence[6] and theirs. 6. His skates and thine. 7. He speaks to your pretty[7] children and to mine. 8. Your gloves and hers. 9. This pond[8] is smaller than ours. 10. I have read your book and his. 11. I had a horse of his.

SECTION IV.

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

102. Relative pronouns are those which connect the noun or pronoun they stand for with the part of the sentence which follows them: *Le chêne* **qui** *ombrage notre cour est très vieux* (=the oak which overshades our yard is very old); *le livre* **que** *vous m'avez prêté est intéressant* (=the book [which] you have lent me is interesting).

103. The word represented by the relative pronoun is called the **antecedent.** In the above examples *chêne* and *livre* are the antecedents of *qui* and of *que.*

The French word *antécédent* comes from the Latin *antecedentem* (=preceding), because it is placed before the relative pronoun.

104. The relative pronouns are:

1. **qui** who, which, that (*persons and things*)
   de qui whose, of *or* from whom } (*persons only*)
   à qui to whom }
2. **que*** whom, which (*persons and things*)
3. **quoi** what (*things only*) after prepositions
4. **dont** whose, of *or* from whom, of *or* from which (*persons and things*)
5. **lequel** who, which (*persons and things*).

The relative pronouns *qui, que, quoi, dont* are **invariable,** but *lequel* is **variable**:—

SINGULAR.

MASC.	FEM.	
lequel	*laquelle*	who, which
duquel	*de laquelle*	of *or* from whom, of which
auquel	*à laquelle*	to whom, to which

PLURAL.

lesquels	*lesquelles*	who, which
desquels	*desquelles*	of whom, of which
auxquels	*auxquelles*	to whom, to which

* *Que* is spelt *qu'* before a vowel; *qui* is never shortened.

105. REMARK.—**Que,** pronoun, must not be mistaken for *que* adverb or *que* conjunction. It is a pronoun in *la rose* **que** *j'ai cueillie* (=the rose [which] I gathered), an adverb in **que** *de belles roses j'ai cueillies!* (=how many beautiful roses I have plucked!), a conjunction in *j'espère* **que** *vous réussirez* (=I hope [that] you will succeed).

NOTE that the relative pronouns are often understood in English, but must always be expressed in French.

106. The **Interrogative pronouns** are:

qui? who? whom? (*persons only*)
à qui? de qui? etc., to whom? of whom? etc.
que? what? (*things only*)
à quoi? de quoi? etc. to what? of what? etc.
lequel? laquelle? etc. which? (*persons and things*).

Instead of **qui?** the forms **qui est-ce qui?** who?
qui est-ce que? whom?
and instead of **que?** the forms **qu'est-ce qui?** what? (*subject*), **qu'est-ce que?** what? (*object*),
are sometimes used:

qui *êtes-vous?* (=who are you?)
qui *demandez-vous?* (=whom do you ask for?)
que *demandez-vous?* (=what do you ask for?)
de quoi *parlez-vous?* (=of what do you speak?)
quoi? que *dit-on?* (=what? what do they say?)
voici deux accusés, **lequel** *est coupable?* (=here are two accused persons, which [of them] is guilty?)

107. There is besides the **interrogative adjective** *quel,* which may also be used as an **interrogative pronoun.**

Quel *âge avez-vous?* (=what is your age? *or* how old are you?) **Quelle** *heure est-il?* (=what o'clock is it?) *J'ai des nouvelles à vous apprendre.*—**Quelles** *sont-elles?* (=I have some news to tell you.—What is it?) *Ces livres* **quels** *sont-ils?* (=those books, what are they?)

108. **Quel** is variable:

masc. sing.	*quel*	masc. plur.	*quels*
fem. sing.	*quelle*	fem. plur.	*quelles*

Exercise 23.

1. La personne qui vous connaît. 2. Le marchand que vous avez vu. 3. La bataille dont je parle. 4. En quoi vous ai-je trompé? 5. L'affaire à laquelle il a donné ses soins. 6. Quel âge a cet enfant? 7. De qui vous a-t-il parlé? 8. A quoi vous occupez-vous? 9. La rose que j'ai cueillie. 10. La loi qui est votée.

[1] marchand. [2] parlais hier. [3] failli. [4] s'applique-t-il. [5] cassé. [6] vaisseau (*m.*). [7] acheté part demain. [8] poème (*m.*). [9] tout le monde. [10] ministre (*m.*). [11] bonté. [12] doit. [13] tigre (*m.*). [14] habitent. [15] dessin. [16] consacre. [17] traité (*m.*). [18] lisez. [19] plein. [20] idée (*f.*)

1. Have you seen the merchant[1] of whom I spoke yesterday[2]? 2. In what have you failed[3]? 3. To what does he apply himself[4]? 4. Which of my fans has he broken[5]? 5. The ship[6] (which) he has bought sails to-morrow[7]. 6. The poem[8] of which everybody[9] speaks is by Victor Hugo. 7. The minister[10] to whose* kindness[11] he owes[12] his place (*f.*). 8. The lions (*m.*) and tigers[13] which inhabit[14] the desert. 9. (The) drawing[15] is an art (*m.*) to which I devote[16] myself. 10. The treatise[17] you are reading[18] is full[19] of original ideas.[20]

SECTION V.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

109. Indefinite pronouns denote persons or things in a general, vague, and indeterminate manner: **Quelqu'un** *est venu* (=somebody came); **on** *nous l'a dit* (=some one told us so); **ne** *faites pas de mal à* **autrui** (=do no harm to others).

The indefinite pronouns are

autrui, other people, others	**rien**, something
chacun, every one	**rien ne**, nothing
on (*or* **l'on**), people, one, they	**l'un l'autre**, one another
personne, somebody	**l'un et l'autre**, both
personne ne, nobody	**l'un ou l'autre**, either
quiconque, whoever	**ni l'un ni l'autre**, neither
quelqu'un, somebody	

110. Personne (from Latin *persona*) is a **pronoun** (and of the *masculine* gender) when it is not accompanied by an article or adjective, as:

Personne *n'est venu* (=no one came); **personne** *a-t-il jamais parlé comme vous?* (=has any one ever spoken like you?)

* Translate: to the kindness of whom.

In all other cases **personne** is a *feminine* **substantive**:

Cette **personne** *est très obligeante* (=this person [either *man* or *woman*] is very obliging).

Rien is a **pronoun** when not accompanied by an article or an adjective:

Je n'ai **rien** *vu* (=I have not seen anything).

Otherwise, it is a *masculine* **noun**:

Un songe, un **rien**, *tout lui fait peur* (=a dream, a trifle, everything frightens him). (La Fontaine, *Fables*, viii. 11.)

111. Some **indefinite adjectives** may be used by themselves, *i.e.* without being placed before a substantive, and are therefore considered as **indefinite pronouns**. Such are **aucun, autre, certains, nul, plusieurs, tel, tout**:

Nul *n'est irréprochable* (=no one is blameless); **plusieurs** *ont pleuré* (=several shed tears); **tout** *est perdu* (=all [everything] is lost); **certains** *l'affirment* (=some persons affirm this).

Remark.—In answers, **rien** and **personne** do not require the *ne*: *Qu'avez-vous vu?* **rien** (=what have you seen? nothing).

Exercise 24.

1. Quelqu'un est venu vous voir. 2. Ne dites jamais de mal d'autrui. 3. Chacun pense que la guerre sera déclarée. 4. Quiconque ouvrira cette porte, sera puni. 5. On dit qu'un incendie a détruit le palais du roi. 6. Ils se sont mordus l'un l'autre. 7. Je n'ai rien entendu. 8. Voici deux bons fouets, prenez l'un ou l'autre. 9. J'aime l'un et l'autre. 10. Chacun a fait son devoir. 11. Tout vient à point à qui sait attendre.

[1]bonheur (*m.*). [2]rend. [3]heureux. [4]toujours gai. [5]société (*f.*). [6]se calomnient. [7]porte (*f.*). [8]fermé. [9]plaît. [10]coûté plusieurs. [11]battu. [12]pauvre. [13]sévèrement. [14]erreur (*f.*). [15]il y avait. [16]qu'y avait-il?

1. The happiness[1] of others makes[2] me happy[3]. 2. One is always merry[4] in your society[5]. 3. They calumniate[6] one another. 4. Either of these doors[7] shall be closed[8]. 5. Neither of these whips pleases[9] me. 6. Each one of these palaces has cost several[10] millions. 7. Whoever has beaten[11] that poor[12] child shall be severely[13] punished. 8. I have seen nothing of the fire. 9. Each one has his opinion. 10. No one is exempt from error[14]. 11. There was[15] nobody; what was there[16]? Nothing; there was nothing.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. Define a *pronoun*.
2. What is the rule for the agreement of pronouns?
3. How many kinds of pronouns are there?
4. Define a *personal pronoun*.
5. Give a list of the personal pronouns, and say where you place the conjunctive; and where the disjunctive?
6. When is *vous* used instead of *tu*?
7. State the difference between *le, la, les,* articles, and *le, la, les,* pronouns;—between *leur,* adjective, and *leur,* pronoun;—between *en,* pronoun, and *en,* adverb;—between *y,* pronoun, and *y,* adverb.
8. Mention a *compound* pronoun.
9. Give a table of the demonstrative pronouns.
10. When is *ce* a pronoun?—When is it an adjective?
11. Give a list of the *possessive* pronouns.
12. What is meant by a *relative* pronoun?
13. What is an *antecedent*?
14. Remark on the word *que.*
15. What are the *interrogative* pronouns?—What is *quel*?
16. What is the difference between *qui* and *que,* 1° as relative, 2° as interrogative pronouns?
17. Write a table of the *indefinite* pronouns.
18. Remark on *personne*;—on *rien.*
19. Name the indefinite adjectives used as pronouns.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERB.

112. The **verb** is a word which expresses the idea of an *action* or of a *state* which can be ascribed to a person or to a thing: *Le cheval* **est** *docile* (=the horse is docile); *le loup* **mange** *l'agneau* (=the wolf eats the lamb).

113. When we say, *le loup mange l'agneau,* the word *mange* (=eats), which indicates the action performed by the wolf, is called the **verb**; the word *loup* (=wolf), indicating the animal which performs the action, is called the **subject**; the word *agneau* (=lamb), pointing out the animal eaten by the wolf, is called the **complement** or **object.**

114. The word *agneau* (=lamb) is called the **complement** or **object** because it *completes* the idea which the verb *mange* (=eats) commences, by indicating what animal the wolf is eating. There are two kinds of complements: the **direct** and the **indirect.**

115. The **direct** *complement* is that which completes the meaning of the verb in a *direct* manner, that is to say, without the aid of any other word: *il aime* **son père** (=he loves his father). *Son père* is a direct complement.

116. The **indirect** *complement* is that which completes *indirectly* the meaning of the verb, that is to say, with the aid of certain words, such as *à*, *de*, etc. (=to, of, etc.), which are called **prepositions**: *il obéit* **à son père** (=he obeys his father), *il dépend* **de son père** (=he depends on his father), **à** *son père*, **de** *son père* are indirect complements.

There is only one verb properly so called, namely the verb *être* (=to be), which expresses existence, and is designated as *substantive verb*; all the other verbs are called *adjective verbs*, because, in addition to the idea of existence, they also describe a *quality*, a manner of being of the subject: thus, *je dors* (=I sleep) is the same as **je suis** (=*I am*, denoting existence) **dormant** (=*sleeping*, denoting the quality, the manner of being).

117. In studying verbs, we must examine *the stem, the termination, the number, the person, the mood, the tense.*

1. Stem.—2. Termination.

118. The verb is always formed of two distinct parts: 1st. A part which does not change, called the **stem** of the verb. 2nd. A changeable and variable part, which is called the **termination** or **ending**. Thus in *je march***e** (=I walk), *nous march***ons** (=we walk), *vous march***erez** (=you will walk), the stem *march-* expresses the action of walking; and the syllables **-e, -ons, -erez,** which follow the stem and mark the different shades of the meaning, are the terminations.

3. Numbers.

119. Verbs, like nouns, have two **numbers**: the singular, relating to one person and thing alone: **je** *marche* (=I walk), **tu** *lis* (=thou readest), **il** *mange* (=he eats); the plural, when several are alluded to:

nous *lisons* (=we read), **vous** *marchez* (=you walk), **ils** *finissent* (=they finish).

4. Persons.

120. The action expressed by the verb can be performed by the person who speaks: **je** *marche* (=I walk), **nous** *mangeons* (=we eat); by the person to whom we speak: **tu** *marches* (=thou walkest), **vous** *mangez* (=you eat), or by the person of whom we speak: **il** *lit* (=he reads), **ils** *marchent* (=they walk). The French language marks these changes of persons, both in the singular and in the plural, by adding for each of them a new termination (**-e, -ons, -ez,** etc.) to the stem of the verb. These different terminations are called in grammar the **persons** of the verb.

5. Moods.

121. The *mood* is the *manner* in which the verb presents the state or action which it expresses.

Mode (=mood) is from the Latin *modus* (=manner).

There are in French five *moods*: the **indicative**, the **imperative**, the **conditional**, the **subjunctive**, and the **infinitive.**

1. The **indicative** mood merely *indicates* that the action takes place: *je marche* (=I walk), *tu lis* (=thou readest).

2. The **imperative** mood expresses *command*: *marchez* (=walk), *lisons* (=let us read).

3. The **conditional** mood shows that the action would take place, if a certain condition were fulfilled; *je sortirais, s'il faisait beau* (=I should go out, if the weather were fine).

4. The **subjunctive** mood presents the action in a doubtful and uncertain manner, because it always depends upon another action: *je veux que tu viennes* (=I wish you to come). *Que tu viennes* is governed by the verb *je veux*, and depends on it.

5. The **infinitive** mood presents the action simply in

a vague, *indefinite* manner, without any distinction of number or person: *lire* (=to read), *faire* (=to do), *remplir* (=to fill).

REMARK.—The *infinitive mood*, which takes no notice of persons, is called the *impersonal mood*; the other moods, which indicate the persons, are called *personal moods*.

6. Tenses.

122. The *tense* is the form assumed by the verb to show at what *time*, at what *moment* the action alluded to takes place.

There are three principal tenses: the **past**, the **present**, the **future**.

123. The **present** shows that the action occurs at the time when we are speaking, as, *je lis* (=I read); the **past** shows that the action is already performed at the time when we are speaking, as, *j'ai marché* (=I have walked); the **future** shows that the action will be performed at some future time, as, *je marcherai* (=I shall walk).

124. There is only one *present*, but there are several *past* and several *future* tenses, because every action can be more or less past, more or less future.

125. There are five kinds of *past* or *perfect* tenses: the *imperfect*, the *preterite* or *past definite*, the *past indefinite*, the *past anterior*, and the *pluperfect*.

1. The **imperfect** expresses a past state or action which was simultaneous with another: *il* **lisait** *lorsque j'entrai* (=he was reading when I came in).

It is also used when speaking of a state or action which was habitual or characteristic: *il* **venait** *tous les jours* (=he came [used to come] every day).

2. The **preterite** or **past definite** shows that a thing was done at a *definite*, determined epoch, which is completely past at the time when we are speaking: *je* **chantai** *hier toute la soirée* (=I sang all last evening). It is chiefly used in the narrative style.

3. The **past indefinite** (also called **perfect**) expresses an action which has taken place at a vague, indefinite epoch: *j'*ai lu *ce livre* (=I have read that book). It is now frequently used instead of the preterite: *je l'*ai vu *hier* (=I saw him yesterday).

4. The **pluperfect** expresses that a certain thing was done before another one took place in a time now past: *j'*avais lu *quand vous êtes entré* (=I had read when you entered).

5. The **past anterior** marks that an action took place *immediately before* another one now past: *quand j'*eus lu *ce journal, je sortis* (=as soon as I had read that newspaper, I went out).

126. There are two kinds of *future*: the future *simple*, and the future *anterior*.

1. The **future simple** indicates that the thing in question shall be, or shall take place: *je* chanterai *demain* (=I shall sing to-morrow).

2. The **future anterior** indicates that the thing in question will take place before another one: *quand j'*aurai lu *ce journal, je sortirai* (=when I have read that newspaper, I shall go out).

AUXILIARY VERBS.

127. The verbs *avoir* and *être* are called **auxiliary** verbs, because they help in the conjugation of others: *je suis venu* (=I have come), *j'ai dormi* (=I have slept).

128. **Simple tenses** are those which are conjugated without the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*: *j'aim*e (=I love), *j'aim*ais (=I loved), *que j'aim*e (=that I may love).

The simple tenses are formed by merely adding a termination to the stem.

129. **Compound tenses** are those which are conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*: j'ai *aimé* (=I have loved), j'aurai *aimé* (=I shall have loved), que j'eusse *aimé* (=that I might have loved).

CONJUGATION.

130. The union of all the tenses of the same verb, with all their numbers and all their persons, is called its **conjugation.**

131. There are in French **four** conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the infinitive.

The infinitive of the **first** conjugation ends in **-er**, as *aim***er** (=to love).

The **second** conjugation has **-ir** for the termination of the infinitive, as *fin***ir** (=to finish); and the imperfect of the indicative ends in **iss**ais, *je fin***iss**ais (=I finished).

The verbs in **ir** really include two conjugations: the one, as *finir*, the imperfect of which ends in *issais*, as *je finissais*: the other, as *sentir* (=to feel), the imperfect of which ends in *-ais*, as *je sentais*. We give here the first of these conjugations, which includes more than *three hundred* French verbs, reserving for the chapter on irregular verbs the notice of the second conjugation in **-ir**, which includes only *twenty-eight* verbs.

The **third** conjugation ends in the infinitive in **-oir**, as *recev***oir** (=to receive).

The **fourth** conjugation has for the ending of the infinitive **-re**, as *romp***re** (=to break).

The French language includes (if we take the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* as an authority) about 4000 simple verbs (leaving out the compound ones); of these, 3600 end in **-er**; 330 in **-ir** (with the imperfect in *-issais*): 28 in **-ir** (with the imperfect in *-ais*); 17 verbs in **-oir**; and 50 verbs in **-re**. We thus see that the first conjugation in **-er** alone contains nine-tenths of the French verbs.

As we shall see (Section 10), the French language forms new verbs with the help of substantives and adjectives, by adding to the former the termination **-er**: *fête* (=holiday), *fêt***er** (=to make holiday); *gant* (=glove), *gant***er** (=to put gloves on); *lard* (=bacon), *lard***er** (=to lard); *camp* (=camp),

*camp*er (=to camp); and to the latter the termination -ir: *maigre* (=thin), *maigr*ir (=to become thin); *cher* (=dear), *chér*ir (=to cherish); *bleu* (=blue), *bleu*ir (=to make blue); *pâle* (=pale), *pâl*ir (=to become pale).

The first conjugation, in -er, forms new verbs with *substantives*, the second conjugation, in -ir, with *adjectives*. We may, then, designate them as **living** conjugations (*des conjugaisons* **vivantes**), inasmuch as they are constantly used for the purpose of new formations.

The conjugations in -oir, -re (and the second in -ir) are, on the contrary, incapable of being used to form new verbs, and since the origin of their language, the French have not added one *single verb* in -oir or in -re to the small number of those bequeathed by the Latin language. These conjugations, which have remained, so to say, barren, can with good reason be called **dead** conjugations (*des conjugaisons* **mortes**).

This simple distinction of the conjugations into **dead** and **living** shows us at once why 3900 French verbs (out of 4000) are in -er and in -ir, whilst the three other conjugations put together only include about 90 verbs.

SECTION I.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

132. Avoir and **être** are auxiliaries only when they serve to conjugate another verb, that is to say, when they are followed by a past participle; they have no claim to that designation when they are conjugated by themselves, as: *j'***ai** *un cheval* (=I have a horse); *je* **suis** *roi* (=I am a king).

I. Conjugation of the Auxiliary verb AVOIR (=*to have*).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT. (*I have*)	PAST INDEFINITE *or* PERFECT. (*I have had*)
J'ai	J'ai eu
tu as	tu as eu
il *or* elle a	il *or* elle a eu
nous avons	nous avons eu
vous avez	vous avez eu
ils *or* elles ont	ils *or* elles ont eu

IMPERFECT. (*I had, I was having, I used to have*)	PLUPERFECT. (*I had had*)
J'avais	J'avais eu
tu avais	tu avais eu
il *or* elle avait	il *or* elle avait eu
nous avions	nous avions eu
vous aviez	vous aviez eu
ils *or* elles avaient	ils *or* elles avaient eu
PAST DEFINITE. (*I had*)	**PAST ANTERIOR.** (*I had had*)
J'eus	J'eus eu
tu eus	tu eus eu
il *or* elle eut	il *or* elle eut eu
nous eûmes	nous eûmes eu
vous eûtes	vous eûtes eu
ils *or* elles eurent	ils *or* elles eurent eu
FUTURE. (*I shall have*)	**FUTURE ANTERIOR.** (*I shall have had*)
J'aurai	J'aurai eu
tu auras	tu auras eu
il *or* elle aura	il *or* elle aura eu
nous aurons	nous aurons eu
vous aurez	vous aurez eu
ils *or* elles auront	ils *or* elles auront eu

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT. (*I should have*)	PAST. (*I should have had*)
J'aurais	J'aurais eu
tu aurais	tu aurais eu
il *or* elle aurait	il *or* elle aurait eu
nous aurions	nous aurions eu
vous auriez	vous auriez eu
ils *or* elles auraient	ils *or* elles auraient eu

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. (*Have [thou]*)	PERFECT. (*Have [thou] had*)
Aie	Aie eu
ayons	ayons eu
ayez	ayez eu

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
(*That I may have*)	(*That I may have had*)
Que j'aie	Que j'aie eu
que tu aies	que tu aies eu
qu'il *or* qu'elle ait	qu'il *or* qu'elle ait eu
que nous ayons	que nous ayons eu
que vous ayez	que vous ayez eu
qu'ils *or* qu'elles aient	qu'ils *or* qu'elles aient eu
IMPERFECT.	**PLUPERFECT.**
(*That I might have*)	(*That I might have had*)
Que j'eusse	Que j'eusse eu
que tu eusses	que tu eusses eu
qu'il *or* qu'elle eût	qu'il *or* qu'elle eût eu
que nous eussions	que nous eussions eu
que vous eussiez	que vous eussiez eu
qu'ils *or* qu'elles eussent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles eussent eu

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Avoir (*to have*)	Avoir eu (*to have had*)
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	**PERFECT.**
Ayant (*having*)	Ayant eu (*having had*)

PAST PARTICIPLE (VARIABLE).

Eu, *fem.* eue

EXERCISE 25.

Indicatif présent.—J'ai un chapeau neuf. Tu as une robe neuve. Nous avons une grande maison. Vous avez de l'ambition. Ils ont un cheval noir.

Imparfait.—J'avais un bon maître. Tu avais une belle bibliothèque. Elle avait une voiture élégante. Nous avions des chagrins. Vous aviez perdu votre temps. Elles avaient des tiroirs pleins de jouets.

Passé défini.—J'eus un grand jardin. Il eut un morceau de pain. Nous eûmes une récompense. Ils eurent de la joie.

Futur.—J'aurai six paires de bas. Tu auras des raisins. Nous aurons des poires délicieuses. Vous aurez trop de plaisir.

Conditionnel présent.—J'aurais un billet pour le convoi de Paris. Elle aurait une robe et un chapeau neuf. Nous aurions un habile jardinier. Ils auraient une récompense.

Impératif.—Aie du courage. Ayons un peu de patience. Ayez plus de persévérance.

Subjonctif présent.—Que j'aie mon déjeuner. Que tu aies tes lettres. Que vous ayez votre fusil chargé.

Imparfait.—Que j'eusse mon épée et mes pistolets. Que tu eusses un grand pouvoir. Qu'elle eût une nombreuse famille. Que nous eussions des embarras. Que vous eussiez des billets de banque. Qu'elles eussent une chambre petite mais propre.

Temps composés.—Mon frère a eu une bonne place. Elle avait eu des oiseaux. J'eus eu des fleurs. J'aurai eu mon argent. Nous aurions eu un été magnifique. Que tu aies eu de la prudence. Qu'elles eussent eu une bouteille de vin.

Infinitif.—Avoir de l'esprit. Ayant eu du succès.

[1] persévérance (*f.*). [2] place (*f.*). [3] cour (*f.*). [4] poire (*f.*). [5] chapeau (*m.*). [6] comédie (*f.*). [7] choix (*m.*). [8] main (*f.*). [9] laborieux. [10] congé (*m.*). [11] éperon (*m.*). [12] aiguille (*f.*). [13] boîte (*f.*) à ouvrage. [14] loisir (*m.*). [15] lorgnon (*m.*). [16] consentement (*m.*). [17] tasse (*f.*). [18] théière (*f.*). [19] rideau (*m.*). [20] chandelier (*m.*). [21] rhume (*m.*). [22] citron (*m.*). [23] malheur (*m.*). [24] dîner (*m.*). [25] verger (*m.*). [26] inquiétude (*f.*). [27] manteau (*m.*), [28] bonheur (*m.*). [29] écharpe (*f.*). [30] argent (*m.*). [31] nourriture (*f.*). [32] couronne (*f.*).

Indicative present.—I have a sword and (some) pistols. Thou hast very little (of) patience (*f.*). She has prudence (*f.*). We have more (of) perseverance [1].

Imperfect.—I had two large gardens. Thou hadst a bottle of wine. He had a good situation [2] at (the) court [3]. We had some delicious pears [4]. They had new bonnets [5].

Past definite.—She had a pair of stockings. We had a ticket for the play [6]. My gardener, who was in the train, had an accident (*m.*).

Future.—I shall have lost my time. You will have an elegant carriage. They will have their reward.

Conditional present.—I should have my choice [7]. Thou wouldst have a small room. He would have some bank-notes. We should have some difficulty. You would have some new skates. They would have a quire [8] of paper.

Imperative.—Have (thou) a more industrious [9] pupil. Let us have our holidays [10]. Have (ye) some melons (*m.*).

Subjunctive present.—That I may have a pair of spurs [11]. That thou mayest have some needles [12]. That she may have a workbox [13]. That we may have leisure [14]. That you may have more (of) confidence. That they may have eye-glasses [15].

Imperfect.—That I might have your consent [16]. That thou mightest have a cup [17] and a tea-pot [18]. That he might have jewels. That she might have curtains [19] in her room. That we might have a candlestick [20]. That you might have a cold [21]. That they might have lemons [22].

Compound Tenses.—I have had a misfortune[23]. Thou hadst had a good dinner[24]. She had had a large orchard[25]. We shall have had much (of) anxiety[26]. You would have had a cloak[27]. That this merchant may have had luck[28]. That she might have had a scarf.[29]

Infinitive.—To have money[30] is not always to be happy. Having food[31]. Having had a crown[32].

II. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb ÊTRE (=*to be*),

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT. (*I am*)	PAST INDEFINITE *or* PERFECT. (*I have been*)
Je suis	J'ai été
tu es	tu as été
il *or* elle est	il *or* elle a été
nous sommes	nous avons été
vous êtes	vous avez été
ils *or* elles sont	ils *or* elles ont été
IMPERFECT. (*I was, I used to be*)	**PLUPERFECT.** (*I had been*)
J'étais	J'avais été
tu étais	tu avais été
il *or* elle était	il *or* elle avait été
nous étions	nous avions été
vous étiez	vous aviez été
ils *or* elles étaient	ils *or* elles avaient été
PAST DEFINITE. (*I was*)	**PAST ANTERIOR.** (*I had been*)
Je fus	J'eus été
tu fus	tu eus été
il *or* elle fut	il *or* elle eut été
nous fûmes	nous eûmes été
vous fûtes	vous eûtes été
ils *or* elles furent	ils *or* elles eurent été
FUTURE. (*I shall be*)	**FUTURE ANTERIOR.** (*I shall have been*)
Je serai	J'aurai été
tu seras	tu auras été
il *or* elle sera	il *or* elle aura été
nous serons	nous aurons été
vous serez	vous aurez été
ils *or* elles seront	ils *or* elles auront été

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT. (*I should be*)	PAST. (*I should have been*)
Je serais	J'aurais été
tu serais	tu aurais été
il *or* elle serait	il *or* elle aurait été
nous serions	nous aurions été
vous seriez	vous auriez été
ils *or* elles seraient	ils *or* elles auraient été

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. (*Be [thou]*)	PERFECT. (*Have [thou] been*)
Sois	Aie été
soyons	Ayons été
soyez	Ayez été

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. (*That I may be*)	PERFECT. (*That I may have been*)
Que je sois	Que j'aie été
que tu sois	que tu aies été
qu'il *or* qu'elle soit	qu'il *or* qu'elle ait été
que nous soyons	que nous ayons été
que vous soyez	que vous ayez été
qu'ils *or* qu'elles soient	qu'ils *or* qu'elles aient été
IMPERFECT. (*That I might be*)	PLUPERFECT. (*That I might have been*)
Que je fusse	Que j'eusse été
que tu fusses	que tu eusses été
qu'il *or* qu'elle fût	qu'il *or* qu'elle eût été
que nous fussions	que nous eussions été
que vous fussiez	que vous eussiez été
qu'ils *or* qu'elles fussent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles eussent été.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Être (*to be*)	Avoir été (*to have been*)
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT.
Étant (*being*)	Ayant été (*having been*)

PAST PARTICIPLE (INVARIABLE).

Été (*been*)

Exercise 26.

Indicatif présent.—Je suis malade. Tu es savant. Il est malheureux. Elle est joyeuse. Nous sommes laborieux. Vous êtes modestes. Ils sont oisifs. Elles sont oisives.

Imparfait.—J'étais prudent. Tu étais timide. Il était honteux. Elle était honteuse. Nous étions discrètes. Vous étiez studieux. Ils étaient jaloux. Vos sœurs étaient jalouses.

Passé défini.—Je fus son ami intime. Tu fus mon plus grand ennemi. Elle fut excellente musicienne. Nous fûmes généreux. Vous fûtes ingrats. Elles furent cruelles.

Futur.—Je serai général en chef. Il sera mis à mort. Elle sera estimée. Nous serons fidèles à notre pays. Vous serez dans des craintes continuelles. Ils seront inquiets.

Conditionnel présent.—Je serais prêt. Tu serais turbulent. Il serait défiant. Elle serait fière. Nous serions fermes. Vous seriez frivoles. Ils seraient entêtés. Elles seraient soigneuses.

Impératif.—Sois tranquille. Soyez charitables. Soyons amis. Soyez obéissants. Soyons libres. Soyez gaies.

Subjonctif présent.—Que je sois moins impatient. Que tu sois un bon citoyen. Qu'il soit toujours puissant. Qu'elle soit soumise à ses parents. Que nous soyons sobres. Que vous soyez crédules. Qu'ils soient opiniâtres.

Imparfait.—Que je fusse ferme et courageux. Que tu fusses économe. Qu'il fût modéré. Que nous fussions hospitaliers. Que vous fussiez trompés. Qu'elles fussent satisfaites.

Temps composés.—Tu as été trop prompt. Elle avait été prise. Nous eûmes été invités. Vous aurez été moqueurs. Ils auraient été plus généreux. Que j'aie été volé. Qu'elles eussent été précoces.

Infinitif.—Pour être heureux il faut avoir la conscience tranquille. Étant battu, je me retire.

☞ *The pupil must be careful to observe here the rules for the place of adjectives*; see § 64 A, Note.

[1] indiscret. [2] obstiné. [3] ridicule. [4] capricieux. [5] reconnaissant. [6] emporté. [7] appliqué. [8] moqueur. [9] sage. [10] humain. [11] malhonnête. [12] infirme. [13] content. [14] compatissant. [15] bienveillant. [16] timide. [17] suffisant. [18] découragé. [19] faible. [20] posé. [21] battu. [22] prudent à l'avenir. [23] ennuyeux. [24] soupçonné. [25] conquis. [26] trompé. [27] tué. [28] chagrin. [29] commande. [30] devint. [31] réservé.

Indicative present.—I am obedient. Thou art ready. He is charitable. She is impatient. We are moderate. You are in continual fears. They are inconsiderate[1].

Imperfect.—I was distrustful. Thou wast obstinate[2]. She was firm. We were ridiculous[3]. You were whimsical[4]. These soldiers were brave.

Past definite.—I was jealous. Thou wast grateful[5]. He was studious. We were hasty[6]. You were attentive. My sisters were diligent[7].

Future.—I shall be sarcastic[8]. Thou wilt be a rich man. She will be wise[9]. We shall be humane[10]. You will be unpolite[11]. They will be ridiculous.

Conditional present.—I should be firm. Thou wouldst be cruel. She would be infirm[12]. We should be pleased[13]. You would be discreet. They would be kind.

Imperative.—Be indulgent. Let us be compassionate[14]. Let us be benevolent[15].

Subjunctive present.—That I may be very timid[16]. That thou mayest be too conceited[17]. That she may be discouraged[18]. That we may be weak[19]. That you may be steady[20]. That they may be dumb.

Imperfect.—That I might be beaten[21]. That he might be respectable. That he might be cautious for the future[22]. That they might be tedious[23].

Compound tenses.—I have been absent. Thou hadst been suspected[24]. She had been quiet. We shall have been conquered[25]. You would have been deceived[26]. That I may have been happy. That he might have been killed[27].

Infinitive.—To be sorrowful[28]. Being the master, I order[29] here. Having been deceived, he became[30] more reserved[31].

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. Define the *verb*, the *subject*, the *direct complement* or *object*, the *indirect complement* or *object*.
2. What is the *substantive* verb? What is meant by an *adjective* verb?
3. What is the *stem*? the *termination*?
4. When is the verb put in the singular? when in the plural?
5. How many persons are there? how many moods?
6. Explain the force of every one of the moods.
7. What is meant by a *personal* mood?
8. What is an *impersonal* mood?
9. How many kinds of *perfect* are there? What is expressed by the *imperfect*, the *past definite*, etc.?
10. How many kinds of *future* are there?
11. Define a *simple* tense;—a *compound* tense.
12. Give a list of the French conjugations, and explain how they are distinguished from each other.
13. When are *avoir* and *être* auxiliary verbs?

SECTION II.

ACTIVE VERBS.

133. There are in French five kinds of verbs: the *active* verb, the *neuter* verb, the *passive* verb, the *reflexive* verb, and the *impersonal* verb.

134. The **active** verb expresses the action performed by the subject, and is followed by a direct object: *J'*aime *votre frère* (=I love your brother).

The active verb is also called *transitive* from the Latin *transire* (=to pass over from one place to another), because the action is *transmitted* from the subject to the object: *Le loup* mange *l'agneau* (=the wolf eats the lamb), *je* récompense *cet enfant* (=I reward this child).

135. We now give a model of the four conjugations of French verbs, taking care to point out, by different types, the stem from the ending.

I. First Conjugation.—Verb AIMER (=*to love*).

Stem **aim** ; *termination*, **er.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST INDEFINITE *or* PERFECT.
(*I love*)	(*I have loved*)
J'aime	J'ai aimé
tu aimes	tu as aimé
il *or* elle aime	il *or* elle a aimé
nous aimons	nous avons aimé
vous aimez	vous avez aimé
ils *or* elles aiment	ils *or* elles ont aimé

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
I was loving, I used to love)	(*I had loved*)
J'aimais	J'avais aimé
tu aimais	tu avais aimé
il *or* elle aimait	il *or* elle avait aime
nous aimions	nous avions aimé
vous aimiez	vous aviez aimé
ils *or* elles aimaient	ils *or* elles avaient aimé

PAST DEFINITE.

(*I loved*)

J'aimai
tu aimas
il *or* elle aima
nous aimâmes
vous aimâtes
ils *or* elles aimèrent

PAST ANTERIOR.

(*I had loved*)

J'eus aimé
tu eus aimé
il *or* elle eut aimé
nous eûmes aimé
vous eûtes aimé
ils *or* elles eurent aimé

FUTURE.

(*I shall love*)

J'aime*r*ai
tu aime*r*as
il *or* elle aime*r*a
nous aime*r*ons
vous aime*r*ez
ils *or* elles aime*r*ont

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(*I shall have loved*)

J'aurai aimé
tu auras aimé
il *or* elle aura aimé
nous aurons aimé
vous aurez aimé
ils *or* elles auront aimé

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

(*I should love*)

J'aime*r*ais
tu aime*r*ais
il *or* elle aime*r*ait
nous aime*r*ions
vous aime*r*iez
ils *or* elles aime*r*aient

PAST.

(*I should have loved*)

J'aurais *or* j'eusse aimé
tu aurais *or* tu eusses aimé
il *or* elle aurait *or* eût aimé
nous aurions *or* eussions aimé
vous auriez *or* eussiez aimé
ils *or* elles auraient *or* eussent aimé

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

(*Love thou*)

Aime

aimons
aimez

PERFECT.

(*Have* [*thou*] *loved*)

Aie aimé

ayons aimé
ayez aimé

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

(*That I may love*)

Que j'aime
que tu aimes
qu'il *or* qu'elle aime
que nous aimions
que vous aimiez
qu'ils *or* qu'elles aiment

PERFECT.

(*That I may have loved*)

Que j'aie aimé
que tu aies aimé
qu'il *or* qu'elle ait aimé
que nous ayons aimé
que vous ayez aimé
qu'ils *or* qu'elles aient aimé

IMPERFECT. (*That I might love*)	PLUPERFECT. (*That I might have loved*)
Que j'aimasse	Que j'eusse aimé
que tu aimasses	que tu eusses aimé
qu'il *or* qu'elle aimât	qu'il *or* qu'elle eût aimé
que nous aimassions	que nous eussions aimé
que vous aimassiez	que vous eussiez aimé
qu'ils *or* qu'elles aimassent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles eussent aimé

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Aimer (*to love*)	Avoir aimé (*to have loved*)
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT.
Aimant (*loving*)	Ayant aimé (*having loved*)

PAST PARTICIPLE (VARIABLE).

Aimé, *fem.* aimée (*loved*)

Exercise 27.

Indicatif présent.—J'aime mon père. Tu adores Dieu. Il alarme le pays. Elle cire les souliers. Nous apportons de bonnes nouvelles. Vous arrosez le jardin. Ils attaquent l'ennemi.

Imparfait.—Je balayais l'école. Il bassinait le lit. Elle brodait sa robe. Nous cachetions la lettre. Vous trouviez votre thème. Ils condamnaient ma conduite.

Passé défini.—Je récompensai le domestique. Tu donnas ta parole. Il discuta la question. Elle consola sa mère. Nous contentâmes notre maître. Vous remarouâtes les fautes. Ils décachetèrent la lettre.

Futur.—Je déciderai la question. Tu tueras un canard. Il déclarera la guerre. Elle vous prêtera son livre. Nous aimerons les bons. Vous détromperez ma sœur. Ils différeront la punition.

Conditionnel présent.—Je fréquenterais la bonne compagnie. Tu dévoilerais le complot. Il graverait ce tableau. Elle humilierait votre orgueil. Nous imprimerions une grammaire. Vous oublieriez mes torts envers vous. Ils réformeraient leurs lois.

Impératif.—Sacrifie ton intérêt au bien public. Débrouillez cette affaire. Terminons ce livre. Apaisez sa colère. Évitons le danger.

Subjonctif présent.—Que je donne ce joujou à votre fils. Que tu blâmes sa conduite. Qu'il propose un avis salutaire.

Que nous admirions la beauté de ce paysage. Que vous racontiez mes malheurs. Qu'ils oublient une circonstance essentielle.

Imparfait.—Que je surmontasse les obstacles. Que tu consolasses les pauvres. Qu'il renforçât le parti. Que nous fermassions les volets. Que vous racontassiez cette charmante histoire. Qu'ils surveillassent ce méchant homme.

Infinitif.—Pour apprécier son courage il faut avoir traversé le désert.

Participes.—En coupant ce morceau de bois, il a cassé son couteau.

Temps composés.—J'ai chanté deux airs. Tu avais montré trop de talent. Il eut fermé la porte. Nous aurons dépensé trois mille francs. Vous auriez passé la journée chez des amis. Que j'aie désiré vous défendre. Que tu eusses manqué le train.

[1] troupe. [2] fortifier. [3] débrouiller. [4] offense (*f.*). [5] punition (*f.*). [6] un avis salutaire. [7] dévoiler. [8] complot (*m.*). [9] vertueux. [10] proposer. [11] planche (*f.*). [12] de. [13] musée (*m.*). [14] oie (*f.*). [15] armer. [16] les pauvres. [17] trop. [18] voler. [19] juste. [20] moyen d'être. [21] glace (*f.*). [22] à travers. [23] col (*m.*). [24] surveiller. [25] départ (*m.*).

Indicative present.—I speak (the) French. Thou explainest very well. He shows much (of) talent. Our troops[1] strengthen[2] your party. We print a grammar. You unravel[3] my affairs.

Imperfect.—I thought of your misfortunes. Thou wast crossing the wilderness. He related a charming history. We were shutting the shutters. You were mending your conduct. He was discussing the question (*f*).

Past definite.—Your sister sang yesterday. I forgot all your offences[4]. Thou avoidedst a great danger. We spent more (of) money than you. You forgot your punishment[5].

Future.—I shall give you some sound advice[6]. Thou wilt undeceive my sister. He will expose[7] the plot[8]. You will frequent the company of (the) virtuous[9] men. They will propose[10] three questions.

Conditional present.—I would sweep the school. Thou wouldst alarm the camp (*m.*). He would give these toys to my children. We would water their flower-beds[11] in the garden. You would love your parents. He would engrave the best pictures in[12] the museum[13].

Imperative.—Worship God. Let us notice the mistakes in this exercise. Shut your books.

Subjunctive present.—That I may kill a goose[14]. That thou

mayest warm the bed. That she may forget us when she is in France. That we may meet our friends this morning. That you may arm [15] all the troops. That you may visit the poor [16].

Imperfect.—That I might condemn her conduct. That thou mightest satisfy thy kind mother. That she might scold her servants. That we might spend too much [17]. That you might steal [18] my letter. That they might mention it.

Infinitive.—To sing in tune [19] is an essential quality. To have confessed one's faults is the best means of being [20] pardoned.

Participles.—*While* (in) breaking the ice [21] in the garden. Passing through [22] the camp.

Compound tenses.—I have avoided this wicked man. Thou hadst embroidered my collar [23]. He had watched over [24] that child. We shall have left the town. You would have postponed your departure [25]. That they may have observed all the circumstances. That I might have admired the landscape.

II. Second Conjunction.—Verb FINIR (= *to finish*).

Stem, **fin** ; *termination*, **ir.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT. (*I finish*)	PAST INDEFINITE *or* PERFECT. (*I have finished*)
Je finis	J'ai fini
tu finis	tu as fini
il *or* elle finit	il *or* elle a fini
nous fin*iss*ons	nous avons fini
vous fin*iss*ez	vous avez fini
ils *or* elles fin*iss*ent	ils *or* elles ont fini.

IMPERFECT. (*I was finishing, I used to finish*)	PLUPERFECT. (*I had finished*)
Je fin*iss*ais	J'avais fini
tu fin*iss*ais	tu avais fini
il *or* elle fin*iss*ait	il *or* elle avait fini
nous fin*iss*ions	nous avions fini
vous fin*iss*iez	vous aviez fini
ils *or* elles fin*iss*aient	ils *or* elles avaient fini.

PAST DEFINITE (*I finished*)	PAST ANTERIOR. (*I had finished*)
Je finis	J'eus fini
tu finis	tu eus fini
il *or* elle finit	il *or* elle eut fini
nous finîmes	nous eûmes fini
vous finîtes	vous eûtes fini
ils *or* elles finirent	ils *or* elles eurent fini
FUTURE. (*I shall finish*)	FUTURE ANTERIOR. (*I shall have finished*)
Je finirai	J'aurai fini
tu finiras	tu auras fini
il *or* elle finira	il *or* elle aura fini
nous finirons	nous aurons fini
vous finirez	vous aurez fini
ils *or* elles finiront	ils *or* elles auront fini.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT. (*I should finish*)	PAST. (*I should have finished*)
Je finirais	J'aurais *or* j'eusse fini
tu finirais	tu aurais *or* tu eusses fini
il *or* elle finirait	il *or* elle aurait *or* eût fini
nous finirions	nous aurions *or* eussions fini
vous finiriez	vous auriez *or* eussiez fini
ils *or* elles finiraient	ils *or* elles auraient *or* eussent fini.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. (*Finish [thou]*)	PERFECT. (*Have [thou] finished*)
Finis	Aie fini
finissons	ayons fini
finissez	ayez fini

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. (*That I may finish*)	PERFECT. (*That I may have finished*)
Que je finisse	Que j'aie fini
que tu finisses	que tu aies fini
qu'il *or* qu'elle finisse	qu'il *or* qu'elle ait fini
que nous finissions	que nous ayons fini
que vous finissiez	que vous ayez fini
qu'ils *or* qu'elles finissent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles aient fini.

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
(*That I might finish*)	(*That I might have finished*)
Que je finisse	Que j'eusse fini
que tu finisses	que tu eusses fini
qu'il *or* qu'elle finît	qu'il *or* qu'elle eût fini
que nous finissions	que nous eussions fini
que vous finissiez	que vous eussiez fini
qu'ils *or* qu'elles finissent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles eussent fini.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Finir (*to finish*)	Avoir fini (*to have finished*)
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT.
Finissant (*finishing*)	Ayant fini (*having finished*)

PAST PARTICIPLE (VARIABLE).

Fini, *fem.* finie (*finished*).

Exercise 28.

Indicatif présent.—Je punis les coupables. Il adoucit le cœur. Vous applaudissez cet acteur.

Imparfait.—J'avertissais votre frère de son danger. Nous bannissions les méchants de notre société.

Passé défini.—Tu rafraîchis sa mémoire. Vous avertîtes votre maître. Ils envahirent le pays.

Futur.—Je finirai mon ouvrage ce soir. Il garnira cette chambre de tableaux. Nous unirons les plaisirs de la campagne à ceux de la ville.

Conditionnel présent.—Tu trahirais mes intérêts. Nous enrichirions notre famille. Elles graviraient la colline.

Impératif.—Polis ces cuillers. Attendrissez ce cœur inflexible.

Subjonctif présent.—Que j'établisse ma réputation. Qu'il affaiblisse son parti. Que vous renchérissiez ces marchandises.

Imparfait.—Que tu les affermisses dans leur devoir. Que nous abolissions ces impôts. Qu'ils asservissent les nations étrangères.

Infinitif.—Je puis fournir ce travail. Avoir assorti ces couleurs.

Participes.—En punissant les coupables, j'ai rempli un véritable devoir.

Temps composés.—Tu as appauvri ces enfants. Ce cheval avait henni. Vous auriez accompli cette tâche.

[1] chérir. [2] droits (*m.*). [3] société (*f.*). [4] répartir. [5] enfouir. [6] trésor (*m.*). [7] bannir. [8] comte (*m.*). [9] fournir. [10] de charbon. [11] rôtir. [12] gigot (*m.*). [13] Espagne (*f.*). [14] aplanir. [15] répartir. [16] paroisse (*f.*). [17] échelle (*f.*). [18] chagrin (*m.*). [19] accomplir. [20] subir. [21] approfondir. [22] tiroir (*m.*). [23] musique (*f.*).

Indicative present.—Thou cherishest[1] thy parents. We abolish the duties[2] on those goods. You strengthen them in their duty.

Imperfect.—I finished this book. She hated the pleasures of (the) society[3]. We distributed[4] the provisions (*f.*).

Past definite.—He buried[5] his treasure[6]. The king banished[7] the earl[8]. You supplied[9] our house with coal[10].

Future.—Thou wilt betray the party. We shall roast[11] a leg[12] *of mutton.* They will invade (the) Spain[13].

Conditional present.—I would smooth[14] the difficulties. He would assess[15] the taxes of the parish[16]. They would establish their reputation.

Imperative.—Polish all the forks. Strengthen this ladder[17].

Subjunctive present.—That thou mayest enslave the nation. That we may soften his grief[18]. That the fruit may rise in price.

Imperfect.—That I might discharge[19] my duty. That she might undergo[20] the punishment. That you might unfurnish the room.

Infinitive.—To finish this book before a month is impossible.

Participles.—By examining into[21] this question, you will find that the laws have been established.

Compound tenses.—I have filled these drawers[22]. We shall have applauded that beautiful music[23]. That he might have been warned.

III. Third Conjugation.—Verb RECEVOIR (=*to receive*).

Stem, **recev** ; *termination*, **oir.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT. (*I receive*)	PAST INDEFINITE *or* PERFECT. (*I have received*)
Je reçois	J'ai reçu
tu reçois	tu as reçu
il *or* elle reçoit	il *or* elle a reçu
nous recevons	nous avons reçu
vous recevez	vous avez reçu
ils *or* elles reçoivent	ils *or* elles ont reçu.

IMPERFECT. (*I was receiving, I used to receive*)	PLUPERFECT. (*I had received*)
Je recevais	J'avais reçu
tu recevais	tu avais reçu
il *or* elle recevait	il *or* elle avait reçu
nous recevions	nous avions reçu
vous receviez	vous aviez reçu
ils *or* elles recevaient	ils *or* elles avaient reçu.
PAST DEFINITE. (*I received*)	PAST ANTERIOR. (*I had received*)
Je reçus	J'eus reçu
tu reçus	tu eus reçu
il *or* elle reçut	il *or* elle eut reçu
nous reçûmes	nous eûmes reçu
vous reçûtes	vous eûtes reçu
ils *or* elles reçurent	ils *or* elles eurent reçu.
FUTURE. (*I shall receive*)	FUTURE ANTERIOR. (*I shall have received*)
Je recevrai	J'aurai reçu
tu recevras	tu auras reçu
il *or* elle recevra	il *or* elle aura reçu
nous recevrons	nous aurons reçu
vous recevrez	vous aurez reçu
ils *or* elles recevront	ils *or* elles auront reçu.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT. (*I should receive*)	PAST. (*I should have received*)
Je recevrais	J'aurais *or* j'eusse reçu
tu recevrais	tu aurais *or* tu eusses reçu
il *or* elle recevrait	il *or* elle aurait *or* eût reçu
nous recevrions	nous aurions *or* eussions reçu
vous recevriez	vous auriez *or* eussiez reçu
ils *or* elles recevraient	ils *or* elles auraient *or* eussent reçu.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. (*Receive [thou]*)	PERFECT. (*Have [thou] received*)
Reçois	Aie reçu
recevons	ayons reçu
recevez	ayez reçu

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. (*That I may receive*)	PERFECT. (*That I may have received*)
Que je reçoive	Que j'aie reçu
que tu reçoives	que tu aies reçu
qu'il *or* qu'elle reçoive	qu'il *or* qu'elle ait reçu
que nous recevions	que nous ayons reçu
que vous receviez	que vous ayez reçu
qu'ils *or* qu'elles reçoivent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles aient reçu

IMPERFECT. (*That I might receive*)	PLUPERFECT. (*That I might have received*)
Que je reçusse	Que j'eusse reçu
que tu reçusses	que tu eusses reçu
qu'il *or* qu'elle reçût	qu'il *or* qu'elle eût reçu
que nous reçussions	que nous eussions reçu
que vous reçussiez	que vous eussiez reçu
qu'ils *or* qu'elles reçussent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles eussent reçu

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Recevoir (*to receive*)	Avoir reçu (*to have received*)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT.
Recevant (*receiving*)	Ayant reçu (*having received*)

PAST PARTICIPLE (VARIABLE).

Reçu, *fem.* reçue (*received*).

Exercise 29.

Indicatif présent.—Je conçois comment cela est arrivé. Il aperçoit votre intention. Nous redevons le loyer de notre maison.

Imparfait.—Tu recevais tes livres. Vous déceviez ses espérances. Ils percevaient mes revenus.

Passé défini.—Je reçus une visite de votre oncle. Elle conçut un grand projet. Nous aperçûmes le voleur.

Futur.—Tu recevras demain une lettre de mon ami. Vous concevrez un nouveau projet. Ils apercevront aisément si le thème est bien fait.

Conditionnel présent.—Il recevrait les arrérages. Je devrais écrire ce devoir. Vous apercevriez son erreur.

Impératif.—Conçois l'importance de cette affaire. Recevez mes remercîments de toutes vos bontés.

Subjonctif présent.—Qu'il perçoive l'intérêt de cet argent. Que nous recevions son télégramme. Qu'elles redoivent le montant du billet.

Imparfait.—Que je redusse une bagatelle. Que vous déçussiez mes plus chères espérances. Que nous reçussions ce tribut d'estime.

Infinitif.—Apercevoir des défauts dans autrui est chose facile.

Participes.—En recevant cette demande, le roi a fait un acte de justice. Les impôts sont perçus.

Temps composés.—Je l'ai reçu hier. Il a aperçu mon frère. Vous auriez aperçu le clocher de l'église. Que tu eusses conçu l'étendue de ses projets.

[1] gouvernement (*m.*). [2] profondeur (*f.*). [3] trahison (*f.*). [4] cargaison (*f.*). [5] politesse (*f.*). [6] dessein (*m.*). [7] bouquet (*m.*). [8] projet (*m.*). [9] désirer. [10] montrer. [11] juste. [12] mériter. [13] billet (*m.*). [14] tache (*f.*). [15] drap (*m.*).

Indicative present.—I perceive your mistake. You collect the taxes for the government[1]. They receive a tribute in money.

Imperfect.—He perceived his situation. We owed again a sum of seventy francs. They deceived my fondest hopes.

Past definite.—I conceived the depth[2] of his treachery[3]. You received a cargo[4] of goods. We perceived the steeple of the church.

Future.—Thou wilt owe many (of) thanks to thy friend. She will receive your message (*m.*). They will conceive a plan (*m.*).

Conditional present.—I should receive him with politeness[5]. Thou wouldst receive a telegram. We should perceive the house.

Imperative.—Receive my sincere thanks. Let us conceive a better design[6].

Subjunctive present.—That we may receive the nosegay[7]. That he may collect the arrears. That they may owe less.

Imperfect.—That he might conceive a new scheme[8]. I wished[9] that you might perceive your danger. That we might conceive the importance of his duties.

Infinitive.—To receive this man is to show[10] one's contempt of what is right[11].

Participles.—In deceiving me you have deserved[12] to be punished.

Compound Tenses.—I had received your note[13]. She had perceived his intentions. That I might have perceived a stain[14] on that cloth[15].

IV. Fourth Conjugation.—Verb ROMPRE (*= to break*).

Stem, **romp**; *termination*, **re**.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT. (*I break*)	PAST INDEFINITE *or* PERFECT. (*I have broken*)
Je romps	J'ai rompu
tu romps	tu as rompu
il *or* elle rompt	il *or* elle a rompu
nous rompons	nous avons rompu
vous rompez	vous avez rompu
ils *or* elles rompent	ils *or* elles ont rompu
IMPERFECT. (*I was breaking, I used to break*)	PLUPERFECT (*I had broken*)
Je rompais	j'avais rompu
tu rompais	tu avais rompu
il *or* elle rompait	il *or* elle avait rompu
nous rompions	nous avions rompu
vous rompiez	vous aviez rompu
ils *or* elles rompaient	ils *or* elles avaient rompu.
PAST DEFINITE. (*I broke*)	PAST ANTERIOR. (*I had broken*)
Je rompis	J'eus rompu
tu rompis	tu eus rompu
il *or* elle rompit	il *or* elle eut rompu
nous rompîmes	nous eûmes rompu
vous rompîtes	vous eûtes rompu
ils *or* elles rompirent	ils *or* elles eurent rompu.
FUTURE. (*I shall break*)	FUTURE ANTERIOR. (*I shall have broken*)
Je romprai	J'aurai rompu
tu rompras	tu auras rompu
il *or* elle rompra	il *or* elle aura rompu
nous romprons	nous aurons rompu
vous romprez	vous aurez rompu
ils *or* elles rompront	ils *or* elles auront rompu.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.	PAST.
(*I should break*)	(*I should have broken*)
Je romprais	J'aurais *or* j'eusse rompu
tu romprais	tu aurais *or* tu eusses rompu
il *or* elle romprait	il *or* elle aurait *or* eût rompu
nous romprions	nous aurions *or* eussions rompu
vous rompriez	vous auriez *or* eussiez rompu
ils *or* elles rompraient	ils *or* elles auraient *or* eussent rompu.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
(*Break* [*thou*])	(*Have* [*thou*] *broken*)
Romps	Aie rompu
rompons	ayons rompu
rompez	ayez rompu

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
(*That I may break*)	(*That I may have broken*)
Que je rompe	Que j'aie rompu
que tu rompes	que tu aies rompu
qu'il *or* qu'elle rompe	qu'il *or* qu'elle ait rompu
que nous rompions	que nous ayons rompu
que vous rompiez	que vous ayez rompu
qu'ils *or* qu'elles rompent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles aient rompu.

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
(*That I might break*)	(*That I might have broken*)
Que je rompisse	Que j'eusse rompu
que tu rompisses	que tu eusses rompu
qu'il *or* qu'elle rompît	qu'il *or* qu'elle eût rompu
que nous rompissions	que nous eussions rompu
que vous rompissiez	que vous eussiez rompu
qu'ils *or* qu'elles rompissent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles eussent rompu.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Rompre (*to break*)	Avoir rompu (*to have broken*)
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT.
Rompant (*breaking*)	Ayant rompu (*having broken*)

PAST PARTICIPLE (VARIABLE).

Rompu, *fem.* rompue (*broken*).

Exercise 30.

Indicatif présent.—J'attends de la compagnie aujourd'hui. Il répond correctement. Vous défendez votre patrie.

Imparfait.—Tu suspendais ton jugement. Ce chien mordait tout le monde. Vous prétendiez qu'il avait tort.

Passé défini.—Il descendit ses malles. Nous fondîmes le plomb. Ils tendirent leurs bras.

Futur.—Je répondrai qu'il est absent. Il entendra ce qu'ils disent. Elles vendront leur maison de campagne.

Conditionnel présent.—Tu tordrais la corde. Nous confondrions leur orgueil. Ils prendraient leurs chapeaux dans le vestiaire.

Impératif.—Entends leur justification. Attendons l'arrivée du bateau à vapeur.

Subjonctif présent.—Que tu vendes ces fruits trop cher. Que vous répandiez l'eau sur le tapis. Qu'ils tendent cette corde.

Imparfait.—Que je perdisse mes droits. Que nous fendissions la presse. Que vous entendissiez le bruit du tonnerre.

Infinitif.—Prétendre savoir toutes choses est ridicule.

Participes.—En fendant ce morceau de bois, je me suis blessé. La cause entendue, le président prononça la sentence.

Temps composés.—J'ai vendu tous mes livres. Vous aviez confondu ces deux règles. Il aura entendu mon appel.

[1] immédiatement. [2] faux. [3] tendre. [4] en travers de. [5] défendre. [6] usage (*m.*). [7] entendre. [8] séance (*f.*). [9] linge (*m.*). [10] terres (*f.*). [11] chapeau (*m.*). [12] convention (*f.*). [13] fendre. [14] toute la journée. [15] répandre. [16] chemin (*m.*). [17] ne devriez pas. [18] bruit (*m.*). [19] confondre. [20] raison (*f.*). [21] larme (*f.*). [22] grand escalier (*m.*).

Indicative present.—I am bringing it down immediately[1]. He answers that it is untrue[2]. We stretched[3] a rope across[4] the street.

Imperfect.—I was forbidding[5] him the use[6] of it. She was waiting for her. You were confounding this rule with another.

Past definite.—He heard[7] your friends. We suspended the meeting[8]. She wrung the linen[9] in the garden.

Future.—I shall sell all my estates[10]. She will take her bonnet[11]. You will break the agreement[12].

Conditional present.—Thou wouldst lose my letters. We should recast the poem. They would hear us.

Imperative.—Split[13] the wood. Let us hang up our coats in the cloak room.

Subjunctive present.—That I may wait all day long[14]. That we should sell all the jewels. That you should stretch this rope.

Imperfect.—That she might shear the sheep. That I might scatter[15] flowers on his path[16]. That they might defend their interests.

Infinitive.—You should not[17] sell your goods so dear.

Participles.—Hearing this rumour[18] I went out. His insolence (*f.*) was brought to confusion[19].

Compound tenses.—I had heard his reasons[20]. We should have melted into tears[21]. Thou wouldst have waited. That I might have brought it down by the principal staircase[22].

SECTION III.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

1. Interrogatively ; 2. Negatively ; 3. Interrogatively with a negative.

136. To conjugate these verbs *interrogatively* the pronoun is placed, in the simple tenses, after the verb :

aimez-**vous ?** (=do you love?),

or in compound tenses, between the auxiliary and the past participle :

ai-**je** *aimé* (=have I loved?), *avais*-**je** *aimé* (=had I loved?).

137. If the first person singular ends in an *e mute*, as : *j'aime* (=I love) ; *que je puisse* (=that I may be able), that *e mute* is replaced by a close **é** : *aimé*-**je** (=do I love?) *puissé*-**je** (=may I?).

138. When the third person singular ends with a vowel, *il aime* (=he loves) ; *il va* (=he goes), a **t**, called euphonic, is placed between the verb and the pronoun : *aime*-**t**-*il ?* (=does he love?) ; *va*-**t**-*il ?* (does he go?).

Old French always had a t at the end of the third person, and said il *aime*t, il *va*t, without sounding the *t*. This letter, being mute, disappeared from the direct conjugation; but it persisted in the interrogative form, on account of the following vowel. This *t*, which is called *euphonic t*, and which is joined to the verb by a hyphen, was therefore really, in former times, part of the verb.

139. Sometimes the question is asked by prefixing **est-ce que** to the affirmative form of the verb. This is chiefly done with verbs of one syllable:

est-ce que *je vends?* (=do I sell?)
est-ce que *vous aimez cette ville?* (=do you like this town?).

In sentences like: You see it, do you not? You will do it, will you not? You have not done it, have you? the interrogation is, in every case, expressed in French by **n'est-ce pas?** *Vous le voyez*, **n'est-ce pas?** *Vous le ferez*, **n'est-ce pas?** *Vous ne l'avez pas fait*, **n'est-ce pas?**

140. When, in a question, the verb has a noun for its subject, as: Is your friend here? the noun is placed first, as in the affirmation, and the pronoun (of the same gender, number, and person as the noun) is placed after the verb to show that the sentence is interrogative: **Votre ami** *est*-**il** *ici?* (=is your friend here?) **Vos amis** *sont*-**ils** *ici?* (=are your friends here?).

141. In order to conjugate verbs in the *negative* form place *ne* between the pronoun and the verb, and *pas* after the verb, in simple tenses: *je* **ne** *veux* **pas** (=I do not wish); *tu* **ne** *veux* **pas** (=thou dost not wish), etc.

In compound tenses, *pas* is placed between the auxiliary and the participle: *je* **n'***ai* **pas** *voulu* (=I have not wished); *je* **n'***aurais* **pas** *voulu* (=I would not have wished), etc.

With the infinitive, *pas* generally comes before the verb; *pour* **ne pas** *faire cela* (=in order not to do that).

142. To conjugate a verb *interrogatively with a negative*, *ne* is placed before the verb and *pas* after the pronoun following the verb: **ne** *vois-je* **pas?** (=do I not see?).

In compound tenses *ne* comes before the auxiliary, and *pas* after the pronoun following the auxiliary: n'*ai je* pas *vu?* (=have I not seen?).

☞ *A table of these conjugations will be found at page* 167.

Exercise 31.

Indicatif présent.—Préféré-je cet ouvrage? Il ne finit pas ses devoirs. Ne recevons-nous pas son avis avec reconnaissance?

Imparfait.—Demeurais-tu à Londres? Il ne renchérissait pas ses marchandises. N'entendaient-ils pas le bruit de la voiture? Vous aimiez cette ville, n'est-ce pas?

Passé défini.—Conçut-elle toute l'importance de cette démarche? N'aima-t-il pas son séjour à la campagne? Vous ternîtes votre gloire par votre cruauté.

Futur.—Est-ce que nous ne profiterons pas d'une occasion aussi favorable? Vous ne réussirez jamais à le persuader. Vos amis ne vendront-ils pas leur propriété?

Conditionnel présent.—Je n'agirais pas contre ma conscience. Choisiriez-vous ce cheval? Ne recevriez-vous pas du monde demain?

Impératif.—Ne reçois jamais de ses lettres.

Subjonctif présent.—Que je ne rende compte à personne.

Imparfait.—Que ce chemin n'aboutît pas au château.

Infinitif.—Ne pas me répondre est une preuve d'impertinence.

Participes.—N'ayant pas trahi sa patrie, il est plein de confiance.

Temps composés.—Avez-vous chanté ce matin? Il n'avait pas démoli cette chaumière. N'auraient-ils pas aperçu le vaisseau dans le port? Je n'aurais jamais condescendu à une telle demande. N'auront-ils ni livres ni papier? Qu'elle n'ait pas d'argent. Que nous ne fussions pas dénués de ressources.

[1] cave (*f.*). [2] revendre. [3] voiture (*f.*). [4] autrefois. [5] projet (*m.*). [6] négliger. [7] réussir. [8] réfléchir à. [9] proposition (*f.*). [10] rendre. [11] arc (*m.*). [12] ternir. [13] céder. [14] louer. [15] cloche (*f.*). [16] honorablement. [17] tromper. [18] critiquer. [19] sévèrement.

Indicative present.—Do you answer (to) his letter? He does not finish his picture. Do they not dine?

Imperfect.—Was I going down into the cellar[1]? We did not resell[2] this carriage[3]. Did they not correspond formerly[4]?

Perfect definite.—I had no money. She did not burst into tears. Did he not perceive my design[5]?

Future.—I shall never neglect[6] my duties. They will succeed[7], will they not? Will you recast your work?

Conditional.—I would not disobey. Would your friend reflect on[8] that proposal[9]? Would they negotiate that treaty?

Imperative.—Do not return[10] (to) him his letter.

Subjunctive present.—That I may not owe this sum.

Imperfect.—That they might not stretch that bow[11].

Infinitive.—Not to sully[12] your reputation, confess your fault.

Participles.—Not having yielded[13], he was praised[14] by the journal.

Compound tenses.—I have not heard the bell[15]. Wast thou acting honourably[16]? Did she not sell her estates? I shall not have received this dangerous man. Would she not have rewarded the merit of that pupil? That they may not have deceived[17] you. That we might not have criticised[18] him too severely[19].

SECTION IV.

REMARKS ON THE FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

143. Notice that in the first person of the present indicative the verbs in **-er** do not take *s* (*je chante*), while the other conjugations do (*je finis*, *je romps*).

This exception is a vestige of the Old French language: the first person formerly never took *s*: *j'*aime (=I love), *je* voi (=I see), *je* rend (=I restore); about the beginning of the sixteenth century, an *s* was added, by analogy with the *s* of the second person *tu chantes* (=thou singest), *tu lis* (=thou readest), *tu vois* (=thou seest); but the first conjugation escaped this assimilation, and even in the case of the other conjugations, the forms without *s* still remained for a long time in poetry. Thus we find in the seventeenth century: *je* voi, *je* li, *je* croi. (La Fontaine, Molière, Corneille.)

144. The imperfect is the same in all conjugations (*-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient*), always remembering that the conjugation in -ir interpolates the particle -iss between the stem and the ending: je *fini***ssais**, tu *fini***ssais**.

Before the time of Voltaire, the imperfect was always written with the syllable *ois* (*j'aimois, je chantois*, etc.) instead of *ais*. It was he who first wrote: *j'aim***ais**, *je chant***ais**, etc. This orthographical modification was only adopted by the Academy in 1835. A century before Voltaire, in 1675, an obscure lawyer, Nicolas Bérain, had already asked for this reform.

145. The future is formed in all the conjugations by adding to the infinitive of the verb the indicative present of the verb *avoir* (*ai, as, a*, etc.).

*Je chanter***ai** is therefore exactly equivalent to *j'***ai** *à chanter*; hence: *aimer***ai**, -**as**, -**a**. In the plural, however, the syllable *av* is struck out: *aimer*(av)*ons, aimer*(av)*ez, aimeront*. The third conjugation is an exception to this rule, as the termination *oir* is shortened into **r**: *je recev***r***ai*.

The conditional present is formed in the same way from the imperfect indicative, the syllable *av* being suppressed: *j'aimer*(av)*ais*.

146. It will be observed that all the persons of the imperative are borrowed from the corresponding persons of the indicative present.

But when the second person singular ends in **es**, the **s** disappears in the imperative; *chant***e**, *offr***e**, from *tu chant***es** (=thou singest), *tu offr***es** (=thou offerest). The same is seen in *va* (=go) from *tu va***s** (=thou goest). The **s**, however, re-appears when the imperative is followed by the pronouns or adverbs *en, y*: *chant***es-en** *une partie* (=sing a part of it), *offr***es-en** (=offer some), *vas-y* (=go there).

147. The tenses of the verbs are divided into **primi-**

tive and derivative. From the five primitive tenses all the others are formed in the following manner:—

The PRESENT INFINITIVE forms
1. The *future*, *see* § 145.
2. The *conditional*, *see* § 145.

The PRESENT PARTICIPLE ,,
1. The *plural* of the *present indicative*: *aimant*, *aimons*, *aimez*, *aiment*.
2. The *imperfect indicative*: *finissant*, *finissais*, etc.
3. The *present subjunctive* *finissant*, *finisse*, *finisses*, etc., except the 3rd conjugation, in which *oi* reappears before a silent ending: *recevant*, *reçoive*.

The PAST PARTICIPLE ,,
All the *compound tenses* with the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*.

The PRESENT INDICATIVE ,, the *imperative*, *see* § 146.

The PAST DEFINITE ,,
The *imperfect subjunctive*, by adding **se** to the second person singular: *tu aimas*, *aimasse*.

148. Idiomatic or periphrastic tenses.—Besides the tenses given in the models for the four conjugations, the French use the verbs *aller* (=to go), *venir* (=to come), and *devoir* (=to owe, to be obliged, must), *faire* (=to do, to cause) to form periphrastic tenses.

(*I have just spoken*)	(*I had just spoken*)
Je viens de parler	Je venais de parler
tu viens de parler	tu venais de parler
il vient de parler	il venait de parler
nous venons de parler	nous venions de parler
vous venez de parler	vous veniez de parler
ils viennent de parler	ils venaient de parler

(*I am going to speak*)	(*I am to*, or *I must*, or *I intend to speak*)
Je vais parler	Je dois parler *or* j'ai à parler,
tu vas parler	tu dois parler [etc.
il va parler	il doit parler
nous allons parler	nous devons parler
vous allez parler	vous devez parler
ils vont parler	ils doivent parler

(*I was going to speak*)	(*I was to*, or *I intended to speak*)
J'allais parler	Je devais parler *or* j'avais à
tu allais parler	tu devais parler [parler, etc.
il allait parler	il devait parler
nous allions parler	nous devions parler
vous alliez parler	vous deviez parler
ils allaient parler	ils devaient parler

(*I ought to*, or *I should speak*) *	(*I ought to*, or *I should have spoken*) *
Je devrais parler	J'aurais dû parler
tu devrais parler	tu aurais dû parler
il devrait parler	il aurait dû parler
nous devrions parler	nous aurions dû parler
vous devriez parler	vous auriez dû parler
ils devraient parler	ils auraient dû parler

There is also a past tense with *devoir*, expressing either obligation or supposition—

J'ai dû parler } = I have had to speak, *or* must (surely) have
tu as dû parler } = thou hadst to speak, etc. [spoken.

The verb *faire* (=to do, to make) is frequently used as an auxiliary, and is also followed (like the above) by the present infinitive: *il a* **fait faire** *un habit* (=he has ordered, caused to be made, a coat, *i.e.* he has had a coat made).

---

* In translating into French any sentence in which *shall*, *will*, *should*, *would*, *may*, *might* are used, the pupil should be very careful to distinguish whether those words simply express a future or a subjunctive, or whether they express a duty, a strong intention, or a capacity; in the latter case they must be translated literally into French, *shall*, *should* by **devoir**; *will*, *would* by **vouloir** and *may*, *might*, by **pouvoir**, according to the examples given above.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. How many kinds of verbs are there?
2. What is an *active* verb?—By what other name is it known?
3. Write the subjunctive present of *aimer, chanter, devoir, rendre*; the past definite of *agir, recevoir, vendre*; the conditional past of *parler* and *bénir*.
4. How is a verb conjugated interrogatively?
5. Remark on the spelling or formation of: the *indicative present*, the *imperfect indicative*, the *future*, the *conditional*, the *imperative*.
6. Conjugate negatively the future simple of *parler, douter, recevoir*; the conditional past of *gémir, devoir, chanter*.
7. Conjugate: 1. interrogatively; 2. interrogatively with a negative, the indicative present of *agir*; the past definite of *devoir*.
8. What are the primitive tenses, and what tenses do they form?
9. Give a list of the idiomatic or periphrastic tenses.

SECTION V.

PASSIVE VERBS.

149. The passive verb expresses an action suffered by the subject: *l'agneau* **a été mangé** *par le loup* (=the lamb has been eaten by the wolf).

Every active verb can become passive, that is to say, it can be employed in the passive form. *Manger* (=to eat) is active in *le chat* **mange** *la souris* (=the cat eats the mouse); it becomes passive in *la souris* **est mangée** *par le chat* (=the mouse is eaten by the cat).

NOTE.—The French seldom use the passive verb. They often employ instead the active verb with an indefinite pronoun for subject: **on vend** *le sucre quarante centimes la livre* (=sugar is sold at forty centimes a pound), or they use the reflective verb. (*See* § 160.)

150. There is only one form of conjugation for the passive verbs; it consists of the auxiliary **être**, followed (in all its moods, tenses, and persons) by the *past participle* of the verb we wish to conjugate: **je suis** *mordu* (=I am bitten); **j'ai été** *mordu* (=I have been bitten); **je serai** *mordu* (=I shall be bitten), etc.

151. Care must be taken to make the past participle agree *always* with the subject of the verb: il *est mordu* (=he is bitten); elle *est mordue* (=she is bitten); ils *sont mordus* (=they are bitten), etc.

Conjugation of the Passive Verb ÊTRE AIMÉ

(=*to be loved*).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT. (*I am loved*)		PAST INDEFINITE *or* PERFECT. (*I have been loved*)	
Je suis tu es il *or* elle est	aimé *or* aimée	J'ai été tu as été il *or* elle a été	aimé *or* aimée
nous sommes vous êtes ils *or* elles sont	aimés *or* aimées	nous avons été vous avez été ils *or* elles ont été	aimés *or* aimées

IMPERFECT. (*I was loved*)		PLUPERFECT. (*I had been loved*)	
J'étais tu étais il *or* elle était	aimé *or* aimée	J'avais été tu avais été il *or* elle avait été	aime *or* aimée
nous étions vous étiez ils *or* elles étaient	aimés *or* aimées	nous avions été vous aviez été ils *or* elles avaient été	aimés *or* aimées

PAST DEFINITE. (*I was loved*)		PAST ANTERIOR. (*I had been loved*)	
Je fus tu fus il *or* elle fut	aimé *or* aimée	J'eus été Tu eus été il *or* elle eut été	aimé *or* aimée
nous fûmes vous fûtes ils *or* elles furent	aimés *or* aimées	nous eûmes été vous eûtes été ils *or* elles eurent été	aimés *or* aimées

* When *vous* (=you) is used, out of politeness, instead of *tu* (=thou), the past participle remains, of course, in the *singular* (either *masculine* or *feminine*).

FUTURE.

(*I shall be loved*)

Je serai, tu seras, il *or* elle sera } aimé *or* aimée
nous serons, vous serez, ils *or* elles seront } aimés *or* aimées

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(*I shall have been loved*)

J'aurai été, tu auras été, il *or* elle aura été } aimé *or* aimée
nous aurons été, vous aurez été, ils *or* elles auront été } aimés *or* aimées

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

(*I should be loved*)

Je serais, tu serais, il *or* elle serait } aimé *or* aimée
nous serions, vous seriez, ils *or* elles seraient } aimés *or* aimées

PAST.

(*I would have been loved*)

J'aurais été, tu aurais été, il *or* elle aurait été } aimé *or* aimée
nous aurions été, vous auriez été, ils *or* elles auraient été } aimés *or* aimées

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

(*Be loved*)

Sois aimé *or* aimée

Soyons, Soyez } aimés *or* aimées

PERFECT.

(*Have* [*thou*] *been loved*)

Aie été aimé *or* aimée

Ayons été, Ayez été } aimés *or* aimées

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

(*That I may be loved*)

Que je sois, que tu sois, qu'il *or* qu'elle soit } aimé *or* aimée
que nous soyons, que vous soyez, qu'ils *or* qu'elles soient } aimés *or* aimées

PERFECT.

(*That I might have been loved*)

Que j'aie été, que tu aies été, qu'il *or* qu'elle ait été } aimé *or* aimée
que nous ayons été, que vous ayez été, qu'ils *or* qu'elles aient été } aimés *or* aimées

IMPERFECT. (*That I might be loved*)		PLUPERFECT. (*That I might have been loved*)	
Que je fusse que tu fusses qu'il *or* qu'elle fût	aimé *or* aimée	Que j'eusse été que tu eusses été qu'il *or* qu'elle eût été	aimé *or* aimée
que nous fussions que vous fussiez qu'ils *or* qu'elles fussent	aimés *or* aimées	que nous eussions été que vous eussiez été qu'ils *or* qu'elles eussent été	aimés *or* aimées

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. (*To be loved*)	PERFECT. (*To have been loved*)
Être aimé *or* aimée	Avoir été aimé *or* aimée

PRESENT PARTICIPLE. (*Being loved*)	PERFECT. (*Having been loved*)
Étant aimé *or* aimée	Ayant été aimé *or* aimée

PAST PARTICIPLE (VARIABLE).

Aimé, *fem.* aimée (*loved*)

Exercise 32.+

Write *affirmatively* in the passive voice: the indicative present of *aimer, recevoir, attendre, établir*; the subjunctive present of *toucher, apercevoir, affaiblir, défendre.*

Write *negatively* in the same voice: the imperfect subjunctive of *décevoir, mordre, éblouir, montrer*; the conditional present of *entendre, critiquer, obéir, recevoir.*

Write *interrogatively* in the same voice: the past definite of *consoler, nourrir, apercevoir, confondre*; the future anterior of *rendre, décevoir, munir, tourmenter.*

Write *interrogatively with a negative* in the same voice: the pluperfect indicative of *tromper, désobéir*, recevoir, rendre*; the conditional past of *décevoir, obéir*, blâmer, perdre.*

---

* *Obéir* and *désobéir* are the only neuter verbs which can be used in the passive voice.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is a *passive* verb?
2. Describe the formation of a passive verb.
3. How many conjugations of passive verbs are there?
4. Remark on the participle of passive verbs.
5. Write the subjunctive present, the conditional past, and the future anterior of the passive verbs: *être trompé, être béni, être reçu, être battu.*
6. What do the French often use instead of the passive verb?

SECTION VI.

NEUTER VERBS.

152. A **neuter** verb is one which expresses the state or the action of the subject, but which has no direct complement or object; *Je tombe* (=I fall), *nous languissons* (=we languish).

The *neuter* verb is also called *intransitive*, because it does not *transmit* the action to a complement.

153. The *simple* tenses of the neuter verbs are the same as those of the active verbs. The *compound* tenses of the neuter verbs are formed, generally, with the help of the auxiliary **avoir**: *j'***ai** *dormi* (=I have slept), but sometimes with the help of the auxiliary **être**: *je* **suis** *arrivé* (=I have arrived).

There are only twelve neuter verbs which are conjugated with the auxiliary **être**. They are the following:

aller (=to go)
arriver (=to arrive)
décéder (=to die)
échoir (=to fall due)
éclore (=to be hatched)
entrer (=to enter)
mourir (=to die)
naître (=to be born)
partir (=to go away)
sortir (=to go out)
tomber (=to fall), and its compound *retomber* (=to fall again)
venir (=to come), and its compounds:
devenir (=to become)
intervenir (=to interfere)
parvenir (=to succeed)
revenir (=to come back)
survenir (=to arrive unexpectedly)

154. When the neuter verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary **être**, the participle always agrees with the subject or nominative: **il** *est arrivé* (=he has arrived), **elle** *est arrivée* (=she has arrived), **ils** *sont arrivés* (=they have arrived), etc.

Conjugation of the Verb TOMBER (*= to fall*).

Stem, **tomb** ; *termination*, **er**.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT. (*I fall*)	PAST INDEFINITE *or* PERFECT. (*I have fallen*)
Je tombe	Je suis } tombé *or* tombée
tu tombes	tu es } tombé *or* tombée
il *or* elle tombe	il *or* elle est } tombé *or* tombée
nous tombons	nous sommes } tombés *or* tombées
vous tombez	vous êtes } tombés *or* tombées
ils *or* elles tombent	ils *or* elles sont } tombés *or* tombées

IMPERFECT. (*I was falling*)	PLUPERFECT. (*I had fallen*)
Je tombais	J'étais } tombé *or* tombée
tu tombais	tu étais } tombé *or* tombée
il *or* elle tombait	il *or* elle était } tombé *or* tombée
nous tombions	nous étions } tombés *or* tombées
vous tombiez	vous étiez } tombés *or* tombées
ils *or* elles tombaient	ils *or* elles étaient } tombés *or* tombées

PAST DEFINITE. (*I fell*)	PAST ANTERIOR. (*I had fallen*)
Je tombai	Je fus } tombé *or* tombée
tu tombas	tu fus } tombé *or* tombée
il *or* elle tomba	il *or* elle fut } tombé *or* tombée
nous tombâmes	nous fûmes } tombés *or* tombées
vous tombâtes	vous fûtes } tombés *or* tombées
ils *or* elles tombèrent	ils *or* elles furent } tombés *or* tombées

FUTURE. (*I shall fall*)	FUTURE ANTERIOR. (*I shall have fallen*)
Je tomber*ai*	Je serai } tombé *or* tombée
tu tomber*as*	tu seras } tombé *or* tombée
il *or* elle tomber*a*	il *or* elle sera } tombé *or* tombée
nous tomber*ons*	nous serons } tombés *or* tombées.
vous tomber*ez*	vous serez } tombés *or* tombées.
ils *or* elles tomber*ont*	ils *or* elles seront } tombés *or* tombées.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT. (*I should fall*)	PAST. (*I should have fallen*)
Je tomberais	Je serais, tu serais, il *or* elle serait — tombé *or* tombée
tu tomberais	
il *or* elle tomberait	
nous tomberions	nous serions, vous seriez, ils *or* elles seraient — tombés *or* tombées
vous tomberiez	
ils *or* elles tomberaient	

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. (*Fall* [*thou*])	PERFECT. (*Have* [*thou*] *fallen*)
Tombe	Sois tombé *or* tombée
tombons	soyons, soyez — tombés *or* tombées.
tombez	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. (*That I may fall*)	PERFECT. (*That I may have fallen*)
Que je tombe	Que je sois, que tu sois, qu'il *or* qu'elle soit — tombé *or* tombée
que tu tombes	
qu'il *or* qu'elle tombe	
que nous tombions	que nous soyons, que vous soyez, qu'ils *or* qu'elles soient — tombés *or* tombées
que vous tombiez	
qu'ils *or* qu'elles tombent	

IMPERFECT. (*That I might fall*)	PLUPERFECT. (*That I might have fallen*)
Que je tombasse	Que je fusse, que tu fusses, qu'il *or* qu'elle fût — tombé *or* tombée
que tu tombasses	
qu'il *or* qu'elle tombât	
que nous tombassions	que nous fussions, que vous fussiez, qu'ils *or* qu'elles fussent — tombés *or* tombées
que vous tombassiez	
qu'ils *or* qu'elles tombassent	

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
(*To fall*)	(*To have fallen*)
Tomber	Être tombé *or* tombée

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PERFECT.
(*Falling*)	(*Having fallen*)
Tombant	Étant tombé *or* tombée

PAST PARTICIPLE (VARIABLE).

Tombé, *fem.* tombée (*fallen*).

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is a *neuter* verb?
2. Under what other name is it known?
3. How are the compound tenses of neuter verbs formed?
4. Name the neuter verbs conjugated with the auxiliary *être*.
5. Remark on the past participle of neuter verbs conjugated with the auxiliary *être*.
6. Write out the subjunctive present of *tomber* negatively; and the conditional past of the same verb interrogatively.

SECTION VII.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

155. Whenever the subject at the same time performs and bears the actions, as *je me mords* (=I bite myself), *je me flatte* (=I flatter myself), the verb is called **reflexive**, because the action which the subject performs is turned back or *reflected* upon it.

This verb has also been called *pronominal*, on account of its being conjugated with two pronouns.

156. Reflexive verbs are divided into two classes: 1. The verbs reflexive by nature, *s'écrouler* (=to fall to pieces); *se cabrer* (=to rear); *s'évanouir* (=to faint). 2. The active verbs, as *laver* (=to wash), or neuter verbs, as *nuire* (=to injure), employed in a reflexive form, *je me suis lavé* (=I have washed myself); *je me suis nui* (=I have done myself harm [not bodily]).

157. Reflexive verbs are conjugated in all tenses with two pronouns, viz., the *subject* **je**, and the *object* **me**; these pronouns must always belong to the same person, because the action is both performed and suffered by the subject: *je* **me** *lave*, *tu* **te** *nuis*, etc.

158. The compound tenses of reflexive verbs are always formed with the auxiliary **être.**

159. When the verb is reflexive by nature, the participle agrees: *ils se sont repenti***s** (=they have repented);* when, on the other hand, the verb is only used reflexively, the participle agrees, if the verb is active, and *preceded by its direct object*, as: *ils se sont aimé***s** (=they have loved one another); but it remains invariable, if the verb is neuter: *elles se sont plu* (=they have pleased one another); or if the verb, being active, is *followed by its direct object*, as: *ils se sont* **dit** *des injures* (=they have insulted each other).

160. The reflexive verb is often used in French when the passive is used in English: *Le sucre* **se vend** *quarante centimes la livre* (=sugar is sold at forty centimes a pound); *ce légume* **se mange** *cru* (=this vegetable is eaten raw, uncooked).

Conjugation of the Reflexive Verb SE REPOSER

(=*to rest*).

Stem, **repos** ; *termination*, **er.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT. (*I rest*)	PAST INDEFINITE *or* PERFECT. (*I have rested*)	
Je me repose	Je me suis	reposé *or* reposée
tu te reposes	tu t'es	
il *or* elle se repose	il *or* elle s'est	
nous nous reposons	nous nous sommes	reposés *or* reposées
vous vous reposez	vous vous êtes	
ils *or* elles se reposent	ils *or* elles se sont	

* The reflexive verb *s'arroger* (=to assume [for oneself]) is an exception to the rule, as the personal pronoun is always the *indirect* object.

IMPERFECT. (*I was resting*)	PLUPERFECT. (*I had rested*)
Je me reposais	Je m'étais } reposé *or* reposée
tu te reposais	tu t'étais } reposé *or* reposée
il *or* elle se reposait	il *or* elle s'était } reposé *or* reposée
nous nous reposions	nous nous étions } reposés *or* reposées
vous vous reposiez	vous vous étiez } reposés *or* reposées
ils *or* elles se reposaient	ils *or* elles s'étaient } reposés *or* reposées

PAST DEFINITE. (*I rested*)	PAST ANTERIOR. (*I had rested*)
Je me reposai	Je me fus } reposé *or* reposée
tu te reposas	tu te fus } reposé *or* reposée
il *or* elle se reposa	il *or* elle se fut } reposé *or* reposée
nous nous reposâmes	nous nous fûmes } reposés *or* reposées
vous vous reposâtes	vous vous fûtes } reposés *or* reposées
ils *or* elles se reposèrent	ils *or* elles se furent } reposés *or* reposées

FUTURE. (*I shall rest*)	FUTURE ANTERIOR. (*I shall have rested*)
Je me repos*er*ai	Je me serai } reposé *or* reposée
tu te repos*er*as	tu te seras } reposé *or* reposée
il *or* elle se repos*er*a	il *or* elle se sera } reposé *or* reposée
nous nous repos*er*ons	nous nous serons } reposés *or* reposées
vous vous repos*er*ez	vous vous serez } reposés *or* reposées
ils *or* elles se repos*er*ont	ils *or* elles se seront } reposés *or* reposées

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT. (*I should rest*)	PAST. (*I should have rested*)
Je me repos*er*ais	Je me serais } reposé *or* reposée
tu te repos*er*ais	tu te serais } reposé *or* reposée
il *or* elle se repos*er*ait	il *or* elle se serait } reposé *or* reposée
nous nous repos*er*ions	nous nous serions } reposés *or* reposées
vous vous repos*er*iez	vous vous seriez } reposés *or* reposées
ils *or* elles se repos*er*aient	ils *or* elles se seraient } reposés *or* reposées

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. (*Rest*)	PERFECT.
Repose-toi	(*Never used.*)
reposons-nous	
reposez-vous	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. (*That I may rest*)	PERFECT. (*That I may have rested*)
Que je me repose	Que je me sois reposé
que tu te reposes	que tu te sois reposé
qu'il *or* qu'elle se repose	qu'il *or* qu'elle se soit reposée
que nous nous reposions	que nous nous soyons reposés
que vous vous reposiez	que vous vous soyez reposés
qu'ils *or* qu'elles se reposent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles se soient reposées

IMPERFECT. (*That I might rest*)	PLUPERFECT. (*That I might have rested*)
Que je me reposasse	Que je me fusse reposé
que tu te reposasses	que tu te fusses reposé
qu'il *or* qu'elle se reposât	qu'il *or* qu'elle se fût reposée
que nous nous reposassions	que nous nous fussions reposés
que vous vous reposassiez	que vous vous fussiez reposés
qu'ils *or* qu'elles se reposassent	qu'ils *or* qu'elles se fussent reposées

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. (*To rest*)	PERFECT. (*To have rested*)
Se reposer	S'être reposé *or* reposée

PRESENT PARTICIPLE. (*Resting*)	PERFECT. (*Having rested*)
Se reposant	S'étant reposé *or* reposée

PAST PARTICIPLE (VARIABLE).
Reposé, *fem.* reposée (*rested*).

☞ *The interrogative and negative conjugation of reflexive verbs will be found at page* 175.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. Define a *reflexive* verb.
2. Under what other name is it known?
3. Describe the various classes of reflexive verbs.
4. What auxiliary is used in the compound tenses of reflexive verbs?
5. For what purpose do the French often use the reflexive verb?
6. Write the future anterior, the past indefinite, and the imperfect subjunctive of the verb *se reposer*.

Exercise 33.

Indicatif présent.—Je m'habille. Il ne se repose pas. Vous vous tourmentez en vain. Ils se baignent tous les étés.

Imparfait.—Je me proposais de vous écrire. Votre frère ne s'imaginait-il pas que vous aviez tort? Nous ne nous abonnions pas au cabinet de lecture.

Passé défini.—Je ne me fâchai jamais sans motif. Nous enorguellîmes-nous de cet avantage? Vous ne vous dépêchâtes pas.

Futur.—T'apercevras-tu de son dessein? Il s'empressera de le faire. Ne nous acquitterons-nous pas de nos compliments? Elles s'enrhumeront.

Conditionnel présent.—Je ne me déciderais jamais aussi imprudemment. Ne s'appliquerait-elle pas au dessin? Votre sœur ne se tromperait-elle pas? Ces élèves ne s'habitueraient pas au travail.

Impératif.—Repose-toi. Dépêchons-nous. Attendez-vous à recevoir de nos nouvelles. Ne nous fatiguons pas trop.

Subjonctif présent.—Il désire que je me porte mieux. Qu'il ne s'amuse pas à mes dépens. Que nous nous précipitions dans le danger. Que ces fleurs ne se flétrissent pas.

Imparfait.—J'exigeais que tu te nourrisses avec soin. Que nous nous détournassions du droit chemin. Que vous vous confondissiez en excuses. Qu'ils ne s'enorgueillissent pas d'un avantage insignifiant.

Infinitif.—Ne se reposer qu'à de longs intervalles. Ne s'être jamais trompé.

Participes.—Ne me fiant qu'à un honnête homme, je ne crois m'être aperçu d'aucune fraude.

Temps composés.—Je me suis esquivé. Tu ne t'étais pas rendu à discrétion. Elle ne se fut pas réjouie de cette nouvelle. Vous seriez-vous dégradés dans l'opinion publique? Que je me sois décidé à rester. Que tu ne te fusses pas égaré dans la forêt. Que cette propriété ne se fût pas vendue si cher.

[1] se rendre. [2] raison (*f.*). [3] jouir de. [4] santé (*f.*). [5] s'enorgueillir. [6] léger avantage (*m.*). [7] s'offenser. [8] de poisson. [9] se détromper. [10] s'emparer. [11] en vain. [12] se réunir. [13] se réjouir de. [14] se précipiter. [15] fortune (*f.*). [16] se tromper. [17] s'égarer. [18] se rétracter. [19] s'apercevoir de. [20] s'évanouir. [21] s'esquiver. [22] se recueillir. [23] surprenant. [24] s'acquitter de. [25] avouer. [26] se condamner. [27] se moquer de. [28] se décider. [29] se déshonorer. [30] se vanter.

Indicative present.—I yield[1] to his reasons[2]. Dost thou not enjoy[3] better health[4]? We trust an honest man.

Imperfect.—He boasted[5] of a trifling advantage[6]. Were you not offended[7]? They fed on fish[8].

Perfect definite.—She undeceived[9] herself. Thou didst not perceive my plan. They took possession[10] of the farm.

Future.—I shall subscribe to the circulating library. He will torment himself uselessly[11]. You will not meet[12] here.

Conditional present.—Thou wouldst catch cold. We should rejoice at[13] your success. They would rush[14] into (the) danger (*m.*).

Imperative.—Make haste. Let us not trust too much to his good luck[15]. Do not make a mistake[16].

Subjunctive present.—That I may not lose myself[17] in the wood. That she may not retract[18]. That we may not wound ourselves.

Imperfect.—That thou mightest perceive[19] the force of this argument. That she might not faint away[20]. That they might steal away[21].

Infinitive.—To collect one's thoughts[22] is often necessary. To have perceived this error is not wonderful[23].

Participles.—Going to Paris, I shall perform[24] your commissions with pleasure. Having made a mistake, he confessed[25] it.

Compound tenses.—I have condemned[26] myself. Thou hadst not trusted thy father. We shall not have laughed at[27] him. You would not have made up your mind[28] to remain. That they may have disgraced[29] themselves. That I might have boasted[30] of it.

SECTION VIII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

161. An **impersonal** verb expresses an action which cannot be ascribed to any special subject or *person*, such as the verbs *neiger* (=to snow), and *pleuvoir* (=to rain).

162. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular, and are preceded by the pronoun **il**,

which refers to no subject, and has merely a vague and indefinite sense.

The pronoun *il* of the impersonal verbs is not the same as the pronoun *il* of the active verbs; the latter stands for a distinct person; the former signifies *cela* (=that), and has only a vague, indeterminate sense.

163. Besides the verbs which are naturally impersonal (as *il pleut, il neige*), we can use both active and neuter verbs impersonally: *Il tombe de l'eau* (=it rains, *lit.* water is falling); *il fait beau* (=the weather is fine); *il convient d'obéir* (=it is proper to obey), etc.

These verbs, having *only one person*, are called *unipersonal.*

Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb NEIGER (=*to snow*).
Stem, **neig**; *termination* **er.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST INDEFINITE *or* PERFECT.
Il neige (*it snows*)	Il a neigé (*it has snowed*)
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Il neigeait * (*it was snowing*)	Il avait neigé (*it had snowed*)
PAST DEFINITE.	PAST ANTERIOR.
Il neigea * (*it snowed*)	Il eut neigé (*it had snowed*)
FUTURE.	FUTURE ANTERIOR.
Il neigera (*it will snow*)	Il aura neigé (*it will have snowed*)

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Il neigerait (*it would snow*)	Il aurait neigé (*it would have snowed*)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Qu'il neige (*that it may snow*)	Qu'il ait neigé (*that it may have snowed*)
PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Qu'il neigeât * (*that it might snow*)	Qu'il eût neigé (*that it might have snowed*)

* See § 167.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Neiger (*to snow*)	Avoir neigé (*to have snowed*)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Neigeant* (*snowing*)

PAST PARTICIPLE (INVARIABLE).

Neigé (*snowed*)

NOTE the use of *avoir* with the adverb **y** (=there), as an impersonal verb:

Present Ind.—*Il* **y** *a* } =there is), etc.

SECTION IX.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

164. Every verb is called *irregular* which, in the formation of its simple tenses, deviates from the rules we have explained above.

165. A verb may be irregular in one of two ways. (1) It may lack one or more of the moods, tenses, or persons of regular verbs, and then it is called a *defective verb* (from the Latin *defectivus*=defective, imperfect); or (2), It may possess all these moods, tenses, or persons, but at the same time vary, so far as their formation is concerned, from the prescribed rules; it is, then, an *irregular verb* properly so called.

The main characteristic which distinguishes the regular from the irregular verbs is, that in the former the stem remains invariable, the endings *alone* changing according to mood, tense, and person: *chant*er, *chant*ons, *chant*erai; whereas, in the irregular verbs the stem is not uniformly written throughout all the tenses of the conjugation: ten*ir*, *je* tien**s**; voul*oir*, *je* veu*x*, veuill*ez*; sav*oir*, su**s**, sach*e*, etc.

1. First Conjugation: ER.

166. Verbs like *mener* (=to lead), *lever* (=to raise), which have a mute **e** in the last syllable but one, take

* See § 167.

a grave accent over that *e* before a mute syllable; *je mène* (=I lead), *il lèvera* (=he will raise). *See* § 24.

Most verbs, however, in **eler**, **eter**, like *appeler* (=to call), *jeter* (=to throw), double the **l** or **t**: j'*appelle* (=I call), *il jette* (=he throws). *See* § 24.

But *acheter* (=to buy), *celer* (=to conceal), *geler* (=to freeze), *modeler* (=to fashion), *peler* (=to peel), etc., take the grave accent, *j'achète* (=I buy), *il pèlera* (=he will peel).

Verbs having a close **é** before the final syllable change it into an open **è** before a *final* mute syllable, as *céder* (=to yield), *je cède* (I yield); *protéger* (=to protect), *il protège* (=he protects). In the future and the conditional the *é* of the infinitive is retained: *je céderai* (=I shall yield), *il protégerait* (=he would protect). *See* § 147.

167. Verbs ending in **cer** and **ger**, such as *percer* (=to pierce), *tracer* (=to trace), *manger* (=to eat), *loger* (=to lodge), keep their *c* or *g* soft before *a* and *o*, the former by taking a cedilla under the *c*: *nous perçons* (=we pierce), *il traça* (=he traced), the latter by adding an *e mute* after the *g*: *nous mangeons* (=we eat), *nous logeons* (=we lodge).

168. Verbs ending in **oyer**, **uyer** change *y* into *i* before *e* mute; *essuyer* (=to wipe), *j'essuie* (=I wipe), *j'essuierai* (=I shall wipe), *envoyer* (=to send), *ils envoient* (=they send).

This rule applies to all verbs having the present participle in **oyant**, **uyant**: *croyant*, *croie*; **fuyant**, *fuie*; **voyant**, *voie*.

In verbs ending in **ayer**, like *payer* (=to pay), *balayer* (=to sweep), the change is optional, but the *y* is more generally retained: *je paye* (=I pay).

169. The first conjugation has really only two irregular verbs: *aller* (=to go), and *envoyer* (=to send).

Aller (=to go).

Prim. Tenses. Aller, allant, allé, je vais, j'allai.

Ind. Pres. Je vais, tu vas, il *or* elle va, nous allons, vous allez, ils *or* elles vont.

Imperf.	J'allais, etc., nous allions, etc.
Past Def.	J'allai, tu allas, il *or* elle alla, nous allâmes, vous allâtes, ils *or* elles allèrent.
Fut.	J'irai, tu iras, il *or* elle ira, nous irons, vous irez, ils *or* elles iront.
Cond. Pres.	J'irais, tu irais, il *or* elle irait, nous irions, vous iriez, ils *or* elles iraient.
Imper.	Va, allons, allez.
Subj. Pres.	Que j'aille, etc., que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils *or* qu'elles aillent.
Imperf.	Que j'allasse, etc., que nous allassions, etc.
Infin.	Aller.
Part.	Allant, allé.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **être.**

S'en aller (=to go away) is conjugated in the same manner:—

Je m'en vais, tu t'en vas, etc. The compound tenses, *je m'en suis allé, que je m'en fusse allé,* etc., ought to be thoroughly acquired by the pupils.

Envoyer (=to send).

Prim. Tenses.	Envoyer, envoyant, envoyé, j'envoie, j'envoyai.
Future.	J'enverrai; *conditional,* j'enverrais.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

2. Second Conjugation in IR with Imperfect in ISSAIS.

170. This conjugation has but one irregular verb, and that only in the past participle. It is the verb **bénir**, the past participle of which can be spelt, according to the meaning, *béni*t or *béni*: *béni*t, in the case of things consecrated by the church, and *béni* in all other instances: *pain béni*t (=consecrated bread), *nation béni*e (=blessed nation).

Fleurir (=to blossom, to flourish), has two forms, the one regular, *fleurissait* (=bloomed), *fleurissant* (=blooming); the other irregular, *florissais* (=flourished, prospered), *florissant* (=flourishing, prosperous); *florissais, florissant* are the remains of the old verb *florir.*

Haïr (=to hate) takes no diæresis in the indicative present singular, and in the imperative (second person singular); *je* **haïs**, *tu* **haïs**, *il* **haït**; **haïs**.

3. Second (direct) Conjugation in IR.

171. We have seen (§ 131) that there are two regular conjugations in **ir**: the one (consisting of more than three hundred verbs) places **iss** between the stem and the termination (*fin***iss***ais*); the other (composed only of about twenty verbs) merely adds the ending *directly* to the stem (*je sent***ais**); we have left the latter entirely aside in studying the formation of the simple tenses; we shall now study in detail each one of the verbs of this conjugation, which we call the *direct* conjugation in **ir**.

172. The verbs constituting the direct conjugation in **ir** are divided into three classes, according to the form of their past definite; *dormir* (=to sleep), *courir* (=to run), and *tenir* (=to hold), become respectively in the past definite: *je dorm***is**, *je cour***us**, *je* **tins**. Accordingly, the first class comprises all the verbs whose past definite is in **is**, the second is characterised by the ending of the same tense in **us**, and the third forms the past definite by placing the stress on the stem of the verb: **ten***ir*, *je* **tins**; **ven***ir*, *je* **vins**.

The irregular verbs of the second conjugation are as follows:—

Acquérir (=to acquire).

Prim. Tenses.	Acquérir, acquérant, acquis, j'acquiers, j'acquis.
Ind. Pres.	J'acquiers, tu acquiers, il *or* elle acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils *or* elles acquièrent.
Imperf.	J'acquérais, etc., nous acquérions, etc.
Past Def.	J'acquis, etc., nous acquîmes, etc.
Fut.	J'acquerrai, tu acquerras, il *or* elle acquerra, nous acquerrons, vous acquerrez, ils *or* elles acquerront.

Cond. Pres.	J'acquerrais, etc., nous acquerrions. etc.
Imper.	Acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.
Subj. Pres.	Que j'acquière, que tu acquières, qu'il *or* qu'elle acquière, que nous acquérions, que vous acquériez, qu'ils *or* qu'elles acquièrent.
Imperf.	Que j'acquisse, etc., que nous acquissions, etc.
Infin.	Acquérir.
Part.	Acquérant, acquis, acquise.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Acquérir, *mourir* and *courir* have their future respectively, *acquerrai*, *mourrai*, *courrai*; as *saillir* has in the future *saillera*, side by side with *saillira*, so, instead of *acquerirai*, *mourirai*, *courirai*, Old French had *acquérerai*, *mourerai*, *courerai*; then, later on, the *e* mute disappeared, and the contracted forms *acquerrai*, *mourrai*, *courrai*, prevailed. This explains also why the two *r*'s must be pronounced strongly.

Bouillir (=to boil).

Prim. Tenses.	Bouillir, bouillant, bouilli, je bous, je bouillis.
Ind. Pres.	Je bous, tu bous, il *or* elle bout, nous bouillons, vous bouillez, ils *or* elles bouillent.
Imperf.	Je bouillais, etc., nous bouillions, etc.
Past Def.	Je bouillis, etc., nous bouillîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je bouillirai, etc., nous bouillirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je bouillirais, nous bouillirions, etc.
Imper.	Bous, bouillons, bouillez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je bouille, que tu bouilles, qu'il *or* qu'elle bouille, que nous bouillions, que vous bouilliez, qu'ils *or* qu'elles bouillent.
Imperf.	Que je bouillisse, etc., que nous bouillissions, etc.
Infin.	Bouillir.
Part.	Bouillant, bouilli, bouillie.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

N.B.—*Bouillir* is essentially a neuter verb, and *to boil*, used actively, is rendered by the verb *faire* (=to make) and *bouillir*: **faites bouillir** *ces légumes* (=boil these vegetables).

Courir (=to run).

Prim. Tenses.	Courir, courant, couru, je cours, je courus.
Ind. Pres.	Je cours, tu cours, il *or* elle court, nous courons, vous courez, ils *or* elles courent.
Imperf.	Je courais, etc., nous courions, etc.

Past Def.	Je courus, etc., nous courûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je courrai, tu courras, il *or* elle courra, nous courrons, vous courrez, ils *or* elles courront.
Cond. Pres.	Je courrais, etc., nous courrions, etc.
Imper.	Cours, courons, courez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je coure, que tu coures, qu'il *or* qu'elle coure, que nous courions, que vous couriez, qu'ils *or* qu'elles courent.
Imperf.	Que je courusse, etc., que nous courussions, etc.
Infin.	Courir.
Part.	Courant, couru, courue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Besides *courir*, the old French had also the form *courre*, which still exists in the expression *chasse à courre* (*chasse à courir*=hunting). For the future *courrai*, see above, *acquérir*.

Couvrir (=to cover).

Prim. Tenses. Couvrir, couvrant, couvert, je couvre, je couvris.

See *offrir*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Cueillir (=to pluck, to gather).

Prim. Tenses. Cueillir, cueillant, cueilli, je cueille, je cueillis.

Ind. Pres.	Je cueille, tu cueilles, il *or* elle cueille, nous cueillons, vous cueillez, ils or elles cueillent.
Imperf.	Je cueillais, etc., nous cueillions, etc.
Past Def.	Je cueillis, etc., nous cueillîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je cueillerai, etc., nous cueillerons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je cueillerais, etc., nous cueillerions, etc.
Imper.	Cueille, cueillons, cueillez.
Sub. Pres.	Que je cueille, etc., que nous cueillions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je cueillisse, etc., que nous cueillissions, etc.
Infin.	Cueillir.
Part.	Cueillant, cueilli, cueillie.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

For the future *cueillerai*, see *acquérir*.

Dormir (=to sleep).

Prim. Tenses. Dormir, dormant, dormi, je dors, je dormis.

See *mentir*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Faillir (=to fail).

Several tenses of this verb, such as the *Indicative Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future*, are seldom used.

Prim. tenses.	Faillir, faillant, failli, je faux, je faillis.
Ind. Pres.	Je faux, tu faux, il *or* elle faut, nous faillons, vous faillez, ils *or* elles faillent.
Imperf.	Je faillais, tu faillais, il *or* elle faillait, nous faillions, vous failliez, ils *or* elles faillaient.
Past Def.	Je faillis, etc., nous faillîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je faillirai, etc., nous faillirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je faillirais, etc., nous faillirions, etc.
Imper.	Faille, . . faillez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je faille, etc., que nous faillions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je faillisse, etc., que nous faillissions, etc.
Infin.	Faillir.
Part.	Faillant, failli.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

The first three persons of the singular, *je faux, tu faux, il faut*, have fallen almost entirely into disuse; the expression is, however, still met with: *le cœur me faut* (*me manque*) =my heart fails me. The *Pres. Part.* also is obsolete.

Férir (=to strike) has preserved only the past participle *féru.*

It survives in the expression *sans coup férir* (=without striking a blow): *d'Harcourt prit Turin sans coup férir* (=d'Harcourt took Turin without striking a blow).

Fuir (=to flee).

Prim. Tenses.	Fuir, fuyant, fui, je fuis, je fuis.
Ind. Pres.	Je fuis, tu fuis, il *or* elle fuit, nous fuyons, vous fuyez, ils *or* elles fuient.
Imperf.	Je fuyais, etc., nous fuyions, etc.
Past Def.	Je fuis, etc., nous fuîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je fuirai, etc., nous fuirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je fuirais, etc., nous fuirions, etc.
Imper.	Fuis, fuyons, fuyez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je fuie, etc., que nous fuyions, que vous fuyiez, qu'ils *or* qu'elles fuient.
Imperf.	Que je fuisse, etc., que nous fuissions, etc.
Infin.	Fuir.
Part.	Fuyant, fui, fuie.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Gésir (*être couché*=to lie down).

This verb is no longer used in the infinitive; the following are the only parts employed: Il gît, nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent; je gisais, tu gisais, il gisait, nous gisions, vous gisiez, ils gisaient; gisant. *Ci-gît* (=here lies) is used in epitaphs.

Mentir (=to tell lies).

Prim. Tenses.	Mentir, mentant, menti, je mens, je mentis.
Ind. Pres.	Je mens, tu mens, il *or* elle ment, nous mentons, vous mentez, ils *or* elles mentent.
Imperf.	Je mentais, etc., nous mentions, etc.
Past Def.	Je mentis, etc., nous mentîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je mentirai, etc., nous mentirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je mentirais, etc., nous mentirions, etc.
Imper.	Mens, mentons, mentez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je mente, etc., que nous mentions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je mentisse, etc., que nous mentissions, etc.
Infin.	Mentir.
Part.	Mentant, menti.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Mourir (=to die).

Prim. Tenses.	Mourir, mourant, mort, je meurs, je mourus.
Ind. Pres.	Je meurs, tu meurs, il *or* elle meurt, nous mourons, vous mourez, ils *or* elles meurent.
Imperf.	Je mourais, etc., nous mourions, etc.
Past Def.	Je mourus, etc., nous mourûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je mourrai, etc., nous mourrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je mourrais, etc., nous mourrions, etc.
Imper.	Meurs, mourons, mourez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je meure, etc., que nous mourions, que vous mouriez, qu'ils meurent.
Imperf.	Que je mourusse, etc., que nous mourussions, etc.
Infin.	Mourir.
Part.	Mourant, mort, morte.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **être.**

For the future *mourrai*, see *acquérir*.

Offrir (=to offer).

Prim. Tenses. Offrir, offrant, offert, j'offre, j'offris.

Ind. Pres.	J'offre, tu offres, il *or* elle offre, nous offrons, vous offrez, ils *or* elles offrent.
Imperf.	J'offrais, etc., nous offrions, etc.
Past Def.	J'offris, etc., nous offrîmes, etc.
Fut.	J'offrirai, etc., nous offrirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	J'offrirais, etc., nous offririons, etc.
Imper.	Offre, offrons, offrez.
Subj. Pres.	Que j'offre, etc., que nous offrions, etc.
Imperf.	Que j'offrisse, etc., que nous offrissions, etc.
Infin.	Offrir.
Part.	Offrant, offert, offerte.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Ouïr (=to hear).

This verb is used only in the *Inf. Pres.*, ouïr; the *Part. Past*, ouï; the *Past Def.*, j'ouïs, tu ouïs, etc.; the *Imperf. Subj.* que j'ouïsse, que tu ouïsses, etc. *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

The past participle subsists in law language: *ouïe la lecture de l'arrêt* (*la lecture de l'arrêt entendue*) = the reading of the sentence having been heard.

Ouvrir (=to open).

Prim. Tenses. Ouvrir, ouvrant, ouvert, j'ouvre, j'ouvris.

See *offrir*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Partir (=to set out).

Prim. Tenses. Partir, partant, parti, je pars, je partis.

See *mentir*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **être.**

Saillir (=to jump, to gush) is conjugated like *finir*, but when it means *to jut out* it has:

Prim. Tenses. Saillir, saillant, sailli, il saille, and the future *saillera.*

See *tressaillir*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Sentir (=to feel).

Prim. Tenses. Sentir, sentant, senti, je sens, je sentis.

See *mentir*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Servir (=to serve).

Prim. Tenses. Servir, servant, servi, je sers, je servis.

See *mentir.* *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Sortir (=to go out).

Prim. Tenses. Sortir, sortant, sorti, je sors, je sortis.

See *mentir.* *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **être.**

Souffrir (=to suffer).

Prim. Tenses. Souffrir, souffrant, souffert, je souffre, je souffris.

See *offrir.* *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Tenir (=to hold).

Prim. Tenses. Tenir, tenant, tenu, je tiens, je tins.

See *venir* *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Tressaillir (=to start up).

Prim. Tenses. Tressaillir, tressaillant, tressailli, je tressaillê, je tressaillis.

Ind. Pres.	Je tressaille, tu tressailles, il tressaille, nous tressaillons, vous tressaillez, ils tressaillent.
Imperf.	Je tressaillais, etc., nous tressaillions, etc.
Past Def.	Je tressaillis, etc., nous tressaillîmes. etc.
Fut.	Je tressaillirai, etc., nous tressaillirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je tressaillirais, etc., nous tressaillirions, etc.
Imper.	Tressaille, tressaillons, tressaillez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je tressaille, etc., que nous tressaillions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je tressaillisse, etc., que nous tressaillissions, etc.
Infin.	Tressaillir.
Part.	Tressaillant, tressailli.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Venir (=to come).

Prim. Tenses. Venir, venant, venu, je viens, je vins.

Ind Pres. Je viens, tu viens, il *or* elle vient, vous venons, vous venez, ils *or* elles viennent.

Imperf.	Je venais, etc., nous venions, etc.
Past Def.	Je vins, etc., nous vînmes, etc.
Fut.	Je viendrai, etc., nous viendrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je viendrais, etc., nous viendrions, etc.
Imper.	Viens, venons, venez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je vienne, etc., que nous venions, que vous veniez, qu'ils *or* qu'elles viennent.
Imperf.	Que je vinsse, etc., que nous vinssions, etc.
Infin.	Venir.
Part.	Venant, venu, venue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **être.**

Vêtir =(to clothe).

Prim. Tenses.	Vêtir, vêtant, vêtu, je vêts, je vêtis.
Ind. Pres.	Je vêts, tu vêts, il *or* elle vêt, nous vêtons, vous vêtez, ils *or* elles vêtent.
Imperf.	Je vêtais, etc., nous vêtions, etc.
Past Def.	Je vêtis, etc., nous vêtîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je vêtirai, etc., nous vêtirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je vêtirais, etc., nous vêtirions, etc.
Imper.	Vêts, vêtons, vêtez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je vête, etc., que nous vêtions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je vêtisse, etc., que nous vêtissions, etc.
Infin.	Vêtir.
Part.	Vêtant, vêtu, vêtue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

4. Third Conjugation: OIR.

173. The irregular verbs in *oir* are subdivided into two classes:—

1. The first forms its past definite in **us**, and its participle in **u**; *val***oir** (=to be worth), *val***us**, *val***u**.

2. The second class comprises the two verbs *asseoir* (=to sit), and *voir* (=to see), forming their past definite in **is** (*ass***is**, *v***is**), but differing from each other in the past participle (*ass***is**, *v***u**).

174. The irregular verbs of the third conjugation are the following:—

Asseoir (=to seat, to place, to sit).

Prim. Tenses.	Asseoir, asseyant, assis, j'assieds, j'assis.
Ind. Pres.	J'assieds, tu assieds, il assied, nous asseyons, vous asseyez, ils asseyent.
Imperf.	J'asseyais, etc., nous asseyions, etc.
Past Def.	J'assis, etc., nous assîmes, etc.
Fut.	J'assiérai, etc., nous assiérons, etc.; also: j'asseyerai, etc., nous asseyerons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	J'assiérais, etc., nous assiérions, etc., also: j'asseyerais, etc., nous asseyerions, etc.
Imper.	Assieds, asseyons, asseyez.
Subj. Pres.	Que j'asseye, etc., que nous asseyions, que vous asseyiez, qu'ils asseyent.
Imperf.	Que j'assisse, etc., que nous assissions, etc.
Infin.	Asseoir.
Part.	Asseyant, assis, assise.

The verb *asseoir* is also conjugated as follows:—

Ind. Pres.	J'assois, tu assois, il assoit, nous assoyons, vous assoyez, ils assoient.
Imperf.	J'assoyais, etc.

But this manner is not used in written language.

The verb *surseoir* (=to postpone) follows this second form.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**; but it takes the auxiliary **être** when used as a *reflexive* verb (§ 158); *s'asseoir* (=to sit down).

Choir (*tomber* =to fall).

Employed only in the infinitive, and in a limited number of instances.

In Old French it was conjugated throughout (*chois, chéais, chus, cherrai, chéant, chu*). Even as late as the seventeenth century we find the future *cherrai*: *Tirez la chevillette, et la bobinette* **cherra** (=pull the peg and the bobbin will fall).—PERRAULT.

The past participle *chu* (=fallen) has given the feminine substantive *chute*, just as the past participles *entrée, revue, battue* have given, respectively, the substantives: ***une entrée, une revue, une battue*** (see § 44, 1).

Déchoir (=to decay, fall).

Prim. Tenses.	Déchoir, ——, déchu, je déchois, je déchus.
Ind. Pres.	Je déchois, tu déchois, il déchoit, nous déchoyons, vous déchoyez, ils déchoient.
Imperf.	Je déchoyais, etc., nous déchoyions, etc.
Past Def.	Je déchus, etc., nous déchûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je décherrai, etc., nous décherrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je décherrais, etc., nous décherrions, etc.
Imper.	Déchois, déchoyons, déchoyez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je déchoie, etc., que nous déchoyions. que vous déchoyiez, qu'ils déchoient.
Imperf.	Que je déchusse, etc., que nous déchussions, etc.
Infin.	Déchoir.
Part.	(no *Pres. Part.*) déchu, déchue.

Conjugated with **avoir** when it expresses an action, and with **être** when it denotes a state.

Échoir (=to fall due).

Prim. Tenses: Échoir, échéant, échu, il échoit, j'échus.

Conjugated as *déchoir*.—Used only in the *Pres. Part.*, échéant; the *Past Part.*, échu; the *Indic. Pres., third person singular*, il échoit (pronounced and often written *échet*); the *Past Def.*, j'échus, etc.; the *Fut.*, j'écherrai, etc.; the *Cond. Pres.*, j'écherrais, etc.; the *Imperf. Subj.*, que j'échusse, etc.

See *déchoir*. *Conjugated with* **avoir** *or* **être**.

From the Pres. Part. *échéant* comes the feminine substantive *échéance* (=expiration, maturity [of bills]), just as *vengeant*, *surveillant* have formed *vengeance*, *surveillance*. (See § 44.)

Falloir (=to be necessary).

Prim. Tenses.	Falloir, ——, fallu, il faut, il fallut.
Ind. Pres.	Il faut.
Imperf.	Il fallait.
Past Def.	Il fallut.
Fut.	Il faudra.
Cond. Pres.	Il faudrait.
Imper.	(None.)
Subj. Pres.	Qu'il faille.
Imperf.	Qu'il fallût.
Infin.	Falloir.
Part.	(no *Pres. Part.*) fallu.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

Mouvoir (=to move).

Prim. Tenses.	Mouvoir, mouvant, mû, je meus, je mus.
Ind. Pres.	Je meus, tu meus, il meut, nous mouvons, vous mouvez, ils meuvent.
Imperf.	Je mouvais, etc., nous mouvions, etc.
Past Def.	Je mus, etc., nous mûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je mouvrai, etc., nous mouvrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je mouvrais, etc., nous mouvrions, etc.
Imper.	Meus, mouvons, mouvez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve, que nous mouvions, que vous mouviez, qu'ils meuvent.
Imperf.	Que je musse, etc., que nous mussions, etc.
Infin.	Mouvoir.
Part.	Mouvant, mû, mue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Pleuvoir (=to rain).

Prim. Tenses.	Pleuvoir, pleuvant, plu, il pleut, il plut.
Ind. Pres.	Il pleut.
Imperf.	Il pleuvait.
Past Def.	Il plut.
Fut.	Il pleuvra.
Cond. Pres.	Il pleuvrait.
Subj. Pres.	Qu'il pleuve.
Imperf.	Qu'il plût.
Infin.	Pleuvoir.
Part.	Pleuvant, plu.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Pouvoir (=to be able).

Prim. Tenses.	Pouvoir, pouvant, pu, je peux *or* je puis, je pus.
Ind. Pres.	Je peux *or* je puis,* tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent.
Imperf.	Je pouvais, etc., nous pouvions, etc.
Past Def.	Je pus, etc., nous pûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je pourrai, etc., nous pourrons, etc.†
Cond. Pres.	Je pourrais, etc., nous pourrions, etc.†
Imper.	(None.)

* *Puis* is the only form used in the interrogative conjugation (*for the first person*), *Puis-je?* (=can I *?*)

† The two *r*'s sounded only as one, whilst in *acquerrai, courrai, mourrai* both are sounded strongly.

Subj. Pres.	Que je puisse, etc., que nous puissions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je pusse, etc., que nous pussions, etc.
Infin.	Pouvoir.
Part.	Pouvant, pu.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Savoir (=to know).

Prim. Tenses. Savoir, sachant, su, je sais, je sus.

Ind. Pres.	Je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent.
Imperf.	Je savais, etc., nous savions, etc.
Past Def.	Je sus, etc., nous sûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je saurai, etc., nous saurons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je saurais, etc., nous saurions, etc.
Imper.	Sache, sachons, sachez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je sache, etc., que nous sachions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je susse, etc., que nous sussions, etc.
Infin.	Savoir.
Part.	Sachant, su, sue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

In Old French, *savoir* was *saver*, from the Latin *sapere*. This form *saver* gave the future *saver-ai*, which, contracted later into *savrai* (as *recevoir* into *recevrai*, *devoir* into *devrai*, etc.), became in the fourteenth century *saurai*, as *habere* became *aver-ai*, then *avrai*, and finally *aurai*.

Seoir.

In the sense of 'to be seated' (=*être assis*) this verb is obsolete. It is sometimes used in the present participle, *séant*, and the past participle, *sis*, *sise*. When meaning 'to be becoming' (=*être convenable*) it is still used in certain tenses, and always in the third person singular or plural: il sied, ils siéent; il seyait, il siéra, etc.

Valoir (=to be worth).

Prim. Tenses. Valoir, valant, valu, je vaux, je valus.

Ind. Pres.	Je vaux, tu vaux, il vaut, nous valons, vous valez, ils valent.
Imperf.	Je valais, etc., nous valions, etc.
Past Def.	Je valus, etc., nous valûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je vaudrai, etc., nous vaudrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je vaudrais, nous vaudrions, etc.

Imper.	Vaux, valons, valez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je vaille, que tu vailles, qu'il vaille, que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils vaillent.
Imperf.	Que je valusse, etc., que nous valussions, etc.
Infin.	Valoir.
Part.	Valant, valu.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

The compounds of this verb are conjugated in the same manner, with the exception of **prévaloir** (=to prevail), whose *Subj. Pres.* is: *que je prévale*, etc., *que nous prévalions*, etc.

Voir (=to see).

Prim. Tenses.	Voir, voyant, vu, je vois, je vis.
Ind. Pres.	Je vois, tu vois, il voit, nous voyons, vous voyez, ils voient.
Imperf.	Je voyais, etc., nous voyions, etc.
Past Def.	Je vis, etc., nous vîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je verrai, etc., nous verrons,* etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je verrais, etc., nous verrions,* etc.
Imper.	Vois, voyons, voyez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je voie, etc., que nous voyions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je visse, etc., que nous vissions, etc.
Infin.	Voir.
Part.	Voyant, vu, vue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

N.B.—**Pourvoir** (=to provide), and **prévoir** (=to foresee), make in the *Fut.* and *Cond.*: *je pourvoirai, je pourvoirais*, and *je prévoirai, je prévoirais*. Besides, the *Past Def.* and *Imperf. Subj.* of **pourvoir** are *je pourvus, que je pourvusse.*

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Vouloir (=to will, to be willing).

Prim. Tenses.	Vouloir, voulant, voulu, je veux, je voulus.
Ind. Pres.	Je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, ils veulent.
Imperf.	Je voulais, etc. nous voulions, etc.
Past Def.	Je voulus, etc., nous voulûmes, etc.

* Only one *r* sounded, but the first prevents the *e* from being mute, the words being pronounced *vèrai*, etc.

Fut.	Je voudrai, etc., nous voudrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je voudrais, etc., nous voudrions, etc.
Imper.	Veuille, veuillons, veuillez. (The *Imper.* forms veux, voulons, voulez, are seldom used).
Subj. Pres.	Que je veuille, etc., que nous voulions, que vous vouliez, qu'ils veuillent.
Imperf.	Que je voulusse, etc., que nous voulussions, etc.
Infin.	Vouloir.
Part.	Voulant, voulu, voulue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

5. Fourth Conjugation: RE.

175. The irregular verbs in **re** may be subdivided into two classes, according to the formation of the past definite: 1. Verbs with the past definite in **is**: *craindre* (=to fear), *craign***is**; 2. Verbs with the past definite in **us**: *connaître* (=to know), *conn***us**.

176. The irregular verbs in **re** are the following:

Absoudre (=to absolve).

Prim. Tenses. Absoudre, absolvant, absous (*fem.* absoute), j'absous; no *Past Definite.*

See *résoudre.* *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Boire (=to drink).

Prim. Tenses. Boire, buvant, bu, je bois, je bus.

Ind. Pres.	Je bois, tu bois, il boit, nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent.
Imperf.	Je buvais, etc., nous buvions, etc.
Past Def.	Je bus, etc., nous bûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je boirai, etc., nous boirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je boirais, etc., nous boirions, etc.
Imper.	Bois, buvons, buvez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je boive, etc., que nous buvions, que vous buviez, qu'ils boivent.
Imperf.	Que je busse, etc., que nous bussions, etc.
Infin.	Boire.
Part.	Buvant, bu, bue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Braire (=to bray).

This verb, according to the *Académie*, is used only in the *Infinitive*, and in the third person of the *Present Indicative*, *Future*, and *Conditional*: braire, il brait, ils braient, il braira, ils brairont, il brairait, ils brairaient.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Braire, in the old language, had the general sense of *crier* (=to shout), and was applied to men as well as to animals; it is only at a comparatively recent period that the meaning was limited to the noise made by an ass.

Bruire (=to roar, rattle, resound).

This verb has only the following forms: bruire, il bruit, il bruyait, ils bruyaient. *Bruyant* is now rather an adjective than a present participle.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Clore (=to close).

Used only in the *Past Participle*, clos, close; the three persons singular of the *Ind. Pres.*, je clos, tu clos, il clôt; the *Fut.*, je clorai, tu cloras, etc.; the *Cond. Pres.*, je clorais, etc.; the *Imper.* singular, clos; *Subj. Pres.*, que je close; and all the compound tenses.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Conclure (=to conclude).

Prim. Tenses.	Conclure, concluant, conclu, je conclus, je conclus.
Ind. Pres.	Je conclus, tu conclus, il conclut, nous concluons, vous concluez, ils concluent.
Imperf.	Je concluais, etc., nous concluions, etc.
Past Def.	Je conclus, etc., nous conclûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je conclurai, etc., nous conclurons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je conclurais, etc., nous conclurions, etc.
Imper.	Conclus, concluons, concluez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je conclue, etc., que nous concluions, que vous concluiez, qu'ils concluent.
Imperf.	Que je conclusse, etc., que nous conclussions, etc.
Infin.	Conclure.
Part.	Concluant, conclu, conclue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Conduire (=to conduct).

Prim. Tenses. Conduire, conduisant, conduit, je conduis, je conduisis.

See *nuire*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir**.

Confire (=to pickle, to preserve).

Prim. Tenses. Confire, confisant, confit, je confis, je confis.

Ind. Pres.	Je confis, tu confis, il confit, nous confisons, vous confisez, ils confisent.
Imperf.	Je confisais, etc., nous confisions, etc.
Past Def.	Je confis, etc., nous confîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je confirai, etc., nous confirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je confirais, etc., nous confirions, etc.
Imper.	Confis, confisons, confisez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je confise, etc., que nous confisions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je confisse, etc., que nous confissions, etc.
Infin.	Confire.
Part.	Confisant, confit, confite.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

Connaître (=to know).

Prim. Tenses. Connaître, connaissant, connu, je connais, je connus.

Ind. Pres.	Je connais, tu connais, il connaît, nous connaissons, vous connaissez, ils connaissent.
Imperf.	Je connaissais, etc., nous connaissions, etc.
Past Def.	Je connus, etc., nous connûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je connaîtrai, etc., nous connaîtrons, etc.
Cond. Perf.	Je connaîtrais, etc., nous connaîtrions, etc.
Imper.	Connais, connaissons, connaissez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je connaisse, etc., que nous connaissions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je connusse, etc., que nous connussions, etc.
Infin.	Connaître.
Part.	Connaissant, connu, connue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

N.B.—Whenever in this and similar verbs the vowel **i** is followed by **t**, it takes the circumflex accent: *connaît*, *connaîtrai*, etc.

Coudre (=to sew).

Prim. Tenses.	Coudre, cousant, cousu, je couds, je cousis.
Ind. Pres.	Je couds, tu couds, il coud, nous cousons, vous cousez, ils cousent.
Imperf.	Je cousais, etc., nous cousions, etc.
Past Def.	Je cousis, etc., nous cousîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je coudrai, etc., nous coudrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je coudrais, etc., nous coudrions, etc.
Imper.	Couds, cousons, cousez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je couse, etc., que nous cousions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je cousisse, etc., que nous cousissions, etc.
Infin.	Coudre.
Part.	Cousant, cousu, cousue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Craindre (=to fear).

Prim. Tenses.	Craindre, craignant, craint, je crains, je craignis.
Ind. Pres.	Je crains, tu crains, il craint, nous craignons, vous craignez, ils craignent.
Imperf.	Je craignais, etc., nous craignions, etc.
Past Def.	Je craignis, etc., nous craignîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je craindrai, etc., nous craindrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je craindrais, etc., nous craindrions, etc.
Imper.	Crains, craignons, craignez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je craigne, etc., que nous craignions, que vous craigniez, qu'ils craignent.
Imperf.	Que je craignisse. etc., que nous craignissions, etc.
Infin.	Craindre.
Part.	Craignant, craint, crainte.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Croire (=to believe).

Prim. Tenses.	Croire, croyant, cru, je crois, je crus.
Ind. Pres.	Je crois, tu crois, il croit, nous croyons, vous croyez, ils croient.
Imperf.	Je croyais, etc., nous croyions, etc.
Past Def.	Je crus, etc., nous crûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je croirai, etc., nous croirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je croirais, etc., nous croirions, etc.
Imper.	Crois, croyons. croyez.

Subj. Pres.	Que je croie, etc., que nous croyions, que vous croyiez, qu'ils croient.
Imperf.	Que je crusse, etc., que nous crussions, etc.
Infin.	Croire.
Part.	Croyant, cru, crue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Croître (=to grow).

Prim. Tenses.	Croître, croissant, crû, je croîs, je crûs.
Ind. Pres.	Je croîs, tu croîs, il croît, nous croissons, vous croissez, ils croissent.
Imperf.	Je croissais, etc., nous croissions, etc.
Past Def.	Je crûs, etc., nous crûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je croîtrai, etc., nous croîtrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je croîtrais, etc., nous croîtrions, etc.
Imper.	Croîs, croissons, croissez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je croisse, etc., que nous croissions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je crusse, etc., que nous crussions, etc.
Infin.	Croître.
Part.	Croissant, crû, crue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

The accent is used before **t** as in *connaître*; also to distinguish some forms from similar ones in *croire*.

Dire (=to say).

Prim. Tenses.	Dire, disant, dit, je dis, je dis.
Ind. Pres.	Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, vous dites, ils disent.
Imperf.	Je disais, etc., nous disions, etc.
Past Def.	Je dis, etc., nous dîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je dirai, etc., nous dirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je dirais, etc., nous dirions, etc.
Imper.	Dis, disons, dites.
Subj. Pres.	Que je dise, etc., que nous disions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je disse, etc., que nous dissions, etc.
Infin.	Dire.
Part.	Disant, dit, dite.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

N.B.—All the compounds of *dire* have *dis***ez** in the second person plural of the *Pres. Indic.*, with the exception of *re***dire** (=to repeat), and **maudire** (=to curse), which have *redi***tes**, *maudis***sez.**

Éclore (=to be hatched, to open, to dawn).—Limited to the following forms:

Ind. Pres.	Il éclôt, ils éclosent.
Fut.	Il éclora, ils écloront.
Cond. Pres.	Il éclorait, ils écloraient.
Subj. Pres.	Qu'il éclose, qu'ils éclosent.
Infin.	Éclore.
Part. Past.	Éclos, éclose.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **être**.

Écrire (=to write).

Prim. Tenses.	Écrire, écrivant, écrit, j'écris, j'écrivis.
Ind. Pres.	J'écris, tu écris, il écrit, nous écrivons, vous écrivez, ils écrivent.
Imperf.	J'écrivais, etc., nous écrivions, etc.
Past Def.	J'écrivis, etc., nous écrivîmes, etc.
Fut.	J'écrirai, etc., nous écrirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	J'écrirais, etc., nous écririons, etc.
Imper.	Écris, écrivons, écrivez.
Subj. Pres.	Que j'écrive, etc., que nous écrivions, etc.
Imperf.	Que j'écrivisse, etc., que nous écrivissions, etc.
Infin.	Écrire.
Part.	Écrivant, écrit, écrite.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

Faire (=to make *or* to do).

Prim. Tenses.	Faire, faisant, fait, je fais, je fis.
Ind. Pres.	Je fais, tu fais, il fait, nous faisons, vous faites, ils font.
Imperf.	Je faisais, etc., nous faisions, etc.
Past Def.	Je fis, etc., nous fîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je ferai, etc., nous ferons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je ferais, etc., nous ferions, etc.
Imper.	Fais, faisons, faites.
Subj. Pres.	Que je fasse, etc., que nous fassions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je fisse, etc., que nous fissions, etc.
Infin.	Faire.
Part.	Faisant, fait, faite.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir**.

Frire (=to fry).

This verb, besides the *Infin.* *Frire*, has also the three persons singular of the *Ind. Pres.*, je fris, tu fris, il frit;

the *Fut.*, je frirai, etc.; the *Cond. Pres.*, je frirais, etc.; the second person singular of the *Imper.*, fris; the *Part. Past*, frit, frite.

The tenses of this verb are more generally made up by placing the verb *faire* before the infinitive *frire*: *nous* faisons frire, *vous* faites frire. (See *bouillir*.)

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Joindre (=to join).

Prim. Tenses. Joindre, joignant, joint, je joins, je joignis.

See *craindre*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Lire (=to read).

Prim. Tenses. Lire, lisant, lu, je lis, je lus.

Ind. Pres.	Je lis, tu lis, il lit, nous lisons, vous lisez, ils lisent.
Imperf.	Je lisais, etc., nous lisions, etc.
Past Def.	Je lus, etc., nous lûmes, etc
Fut.	Je lirai, etc., nous lirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je lirais, etc., nous lirions, etc.
Imper.	Lis, lisons, lisez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je lise, etc., que nous lisions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je lusse, etc., que nous lussions, etc.
Infin.	Lire.
Part.	Lisant, lu, lue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Luire (=to shine).

Prim. Tenses. Luire, luisant, lui, je luis, je luisis.

Ind. Pres.	Je luis, tu luis, il luit, nous luisons, vous luisez, ils luisent.
Imperf.	Je luisais, etc., nous luisions, etc.
Past Def.	Je luisis, etc., nous luisîmes, etc.*
Fut.	Je luirai, etc., nous luirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je luirais, etc., nous luirions, etc.
Imper.	Luis, luisons, luisez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je luise, etc., que nous luisions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je luisisse, etc., que nous luisissions, etc.
Infin.	Luire.
Part.	Luisant, lui.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

* This tense, which the *Académie* does not give, is very seldom used. It is to be found in Bossuet.

Mettre (=to place, to put).

Prim. Tenses.	Mettre, mettant, mis, je mets, je mis.
Ind. Pres.	Je mets, tu mets, il met, nous mettons, vous mettez, ils mettent.
Imperf.	Je mettais, etc., nous mettions, etc.
Past Def.	Je mis, etc., nous mîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je mettrai, etc., nous mettrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je mettrais, etc., nous mettrions, etc.
Imper.	Mets, mettons, mettez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je mette, etc., que nous mettions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je misse, etc., que nous missions, etc.
Infin.	Mettre.
Part.	Mettant, mis, mise.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Moudre (=to grind).

Prim. Tenses.	Moudre, moulant, moulu, je mouds, je moulus.
Ind. Pres.	Je mouds, tu mouds, il moud, nous moulons, vous moulez, ils moulent.
Imperf.	Je moulais, etc., nous moulions, etc.
Past Def.	Je moulus, etc., nous moulûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je moudrai, etc., nous moudrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je moudrais, etc., nous moudrions, etc.
Imper.	Mouds, moulons, moulez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je moule, etc., que nous moulions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je moulusse, etc., que nous moulussions, etc.
Infin.	Moudre.
Part.	Moulant, moulu, moulue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Naître (=to be born).

Prim. Tenses.	Naître, naissant, né, je nais, je naquis.
Ind. Pres.	Je nais, tu nais, il naît, nous naissons, vous naissez, ils naissent.
Imperf.	Je naissais, etc., nous naissions, etc.
Past Def.	Je naquis, etc., nous naquîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je naîtrai, etc., nous naîtrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je naîtrais, etc., nous naîtrions, etc.

Imper.	Nais, naissons, naissez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je naisse, etc., que nous naissions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je naquisse, etc., que nous naquissions, etc.
Infin.	Naître.
Part.	Naissant, né, née.

See *connaître.* *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **être.**

Nuire (=to injure, to wrong, to do harm).

Prim. Tenses.	Nuire, nuisant, nui, je nuis, je nuisis.
Ind. Pres.	Je nuis, tu nuis, il nuit, nous nuisons, vous nuisez, ils nuisent.
Imperf.	Je nuisais, etc., nous nuisions, etc.
Past Def.	Je nuisis, etc., nous nuisîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je nuirai, etc., nous nuirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je nuirais, etc., nous nuirions, etc.
Imper.	Nuis, nuisons, nuisez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je nuise, etc., que nous nuisions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je nuisisse, etc., que nous nuisissions, etc.
Infin.	Nuire.
Part.	Nuisant, nui.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Oindre (=to anoint).

Prim. Tenses.	Oindre, oignant, oint, j'oins, j'oignis.
Ind. Pres.	J'oins, etc., nous oignons, etc.
Imperf.	J'oignais, etc., nous oignions, etc.
Past Def.	J'oignis, etc., nous oignîmes, etc.
Fut.	J'oindrai, etc., nous oindrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	J'oindrais, etc., nous oindrions, etc.
Imper.	Oins, oignons, oignez.
Subj. Pres.	Que j'oigne, etc., que nous oignions, etc.
Imperf.	Que j'oignisse, etc., que nous oignissions, etc.
Infin.	Oindre.
Part.	Oignant, oint, ointe.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

This verb is seldom used, except in the *Pres. Infin.*, the *Participles*, and the *Future.*

Paître (=to graze).

Prim. Tenses.	Paître, paissant, ——, je pais, ——.
Ind. Pres.	je pais, tu pais, il paît, nous paissons, vous paissez, ils paissent.
Imperf.	Je paissais, etc., nous paissions, etc.
Fut.	Je paîtrai, etc., nous paîtrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je paîtrais, etc., nous paîtrions, etc.
Imper.	Pais, paissons, paissez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je paisse, etc., que nous paissions, etc.
Infin.	Paître.
Part.	Paissant.

This verb has neither *Past Def.* nor *Imperf. Subjunctive*, and its *Past Participle* is only used as a term of falconry: *un faucon qui a* **pu** (=a hawk which has been fed).

Repaître is conjugated like *paître*; but it has a *Past Def.*: je repus; an *Imperfect Subjunctive*: que je repusse; and a *Past Participle*: repu.

Paraître (=to appear).

Prim. Tenses. Paraître, paraissant, paru, je parais, je parus.

See *connaître.* *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Peindre (=to paint).

Prim. Tenses. Peindre, peignant, peint, je peins, je peignis.

See *craindre.* *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Plaire (=to please).

Prim. Tenses.	Plaire, plaisant, plu, je plais, je plus.
Ind. Pres.	Je plais, tu plais, il plaît, nous plaisons, vous plaisez, ils plaisent.
Imperf.	Je plaisais, etc., nous plaisions, etc.
Past Def.	Je plus, etc., nous plûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je plairai, etc., nous plairons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je plairais, etc., nous plairions, etc.
Imper.	Plais, plaisons, plaisez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je plaise, etc., que nous plaisions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je plusse, etc., que nous plussions, etc.
Infin.	Plaire.
Part.	Plaisant, plu.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Prendre (=to take).

Prim. Tenses.	Prendre, prenant, pris, je prends, je pris.
Ind. Pres.	Je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous prenons, vous prenez, ils prennent.
Imperf.	Je prenais, etc., nous prenions, etc.
Past Def.	Je pris, etc., nous prîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je prendrai, etc., nous prendrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je prendrais, etc., nous prendrions, etc.
Imper.	Prends, prenons, prenez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je prenne, etc., que nous prenions, que vous preniez, qu'ils prennent.
Imperf.	Que je prisse, etc., que nous prissions, etc.
Infin.	Prendre.
Part.	Prenant, pris, prise.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Résoudre (=to resolve).

Prim. Tenses.	Résoudre, résolvant, résolu, je résous, je résolus.
Ind. Pres.	Je résous, tu résous, il résout, nous résolvons, vous résolvez, ils résolvent.
Imperf.	Je résolvais, etc., nous résolvions, etc.
Past Def.	Je résolus, etc., nous résolûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je résoudrai, etc., nous résoudrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je résoudrais, etc., nous résoudrions, etc.
Imper.	Résous, résolvons, résolvez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je résolve, etc., que nous résolvions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je résolusse, etc., que nous résolussions, etc.
Infin.	Résoudre.
Part.	Résolvant, résolu, résolue: *or* résous; we still say, *brouillard* **résous** *en pluie* (=a fog resolved into rain).

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Rire (=to laugh).

Prim. Tenses.	Rire, riant, ri, je ris, je ris.
Ind. Pres.	Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rions, vous riez, ils rient.
Imperf.	Je riais, etc., nous riions, etc.
Past Def.	Je ris, etc., nous rîmes, etc.

Fut.	Je rirai, etc., nous rirons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je rirais, etc., nous ririons, etc.
Imper.	Ris, rions, riez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je rie, que tu ries, qu'il rie, que nous riions, que vous riiez, qu'ils rient.
Imperf.	Que je risse, etc., que nous rissions, etc.
Infin.	Rire.
Part.	Riant, ri.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Suivre (=to follow).

Prim. Tenses.	Suivre, suivant, suivi, je suis, je suivis.
Ind. Pres.	Je suis, tu suis, il suit, nous suivons, vous suivez, ils suivent.
Imperf.	Je suivais, etc., nous suivions, etc.
Past Def.	Je suivis, etc., nous suivîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je suivrai, etc., nous suivrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je suivrais, nous suivrions, etc.
Imper.	Suis, suivons, suivez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je suive, etc., que nous suivions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je suivisse, etc., que nous suivissions, etc.
Infin.	Suivre.
Part.	Suivant, suivi, suivie.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Taire (=to keep silent, to conceal).

Prim. Tenses. Taire, taisant, tû, je tais, je tus.

See *plaire*. *Conjugated with the auxiliary* **avoir.**

Se taire (=to hold one's tongue), being a reflexive verb, is conjugated with *être* in its compound tenses.

Traire (=to milk).

Prim. Tenses.	Traire, trayant, trait, je trais, no *Past Def.*
Ind. Pres.	Je trais, tu trais, il trait, nous trayons, vous trayez, ils traient.*
Imperf.	Je trayais, etc., nous trayions, etc.

* Always i before e mute in this verb. *See* § 168.

Fut.	Je trairai, etc., nous trairons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je trairais, etc., nous trairions, etc.
Imper.	Trais, trayons, trayez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je traie,* etc., que nous trayions, que vous trayiez, qu'ils traient.*
Infin.	Traire.
Part.	Trayant, trait, traite.

This verb has neither *Past Def.* nor *Imperf. Subj.*

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Vaincre (=to conquer).

Prim. Tenses.	Vaincre, vainquant, vaincu, je vaincs, je vainquis.
Ind. Pres.	Je vaincs, tu vaincs, il vainc, nous vainquons, vous vainquez, ils vainquent.
Imperf.	Je vainquais, etc., nous vainquions, etc.
Past Def.	Je vainquis, etc., nous vainquîmes, etc.
Fut.	Je vaincrai, etc., nous vaincrons, etc.
Cond. Pres.	Je vaincrais, etc., nous vaincrions, etc.
Imper.	Vaincs, vainquons, vainquez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je vainque, etc., que nous vainquions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je vainquisse, etc., que nous vainquissions, etc.
Infin.	Vaincre.
Part.	Vainquant, vaincu, vaincue.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

Vivre (=to live).

Prim. Tenses.	Vivre, vivant, vécu, je vis, je vécus.
Ind. Pres.	Je vis, tu vis, il vit, nous vivons, vous vivez, ile vivent.
Imperf.	Je vivais, etc., nous vivions, etc.
Past Def.	Je vécus, etc., nous vécûmes, etc.
Fut.	Je vivrai, etc., nous vivrons, etc
Cond. Pres.	Je vivrais, etc., nous vivrions, etc.
Imper.	Vis, vivons, vivez.
Subj. Pres.	Que je vive, etc., que nous vivions, etc.
Imperf.	Que je vécusse, etc., que nous vécussions, etc.
Infin.	Vivre.
Part.	Vivant, vécu.

Conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

* Always **i** before **e** mute in this verb. *See* § 168.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the difference between an irregular and a defective verb?
2. Give the future of *mener*, and the indicative present of *appeler, essuyer.*
3. Give the present participle of *effacer*, and the past participle of *percer.*
4. Write the imperfect of *venger*, the past participle of *bénir*, and the future of *aller* and *envoyer.*
5. Write the following verbs in the subjunctive present:—*acquérir, bouillir, courir, cueillir.*
6. Write the following verbs in the future:—*mourir, saillir, tenir, venir, braire.*
7. Write the following verbs in the indicative present:—*dormir, faillir, gésir.*
8. Write the following verbs in the conditional:—*asseoir, seoir, échoir, falloir, mouvoir, pleuvoir, pouvoir, savoir, valoir, voir, vouloir.*
9. Write the following verbs in the indicative present and past definite:—*coudre, dire, écrire, faire, boire, naître, prendre, résoudre, suivre, vaincre.*

Exercise 34.

Première conjugaison.

1. Je vais à la poste. 2. Vas-tu lire ce livre? 3. Ce cheval ne va pas vite. 4. Ne vont-ils pas tous les jours à leur bureau? 5. J'irai dimanche matin à l'église. 6. N'iriez-vous pas au concert? 7. Ne croyez pas que j'aille à Paris l'été prochain. 8. Je ne voudrais pas qu'il allât se compromettre. 9. Quand m'enverrez-vous mon argent? 10. Nous vous enverrions ces livres si nous les avions. 11. Je me lève tous les matins à six heures. 12. J'achèterais cette maison de campagne. 13. Il m'appellera quand il sera prêt. 14. Traçons un tableau complet de la situation. 15. En rangeant ma bibliothèque, j'ai trouvé votre lettre.

[1] morceau (*m.*). [2] penser. [3] se lever. [4] de bonne heure. [5] tous les matins. [6] bureau (*m.*). [7] menacer. [8] revue (*f.*). [9] achever. [10] cacheter.

1. I shall send you some books. 2. Would you go to the concert? 3. Let us eat a piece[1] of bread. 4. I do not think[2] that he gets up[3] early[4]. 5. This child goes to (the) school every morning[5]. 6. Will you go to your office[6]? 7. Let us threaten[7] him. 8. He will call you to-morrow. 9. We went yesterday to see a review[8]. 10. You would send me too little (of) money. 11. That they might protect that bad man. 12. Finish[9] this book. 13. That he may seal[10] the letter.

Seconde conjugaison.

1. Béni soit-il pour toute sa générosité. 2. J'ai mangé du pain bénit. 3. Les sciences et les arts florissaient sous le règne de Louis XIV. 4. Nous haïssons les méchants, mais il hait les hommes vertueux. 5. Il acquiert de jour en jour plus de réputation. 6. Nous accourûmes à sa voix. 7. Ci-gît le meilleur des rois. 8. Je me suis enquis de votre ami partout. 9. Il fuirait les flatteurs. 10. Cueillerai-je ces jolies fleurs? 11. Croyez-vous qu'il m'en offrît, si j'allais le voir? 12. Je me meurs. 13. Les forces lui défaillent. 14. Il mourut de chagrin. 15. J'ai très bien dormi. 16. Je requiers votre secours. 17. Faites bouillir un peu d'eau. 18. Je pars ce soir pour la France. 19. Vous ressentiriez les effets de sa colère. 20. Il ne concourra pas pour ce prix. 21. Avez-vous ouï dire qu'il mente jamais? 22. Il viendra si vous le souffrez.

[1] consentir. [2] mariage (*m.*). [3] pressentir. [4] malheur (*m.*). [5] malade. [6] dormir. [7] mourir. [8] l'année dernière. [9] assaillir. [10] retranchement (*m.*). [11] se vêtir. [12] tressaillir. [13] de. [14] requérir. [15] rouvrir. [16] malle (*f.*). [17] entr'ouvrir. [18] obtenir. [19] disconvenir de. [20] dit. [21] devenir. [22] haïr. [23] gésir. [24] pays (*m.*). [25] bénir. [26] prêtre. [27] pendant.

1. I consent[1] to the marriage[2] of my son. 2. I apprehend[3] some misfortunes[4]. 3. The patient[5] slept[6] very well yesterday. 4. He died[7] last year[8]. 5. Shall we not assault[9] the enemy to-morrow in his intrenchments[10]? 6. That you might clothe yourself[11] a little better. 7. That she might start[12] with[13] fear. 8. He would request[14] a favour from you. 9. I shall open again[15] that trunk[16]. 10. They would half open[17] the window. 11. I shall obtain[18] the consent of my parents. 12. I disowned[19] what he said[20]. 13. Would you not become[21] learned if you worked a little more? 14. We hate[22] (the) hypocrites. 15. Here lies[23] a man who has served his country[24] with zeal. 16. This water has been consecrated[25] by the priest[26]. 17. (The) commerce flourished (*imperfect*) in our country during[27] his reign.

Troisième conjugaison.

1. Tu ne vaux pas mieux que ton frère. 2. C'est un ressort très ingénieux qui meut la machine. 3. Il faut pratiquer la vertu si l'on veut être heureux. 4. Nous pouvons vous être utiles. 5. Vous ne savez pas votre leçon. 6. Il pleuvait hier. 7. Vous prévaliez sur nous. 8. Nous prévîmes toutes les conséquences de cette affaire. 9. Ils s'assirent sur le pont du navire. 10. Vous pourvûtes à la sûreté de la ville. 11. Cette robe vous sied à merveille. 12. Vous verrez mieux d'ici. 13. Cette réponse équivaudrait à un refus. 14. Je ne pense pas

qu'il faille lui demander pardon. 15. Qu'ils sachent que je ne les oublie pas. 16. Si je pouvais lui parler, j'obtiendrais ce que je demande. 17. Cette lettre de change écherra lundi. 18. Je crains qu'il ne pleuve. 19. Elle émut le cœur de cet homme insensible.

[1] valoir. [2] guinée. [3] seoir. [4] vouloir. [5] émouvoir. [6] il faut. [7] savoir. [8] chemin (*m.*). [9] grand. [10] prévoir. [11] pourvoir. [12] à. [13] besoin (*m.*). [14] chaise (*f.*). [15] équivaloir. [16] insulte (*f.*). [17] prévaloir. [18] lettre de change. [19] échoir. [20] falloir. [21] proposition (*f.*).

1. This horse is worth[1] two hundred guineas[2]. 2. Has he moved the spring of the machine? 3. We shall see if this dress becomes[3] (to) her. 4. If you wish[4] to move[5] the heart of that unfeeling man, you must[6] be useful to him. 5. It was raining yesterday. 6. You will not know[7] your way[8] in this large[9] town. 7. Did you foresee[10] the consequences of the battle? 8. I shall provide[11] for[12] your wants[13]. 9. Sit down, gentlemen, here are some chairs[14]. 10. Do you think that his answer is equivalent[15] to an insult[16]? 11. I shall prevail[17] upon him. 12. When will your bill[18] fall due[19]? 13. We did not suppose that it was necessary[20] to accept his proposal[21]. 14. These colours will never become you. 15. He knows his lesson wonderfully well. 16. Do you see this magnificent landscape?

Quatrième conjugaison.

1. Je buvais un verre d'eau. 2. Il écrivit à ses enfants. 3. Croyez-vous qu'il comprenne votre remarque? 4. Je ferai tout mon possible pour vous servir. 5. S'il vous connaissait mieux, il vous croirait. 6. Permettez-moi de vous accompagner chez vous. 7. Je désirerais que vous lussiez ce bel ouvrage. 8. Ces enfants souriaient. 9. Ils se plurent beaucoup dans votre société. 10. Je veux qu'il prenne un parti énergique. 11. Je le suivrais partout. 12. Nous apprendrions ces règles avec facilité. 13. Il vécut heureux et mourut à un âge avancé. 14. Ils trayaient leurs vaches. 15. Il me nuisit dans toutes les occasions. 16. Pourquoi n'absoudrions-nous pas ce pauvre homme? 17. Il défit les ennemis à deux reprises différentes. 18. Ils abattirent le mur. 19. Ne déplurent-ils pas à leur maître? 20. Poursuis ton chemin. 21. Faites votre devoir. 22. Ils se repurent de chimères. 23. Cet arbre croîtrait rapidement s'il était arrosé. 24. Il éteignit les chandelles. 25. Ne plaignaient-ils pas vos malheurs? 26. Ils disparurent bientôt. 27. Enjoignez-lui de terminer cette affaire.

[1] boire. [2] écrire. [3] croire. [4] comprendre. [5] suivre. [6] à travers. [7] tous les. [8] abattre. [9] absoudre. [10] disparaître. [11] croître. [12] se plaindre.

[13]se repaître de. [14]chimère (*f.*). [15]vivre. [16]défaire. [17]aucun. [18]atteindre. [19]balle (*f.*). [20]traire. [21]vache. [22]sourire. [23]éteindre. [24]lampe (*f.*) [25]joindre. [26]réduire. [27]reconduire. [28]feindre. [29]enfreindre. [30]naître. [31]sujet. [32]se dédire de. [33]coudre. [34]traduire. [35]se résoudre à. [36]plaindre. [37]émoudre. [38]légume (*m.*). [39]confire. [40]vinaigre.

1. I never drink[1] wine. 2. Have you written[2] to your father? 3. I thought[3] that you understood[4] me. 4. I shall follow[5] him through[6] every[7] obstacle. 5. They were felling[8] a tree. 6. I absolve[9] you. 7. When did he disappear[10]? 8. These trees have grown[11] a great deal lately. 9. I shall complain[12] of you. 10. Do not feed on[13] idle dreams[14]. 11. This stupid poem will never live[15]. 12. I shall defeat[16] the enemy without any[17] difficulty. 13. He has been struck[18] by a bullet[19]. 14. I do not believe you. 15. Have you milked[20] the cows[21]? 16. He is always smiling[22]. 17. Put out[23] the lamp[24]. 18. If you join[25] your efforts, you will succeed. 19. Would he drive[26] you to (the) despair? 20. I shall take you back[27] in my carriage. 21. He pretended[28] to be ill. 22. Will they not infringe[29] the laws? 23. We are born[30] liable[31] to many (of) infirmities. 24. We would withdraw[32] our accusation. 25. They will sew[33] on this button. 26. She translated[34] her letter. 27. Let them make up their minds[35] to suffer much. 28. That they may pity[36] his fall. 29. I have ground[37] your knives. 30. These vegetables[38] are pickled[39] in (some) vinegar[40].

SECTION X.

FORMATION OF THE VERBS.

177. New French verbs are formed by placing before them: 1. a noun: **main***tenir* (=to maintain [properly *tenir avec la main*=to hold with the hand]);—2. an adjective employed adverbially or an adverb: **mal***traiter*, *traiter* **mal** (=to ill-use);—3. a prefix: **dé***faire*, *dé* and *faire* (=to undo); **sur***monter*, *sur* and *monter* (=to surmount).

The most important of the prefixes are the following: 1. **contre** (=against), *dire*, **contre***dire* (=to say, to contradict); *signer*, **contre***signer* (=to sign, to countersign); 2. **entre** (=between), *voir*, **entre***voir* (to see, to have a glimpse of); *ouvrir*, **entr'***ouvrir* (=to open, to half-open); *aider*, *s'***entr'***aider* (=to help, to help one another; *dévorer*, *s'***entre-***dévorer* (=to devour, to devour

one another); 3. **bien** (=well), *faire*, **bien***faire* (=to do, to do good); 4. **mal** (=ill), *traiter*, **mal***traiter* (=to treat, to ill-treat); *mener*, **mal***mener* (=to lead, to treat roughly); 5. **més**, Eng. *mis*, prefix of depreciation; *allier*, **més***allier* (=to match, to mis-match); *user*, **més***user* (=to use, to misuse); 6. **re**, prefix of return and repetition, *changer*, **re***changer* (=to change, to change over again): *venir*, **re***venir* (=to come, to come again); *blanchir*, **re***blanchir* (=to whiten, to whiten over again); 7. **sur** (=above, over), *mener*, **sur***mener* (=to drive, to overdrive); *chauffer*, **sur***chauffer* (=to heat, to overheat); this prefix implies excess.

New verbs are moreover formed in French by adding to substantives the termination **er** of the first conjugation. Thus *barricade* (=a barricade), *fourrage* (=forage), *chemin* (=path, road), *crayon* (=pencil), *frisson* (=shudder), give *barricader* (=to barricade), *fourrager* (=to forage), *cheminer* (=to journey), *crayonner* (=to sketch), *frissonner* (=to shudder). But the most recent words are generally formed with the termination **iser**: *germani***iser** (=to make German), *napoléoni***ser**, *bonapart***iser** (=to win over to the cause of Napoleon or Bonaparte).

178. The French language makes up new verbs from *adjectives*, sometimes by the addition of the termination **ir**: *jaune* (=yellow), *bleu* (=blue), *gros* (=big), give *jaunir*, *bleuir*, *grossir* (=to become yellow, blue, big); sometimes by adding the termination **ir** and prefixing **a**: *grand* (=great), **a***grand***ir** (=to enlarge), *mince* (=thin), **a***minc***ir** (=to make thin), *maigre* (=lean), **a***maigr***ir** (=to become *or* make lean), etc.

179. The French language creates new verbs with the help of *verbs* already existing, by introducing the three diminutive suffixes: **ot**, **on**, **asse**, which give to the words a depreciative sense: *cligner* (=to wink), *cligno***ter** (=to wink repeatedly); *trembler* (=to tremble), *tremblo***ter** (=to shiver); *chanter* (=to sing), *chanto***nner** (=to hum); *griffer* (=to scratch), *griffo***nner** (=to scribble); *rêver* (=to dream), *rêva***sser** (=to muse).

SECTION XI.

RULES FOR THE AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT.

180. Every verb must be in the same number and person as its subject: *Je* **lis** (=I read), *vous* **chantez** (=you sing).

Lis is in the first person singular, because its subject *je* is in the first person singular; *chantez* is in the second person plural, because its subject *vous* is in the second person plural.

181. When a verb has two subjects in the singular, it is put in the plural: *Paul et Marie* **lisent** (=Paul and Mary read).

182. When the subjects are of different persons, the verb is put in the first, if there is a pronoun of the first person in the sentence, otherwise it is put in the second: *vous, lui et moi, nous* **sommes** *heureux* (=you, he, and I, we are happy); *vous et lui, vous* **êtes** *sages* (=you and he are wise). The pronoun *nous* or *vous* is generally expressed before the verb.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. How are new verbs formed in French?
2. Give a list of the prefixes used in connection with the verb.
3. Write a list of suffixes added to the substantive;—to the adjective.
4. Name a few diminutive verbs.
5. How does the verb agree with its subject?
6. In what number is the verb put when there are two subjects?
7. In what person is the verb put when the subjects are of different persons?

EXERCISE 35.

1. Form new verbs from the following ones by placing before them: (1) a noun (*main*); (2) an adverb (*mal*); (3) a prefix (a. *contre*; b. *entre*; c. *re*; d. *sur*): 1. *tenir*; 2. *mener, traiter, verser*; 3. (a) *dire, faire, carrer*; (b) *prendre, larder, mettre*; (c) *lancer, trancher, vêtir, voir, prendre*; (d) *veiller, seoir, nager, passer, prendre.*

2. Form new words of the first conjugation from the following substantives: *ménage, chant, apostrophe, cri.*

3. Form new verbs of the second conjugation (*a*) from the following adjectives: *bleu, jaune, gros, rouge, sale, verd* (old spelling of *vert*); (*b*) from the following adjectives, together with the prefix *a*: *maigre, mince, faible, fade, doux, brute.*

4. Form new verbs from the following ones by placing between the stem and the ending one of the suffixes: (a) *ot*, (b) *on*, (c) *asse*; (a) *cligner, taper*; (b) *chanter, griffer*; (c) *rêver.*

5. Give in every case the English meaning of the original and of the new verb, and write out the verbs in the following tenses:—

1. Subjunctive present, conditional past, past definite;
2. Indicative present, imperfect subjunctive, conditional present;
3. Future anterior, imperative, imperfect indicative;
4. Pluperfect subjunctive, past anterior, pluperfect indicative.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

183. The participle is a word which *participates* at once in the nature of the verb, because it marks a tense: **lisant** (=reading), **ayant** *lu* (=having read); and in that of the adjective, because it can serve to qualify a noun: *un homme* **charmant** (=a charming man), *des livres imprimés* (=printed books).

Participe comes from the Latin accusative *participem* (=that which takes a part, which participates).

184. There are two kinds of participles, the *present participle* and the *past participle.*

When the present participle marks an action, it is always invariable: *des enfants* **aimant** *leur mère et lui* **obéissant** *avec empressement* (=children loving their mother and obeying her with eagerness).

185. But when it expresses some quality of a person or thing it is an *adjective* and agrees with the noun: *ces enfants sont* **aimants** *et* **obéissants** (=these children are affectionate and obedient), *des eaux* **courantes** (=running waters).

186. When the *past participle* is used without an auxiliary it is an adjective and agrees with its noun:

une maison meublée (= a furnished house)
des champs bien cultivés (= well-cultivated fields).

When used with **être** it agrees with the subject (see §§ 151, 154):

elles étaient tombées (= they had fallen)
les lettres furent écrites (= the letters were written).

When used with **avoir** it can only agree with *its* preceding direct object:

les maisons **que** *j'ai vues* (= the houses I have seen).

For the past participle of reflexive verbs see § 159.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is a *participle*? Explain the meaning of the word.
2. How many kinds of participles are there?
3. When is the present participle invariable?
4. How can the present participle be distinguished from the adjective?
5. State the rule of agreement for the present participle used as an adjective.
6. Give the rules of agreement for the past participle?

EXERCISE 36.

1. Un père obligeant. 2. Une demoiselle obligeante. 3. Cette femme est obligeante, prévenant tout le monde. 4. Des rumeurs alarmant la ville entière. 5. La plainte de ce pauvre esclave est touchante. 6. Une porte battante. 7. Des jeunes gens prévenants. 8. Une attitude suppliante. 9. Un ouvrage terminé. 10. Des fleurs arrachées de leur tige. 11. Des fruits cueillis.

[1] bruit (*m.*). [2] alarmer. [3] obliger. [4] offre (*f.*). [5] en. [6] mériter. [7] flétrir. [8] chaleur (*f.*). [9] composer. [10] vivre. [11] obéir. [12] billet (*m.*). [13] supplier. [14] offensant.

1. These rumours[1] are alarming[2]. 2. An obliging[3] offer[4]. 3. By[5] obliging your friends, you will deserve[6] their friendship. 4. The flowers have been withered[7] by the heat[8]. 5. (The) society is composed[9] of men living[10] under the same laws. 6. Pupils obeying[11] (to) their master. 7. A finished house. 8. My two notes[12] are written. 9. A mother loving her children. 10. Slaves entreating[13] the judge. 11. Offensive words[14].

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE ADVERB.

187. The **adverb** is a word which serves to modify the sense of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb: *Le cheval court* **vite** (=the horse runs fast), *cette rose est* **très** *belle* (=this rose is very beautiful), *cet enfant marche* **très** *lentement* (=that child walks very slowly).

Adverb comes from the Latin *adverbium*, which means *near the verb*, because that word is usually placed near the *verb*.

188. There are in French eight kinds of adverbs: the adverbs of *place*, of *time*, of *manner*, of *quantity*, of *interrogation*, of *affirmation*, of *negation*, and of *doubt*.

189. The principal **adverbs of place** are: *ici* (=here), *là* (=there), *y* (here *or* there), *où* (=where), *en* (=in), *loin* (=far), *ailleurs* (=elsewhere), *deçà* (=on this side), *delà* (=on that side), *partout* (=everywhere), *çà* (=here), *dessus* (=above), *dessous* (=beneath), *dedans* (=within), *dehors* (=without), *devant* (=before), *derrière* (=behind), etc. *Je partirai d'*ici *pour aller* **partout où** *tu voudras* (=I shall start from hence to go wherever thou wilt), *restez* **là** (=remain there), *allons* **ailleurs** (=let us go elsewhere).

Adverbs of place are either expressed by one word, as *là*, *y*, *où*, *en*; or compounded of two, as *dedans* (from *de* and *dans*), *partout* (from *par* and *tout*), *dessous* (from *de* and *sous*).

190. The principal **adverbs of time** are: *quand* (=when), *puis* (=then), *depuis* (=since), *souvent* (=often), *toujours* (=always), *maintenant* (=now), *jamais* (=ever), *aujourd'hui* (=to-day), *demain* (=to-morrow), *hier* (=yesterday), *jadis* (=formerly), *lors*, *alors* (=then), *longtemps* (=for a long time), *enfin* (=at last), etc. *J'irai* **demain** *et aussi* **souvent** *que tu le voudras* (=I shall go to-morrow, and as often as thou wilt).

These adverbs are either expressed by a single word, as *hier*, *lors*, *quand*, *puis*; or compounded of two words, as *longtemps* (from *long* and *temps*), *aussitôt* (from *aussi* and *tôt*), *ensuite* (from *en* and *suite*).

191. The **adverbs of manner** are formed by adding **ment** to a feminine adjective:

courageux	*courageuse*	*courageuse***ment**	bravely
fier	*fière*	*fière***ment**	proudly
complet	*complète*	*complète***ment**	fully
nouveau	*nouvelle*	*nouvelle***ment**	newly.

EXCEPTIONS:

A. If the feminine adjective ends with two vowels, the last one is cut off: *hard***ie** (=bold), *hard***iment** (=boldly).

B. The following adjectives form their adverbs by placing an **acute accent** over the **e** preceding the termination **-ment**:

aveugle	blind	*aveuglément*	blindly
commun	common	*communément*	commonly
conforme	conformable	*conformément*	conformably
confus	confused	*confusément*	confusedly
diffus	diffuse	*diffusément*	diffusely
énorme	enormous	*énormément*	enormously
exprès	express	*expressément*	expressly
immense	immense	*immensément*	immensely
impuni	unpunished	*impunément*	with impunity
obscur	dark	*obscurément*	darkly
opiniâtre	obstinate	*opiniâtrément*	obstinately
précis	precise	*précisément*	precisely
profond	deep	*profondément*	deeply
uniforme	uniform	*uniformément*	uniformly.

Note the circumflex accent in

assidûment	assiduously	*dûment*	duly
crûment	crudely, bluntly	*gaîment*, also *gaiement*	gaily, cheerfully.

C. Brièvement (=briefly) and *traîtreusement* (=treacherously), commonly used as the adverbs of the adjectives *bref* (=short), and *traître* (=treacherous), are formed in the regular manner from the old feminine adjectives *brève* and *traîtreuse*.

D. The final **l** of *gentil* (=pretty) not being pronounced, the adverb is spelt *gentiment* (=prettily).

192. Adjectives ending in **ent, ant** form their adverbs in **emment, amment:** *prud***ent** (=prudent), *prud***emment** (=prudently); *oblige***ant** (=obliging), *oblige***amment** (=obligingly).

EXCEPTIONS:

A. Lent (=slow), *présent* (=present), and *véhément* (=vehement, violent) form their adverbs *lente**ment*** (=slowly), *présente**ment*** (=at present, now), *véhémente**ment*** (=vehemently), according to the general rule. (See § 191.)

B. The adverbs *not***amment** (=especially), *nuit***amment** (=by night), and *sci***emment** (=knowingly), were formed from the Old French adjectives *notant, nuitant*, and *scient*, which are now obsolete.

193. Adverbs of quality are also formed in French by the occasional use of the *simple adjective*: *chanter* **juste** (=to sing in tune), *voir* **clair** (=to see distinctly), *parler* **bas** (=to speak in a low voice), etc.

194. Adverbs of manner and adjectives used as adverbs of quality form their comparative and superlative like adjectives:

clairement, **plus** *clairement*, **le plus** *clairement*, **très** *clairement*
parler bas, **plus** *bas*, **le plus** *oas*, **très** *bas*.

In the same way, the adverbs *loin* (=far), *près* (=near), *tôt* (=soon), *tard* (=late), *vite* (=quickly), *volontiers* (=willingly), make **plus** *loin*, **très** *loin*, **plus** *près*, **très** *près*, etc.

Notice two irregular comparatives:

bien (=well)	*mieux* (=better)	*le mieux* (=the best)
mal (=badly)	*pis* / *plus mal* (=worse)	*le pis* / *le plus mal* (=the worst)

The **place of the adverb** is generally after the verb:

il a chanté admirablement (=he sang admirably).

But **bien, toujours, trop** come before the past participle or the present infinitive.

195. The principal **adverbs of quantity** are *assez* (=enough), *trop* (=too much), *peu* (=little), *beaucoup* (=much), *très* (=very), *tant* (=so much), etc.

NOTICE:

(*a*) The irregular comparative of **peu**: *peu* (=little), *moins* (=less), *le moins* (=the least).

(*b*) Adverbs of quantity generally take **de** after them. *Très*, *environ*, *davantage* are exceptions; *bien* requires **du, de la, des.**

196. The principal **adverbs of interrogation** are: *pourquoi* (=why), *comment* (=how), *quand* (when), *combien* (=how much), etc.

197. The principal **adverbs of affirmation** are: *oui* (=yes), *certes* (certainly), *vraiment* (=truly), etc.

Oui was *oïl* in Old French (*see* Introduction, § 5). This *oïl* had for its corresponding negative expression *nenil*, which has become in modern French *nenni*, just as *oïl* has become *oui*.

198. The principal **adverbs of negation** are: *non*, *ne*, *pas*, *goutte*, *personne*, *rien*, etc.: **non**, *je* **ne** *veux* **pas** (=no, I will not).

The French have really only two adverbs of negation: *non* and *ne*; the other words, such as *pas*, *point*, *goutte*, are mere substantives: *un pas* (=a step), *un point* (=a point), *une goutte* (=a drop), used adverbially as terms of comparison. Every one knows that, in order to give greater strength to the expression of our judgments, we readily support them by a comparison: *pauvre comme Job* (=as poor as Job), *fort*

comme un lion (=as strong as a lion), *féroce comme un tigre* (=as fierce as a tiger), etc.; or by using an estimation: *Cet objet ne vaut pas un sou* (=this object is not worth a penny). In like manner, the adverbial locutions *pas*, *mie*, *goutte*, *point*, etc., were originally employed in a matter-of-fact manner—they were placed, we mean, in a comparison where they had a distinctive signification: *Je ne marche* **pas** (=I do not walk a step), *je ne vois* **point** (=I do not see a point), *je ne mange* **mie** (=I do not eat a crumb), *je ne bois* **goutte** (=I do not drink a drop), etc.

199. The principal **adverbs of doubt** are: *peut-être* (=perhaps, may be), *probablement* (=probably): *Il sera* **probablement** *ici demain* (=he will probably be here to-morrow).

Peut-être is elliptical for *cela peut être*, and this accounts for the fact that it can be followed by **que**: *Peut-être* **que** *je viendrai*, i.e. *cela peut être* **que** *je viendrai* (=it may be that I shall come).

200. A combination of words having the force of an adverb is called an **adverbial locution.** Thus: *à l'envi* (=vying with each other), *au delà* (=beyond), *en deçà* (=on this side of), *tout à fait* (=quite), *point du tout* (=not at all).

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is an *adverb*?—Explain the meaning of the word.
2. How many kinds of adverbs are there?
3. Name the adverbs of *place*;—of *time*.
4. What is the comparative of *bien*?—of *mal*?—of *peu*?
5. Give a list of the adverbs of *quantity—interrogation—affirmation—negation—doubt*.
6. How do you form adverbs of *manner*?
7. What is meant by an adverbial locution?
8. Name a few adjectives used adverbially.
9. Where is the adverb placed?

Exercise 37.

1. Il dit toujours la vérité. 2. Elle vient quelquefois. 3. Nous réussirons tôt ou tard. 4. Je suis allé hier à Brighton. 5. Voyez-vous cette maison là-bas? 6. Il est tard; vous devriez venir plus tôt. 7. Parlez peu, mais parlez à propos. 8. Ce que l'on conçoit bien s'énonce clairement, et les mots pour le dire arrivent aisément. 9. Il ne se moquera

pas de moi impunément. 10. Ne lui aviez-vous pas expressément défendu de prendre votre fusil? 11. Puisque vous le voulez, j'y consens. 12. Je me tiendrai dorénavant sur mes gardes. 13. Cette demoiselle ne chante pas juste. 14. Ces élèves étudient à l'envi. 15. Il entra tout à coup.

[1] arriver. [2] guerrier (*m.*). [3] action (*f.*). [4] entreprise (*f.*). [5] périr. [6] gagner. [7] en retard. [8] se rencontrer. [9] paraître. [10] de. [11] se conduire. [12] se rappeler.

1. This event happened[1] suddenly. 2. Whence comes this warrior[2]? 3. How many shares[3] have you bought in this undertaking[4]? 4. We shall certainly perish[5] together. 5. The general has already won[6] two battles. 6. He often loses his money. 7. He is always late[7] for the train (*m.*). 8. When shall we meet[8] again? 9. Your daughter seemed[9] quite surprised at[10] my offer. 10. The citadel was obstinately attacked by the enemy. 11. I have seen that man everywhere. 12. I went to the Crystal Palace yesterday. 13. Above all, tell him to meet me to-morrow in the park. 14. This child behaves[11] very well. 15. I remember[12] the details of the catastrophe confusedly.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE PREPOSITION.

201. The **preposition** is an invariable word which serves to unite two words by showing the relation in which the one stands to the other: *Le livre* **de** *Paul* (=Paul's book); *utile* **à** *l'homme* (=useful to man); *de* and *à* are prepositions.

Preposition comes from the Latin accusative *prœpositionem*, from *prœ* (=before), and *positionem* (=position).

202. The relations expressed by prepositions are *five* in number: 1. time: *avant* (=before), *après* (=after), *depuis* (=since), etc.; 2. place: *à* (=to, at), *vers* (=towards), *dans* (=in), *chez* (=at *or* in the house of), *devant* (=before), *derrière* (=behind), etc.; 3. manner *or* means: *par* (=by), *avec* (=with), *sans* (=without), *selon* (=according to), etc.: 4. origin *or* cause: *de* (=of), *par* (=by), *pour* (=for), etc.; 5. tendency towards *or* remoteness from: *envers* (=towards), *pour* (=for), *contre* (=against), *à* (=to), *de* (=of), etc.

203. Some prepositions consist of one word, as *à, de, dans, pour, par, sur,* and are called **simple prepositions**; others are made up of two or more words, as *quant à* (=as for), *à cause de* (=on account of), *vis-à-vis de* (=opposite), *au-dessus de* (=above, upon), *à l'égard de* (=with regard to), etc., and are called **prepositive locutions.**

204. REMARK 1.—The preposition **à** must not be mistaken for **a**, third person singular of the verb *avoir*; **à**, preposition, takes the grave accent: *il monte* **à** *cheval* (=he goes on horseback); **a**, verb, has no accent: *il* **a** *un livre* (=he has a book).

2. **Dès**, preposition, takes the grave accent: *il se lève* **dès** *l'aurore* (=he rises with the dawn); **des** (=of the, from the, some), takes no accent: *les feuilles* **des** *arbres* (=the leaves of the trees).

SECTION I.

FORMATION OF SIMPLE PREPOSITIONS.

205. The French language has formed new prepositions with the help of:—

1. **Substantives**: *malgré* (=in spite of), from the Old French adjective **mal** (=*mauvais*=bad), and the substantive **gré** (=will).

2. **Adjectives**: *sauf* (=except, but), still found in *sain et sauf* (=safe and sound): *Sauf mes intérêts* (=my interests excepted), *sauf Jean* (=John excepted).

3. **Imperative of verbs**: *voici* (=here is, here are), *voilà* (=there is, there are).

These words are compounded of the adverb *ci* and *là* and of *voi*. the old imperative of *voir*. *Voici le loup* (=here is the wolf) means therefore really: *voyez ici le loup* (=see here the wolf), or *le loup est ici*; *voyez-le* (=the wolf is here; see him).

4. **Past participles**: *passé* (=over), *vu* (=considering), *excepté* (=except, save), *attendu* (=considering); *passé ce moment* (=the moment being over); *excepté cet homme* (=with the exception of that man); *vu le danger que nous courons* (=considering the danger we are running); *attendu son infirmité* (=considering his infirmity).

We must add to this list **hormis** (=except), spelt in Old French *hor-mis*, that is to say, *mis hors* (=placed outside). In this expression the participle *mis* (*missus*) was variable; the French of the thirteenth century said: *Cet homme a perdu tous ses enfants, hors* **mise** *sa fille* (=this man has lost all his children, with the exception of his daughter). In the fifteenth century the two words were joined, and the expression **hormis** thus became a preposition.

5. **Present participles**: *durant* (=during), *pendant* (=during), *suivant* (=according to), *concernant* (=concerning), *touchant* (=touching) (from *durer, pendre, suivre, concerner, toucher*). *L'avocat mourut pendant le procès=tandis que le procès était pendant* (=the barrister died whilst the lawsuit was pending), *durant sa vie=sa vie durant* (=as long as his life lasts), *durant le jour=pendant que le jour dure* (=whilst the day lasts).

SECTION II.

FORMATION OF PREPOSITIVE LOCUTIONS.

206. These are formed chiefly with the help either of substantives or of adverbs followed by the preposition **de**. Thus nouns, such as *face, force, cause, faute, milieu*, etc., give the prepositive locutions: *en face de* (=opposite), *à force de* (=by dint of), *à cause de* (=on account of), *faute de* (=for want of), *au milieu de* (=in the midst of), etc.; and adverbs, such as *loin, autour, devant*, etc., give *loin de* (=far from), *autour de* (=around), *au-devant de* (=in front of), etc.

Vis-à-vis is a compound of the same kind, being formed of the Old French *vis* = *visage* (= the face) from the Latin *visus*; hence the expression *vis-à-vis*, which is literally equivalent to *face à face* (= face to face). *Vis* is also found in the word *visière* (= visor); the visor was originally the part of the helmet intended to protect the face.

SECTION III.

GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

207. 1. Prepositions usually govern the accusative;

2. Prepositive locutions generally govern the genitive;

3. The following prepositions and prepositive locutions govern the dative:

Jusqu'à, *jusques à* (= as far as, until), *quant à* (= as for, as to), *par rapport à* (= with regard to).

208. Prepositions are always placed, in French, immediately before the object: **De** *quoi parlez vous?* (= what are you speaking of?).

209. Prepositions must be repeated before every word which they govern: *Il ira à Paris et à Londres* (= he will go to Paris and London).

210. The verb governed by a preposition must be put in the infinitive, except in the case of **en**, which governs the present participle: *Ne partez pas* **sans** *ven*ir *me voir* (= do not start without coming to see me), *il tremble* **en** *parl*ant (= he trembles whilst speaking).

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is a *preposition*?
2. State the difference between *a*, verb, and *à* preposition;—between *des*, article, and *dès*, preposition.
3. What is a prepositive locution?
4. Name the *present* and *past participles* used as prepositions.
5. How are *prepositive locutions* formed with the help (*a*) of nouns, (*b*) of adverbs?
6. Name the prepositions which govern substantives (*a*) in the genitive, (*b*) in the dative, (*c*) in the accusative.
7. What preposition governs the verb in the present participle?
8. Where are prepositions placed?

Exercise 38.

1. Ne va-t-il pas à Paris? 2. Il a été ingrat envers son bienfaiteur. 3. Mon chapeau est dans la chambre. 4. Venez chez moi. 5. Vers le nord, la nature présente un aspect triste et sauvage. 6. Dès aujourd'hui je renonce à le voir. 7. En agissant ainsi vous avez manqué à toutes les convenances. 8. Mettez vos livres sur la table. 9. Irez-vous jusqu'à Berlin? 10. Quant à moi, je meurs de faim. 11. Êtes-vous hors d'affaire? 12. Attendu sa jeunesse, nous ne le punirons pas. 13. Il demeure près de l'église.

[1]près de. [2]offense (*f.*). [3]doux. [4]orage (*m.*). [5]éclater. [6]dès.

1. He is going to Paris. 2. I live near[1] the railway. 3. In absolving this man, justice has not been done. 4. Never be ungrateful towards your parents. 5. Considering the nature of the offence[2], the punishment is extremely mild[3]. 6. During the ceremony, a thunderstorm[4] burst[5] over the town. 7. The troops are out of danger. 8. As for my books, they are in your room. 9. Towards the river you will find a pretty country-house. 10. The book shall be sent to the printer's as early as[6] to-morrow morning. 11. The laws are the same in France and Algeria.

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE CONJUNCTION.

211. The conjunction is an invariable word which serves to unite together two words or two propositions: *Pierre* **et** *Paul sont frères* (=Peter and Paul are brothers), *aimons Dieu* **puisqu'***il est bon* (=let us love God, since He is good); **et, puisque** are conjunctions.

Conjunction is from the Latin accusative *conjunctionem* (=conjunction, properly *union*).

212. Some conjunctions consist of a single word, as *et, ou, si, mais,* etc., and are then called **simple conjunctions**; others are formed of two or more words: *tandis que, bien que, parce que,* and are called **conjunctive locutions.**

213. The principal **simple conjunctions** are: *car* (=for), *comme* (=as), *donc* (=then, therefore), *et* (=and), *mais* (=but), *or* (=now, but), *ou* (=or), *que* (=that), *quand* (=though, even though), *ni* (=nor), *si* (=if), each of which is really only one word.

To the above list we must add the conjunctions such as *plutôt* (=rather), *puisque* (=since), *néanmoins* (=nevertheless), *cependant* (=meanwhile), *lorsque* (=when), which are really composed of two distinct words (*plus-tôt*, *puis-que*, *néant-moins*, *ce-pendant*, *lors-que*), combined into one by modern orthography.

214. The principal **conjunctive locutions** are: *au contraire* (=on the contrary), *au moins* (=at least), *tandis que* (=whilst), *alors que* (=when, now that), *sans que* (=without), *dès que* (=as soon as), *avant que* (=before that), *après que* (=after that), etc.

215. Remark.—1. **Que** is a relative pronoun when used instead of *lequel*, *laquelle*; it is an adverb when used instead of *combien*; it is a conjunction when it serves to unite two clauses of a sentence: *Je crois* **que** *Dieu est saint* (=I believe that God is holy).

2. **Où**, adverb (=where, when), points out a place or a time, and takes the grave accent; *ou*, conjunction (=or) takes no accent: *Mon frère* **ou** *moi* (=my brother or I).

3. **Si** is an adverb when it can be used instead of *tant*, *tellement* (=so, so much); in all other cases it is a conjunction: *Je sortirai* **si** *le temps est beau* (=I shall go out if the weather is fine).

216. Conjunctions followed by **de** take the verb in the infinitive.

(For the use of the indicative or subjunctive after conjunctions, *see* Syntax of propositions.)

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is a *conjunction*?
2. Distinguish between *simple conjunctions* and *conjunctive locutions*.
3. When is *que* an adverb?
4. When is *où* an adverb?
5. Distinguish between *si*, adverb, and *si*, conjunction.
6. In what mood is the verb placed after a conjunction followed by *de*?

Exercise 39.

1. Vous et moi, lui ou elle. 2. J'ai fait mon thème, mais je n'ai pas appris ma leçon. 3. Soyez tranquille, car le maître est là. 4. Puisque vous ne voulez pas m'accompagner, je ne sortirai pas. 5. Il ferait cela plutôt que de vous le proposer. 6. Le roi a rejeté cette mesure comme trop violente. 7. Il ne sait ni lire, ni écrire. 8. Il a perdu beaucoup d'argent, néanmoins il persiste à jouer. 9. Quoiqu'il aille à Londres, il ne verra pas son ami.

[1]pourvu que. [2]réussir. [3]grandeur (*f.*). [4]quoique. [5]parce que. [6]indisposé. [7]dire. [8]tandis que. [9]déguiser. [10]que. [11]à moins que. [12]ne changiez. [13]abandonner. [14]part (*f.*).

1. Provided[1] you are† attentive, you will succeed[2]. 2. Neither gold nor greatness[3] makes a man happy. 3. You and I shall go together. 4. Although[4] I do† all (that which) I can, I do not succeed. 5. If we do not succeed, it will not be our fault. 6. I cannot come because[5] I am unwell[6]. 7. We speak[7] the truth, whereas[8] your friend always disguises[9] it. 8. Whether[10] I was† hungry or not, you should have kept the dinner on the table. 9. Unless[11] you alter[12]† your plans, I shall give up[13] my share[14] in the business

CHAPTER X

OF THE INTERJECTION.

217. The **interjection** is a cry, an exclamation expressing the sudden impulse of the mind: *Ah! Oh! Fi! Hélas!*

Interjection comes from the Latin accusative *interjectionem*, which means literally the action of throwing into the middle (of the sentence).

Principal Interjections.

Joy:	*Bon! Vive la joie!*	Silence:	*Chut! Paix!*
Grief:	*Hélas! Aïe! Ah! Ouf!*	Calling:	*Holà! Ho!*
Fear:	*Ha! Hé! Ho!*		*Hem!*
Aversion!	*Fi! Fi donc!*	Warning:	*Gare!*
Admiration:	*Oh!*	Attention:	*Tenez! Voilà!*
Encouraging:	*Allons! Courage!*	Disbelief:	*Ah! bah!*
Surprise:	*Quoi! Vraiment!*		

Ciel! (=heavens!) *Bis!* (=again!) *Bravo!* (=bravo!) *Tout beau* (=softly), are also used in various exclamations.

† These verbs must be put in the subjunctive.

218. Interjections are formed either with the help of nouns: *paix!* (=silence), *courage!* (=cheer up!), *patience!* (=have patience!), or of verbs: *soit!* (=be it so!), *allons!* (=come on!), *suffit!* (=enough! that will do!). Sometimes they are mere exclamations: *ah! oh!* etc.

Hélas, written in Old French in two words: *hé! las!* is formed of the interjection *hé!* and the adjective *las* (*lassus*), which formerly meant *malheureux* (=unhappy). The French of the thirteenth century said: *Cette mère est* **lasse** *de la mort de son fils* (=this mother is unhappy at the death of her son). *Hé* **las!** *que je suis* (=Ah! unhappy that I am!). It was only in the fifteenth century that the two words coalesced, and that *hélas* became inseparable. At the same time *las* lost all its primitive energy, and changed its meaning of *grief* for that of *weariness* or *fatigue*, in the same way as the words *gêne* (=inconvenience), and *ennui* (=weariness), which originally meant *torture* and *hatred*, respectively.

Dame! which must not be mistaken for the feminine substantive *dame* (=lady), is the abbreviation of *Dame-Dieu*, an Old French exclamation equivalent to *Seigneur Dieu* (=Lord God). We constantly find in medieval texts: *que* **Dame-Dieu** *nous aide!* (=the Lord God help us!). *Dame-Dieu*, and simply *Dame* (that is to say, Lord God), was used as an interjection; and the exclamation *Ah! dame* (=ah! well), which nowadays has lost all meaning, signifies really *Ah! Seigneur!* (=ah! Lord!). The word *dame* is still found in the geographical names *Dammartin*, *Dampierre*, etc., which signify *the Lord* Martin, *the Lord* Peter, etc.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is an *interjection*?
2. Name the principal interjections.
3. How are interjections formed?
4. Explain the original meaning of *Hélas!* and *Dame!*

The following table will complete and resume all the details given in Section III. p. 96.

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb **avoir** (=to have) *negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negative.*

N.B.—The same scheme is applicable to any transitive verb, and to all neuter verbs conjugated with the auxiliary **avoir.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Negatively.

PRESENT.—**Ne pas** avoir *or* **n'avoir pas**, *not to have.*
PAST.— **N'ayant pas eu**, *not to have had.*

PARTICIPLES.

Negatively.

PRESENT.—**N'ayant pas**, *not having.*
PAST.— **N'ayant pas eu**, *not having had.*
FUTURE.— **Ne devant pas avoir**, *not about to have.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Negatively.	*Interrogatively.*	*Interrog. with a neg.*
I have not, etc.	*Have I? etc.*	*Have I not? etc.*
Je n'ai pas	**ai-*je*?***	**n'ai-*je* pas?†**
tu n'as pas	**as-*tu*?**	**n'as-*tu* pas?**
il n'a pas	**a-*t-il*?**	**n'a-*t-il* pas?**
nous n'avons pas	**avons-*nous*?**	**n'avons-*nous* pas?**
vous n'avez pas	**avez-*vous*?**	**n'avez-*vous* pas?**
ils n'ont pas	**ont-*ils*?**	**n'ont-*ils* pas?**

* Aimé-*je*? Est-ce que *je* romps?
† N'aimé-*je* pas? Est-ce que *je* ne romps pas?

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have not had, etc.	*Have I had? etc.*	*Have I not had? etc.*
Je n'ai pas eu	Ai-*je* * eu?	N'ai-*je* pas eu?
tu n'as pas eu	as-*tu* eu?	n'as-*tu* pas eu?
il n'a pas eu	a-*t-il* eu?	n'a-*t-il* pas eu?
nous n'avons pas eu	avons-*nous* eu?	n'avons-*nous* pas eu?
vous n'avez pas eu	avez-*vous* eu?	n'avez-*vous* pas eu?
ils n'ont pas eu	ont-*ils* eu?	n'ont-*ils* pas eu?

IMPERFECT.

I had not, etc.	*Had I? etc.*	*Had I not? etc.*
Je n'avais pas	Avais-*je*?	N'avais-*je* pas?
tu n'avais pas	avais-*tu*?	n'avais-*tu* pas?
il n'avait pas	avait-*il*?	n'avait-*il* pas?
nous n'avions pas	avions-*nous*?	n'avions-*nous* pas?
vous n'aviez pas	aviez-*vous*?	n'aviez-*vous* pas?
ils n'avaient pas	avaient-*ils*?	n'avaient-*ils* pas?

PLUPERFECT.

I had not had, etc.	*Had I had? etc.*	*Had I not had? etc.*
Je n'avais pas eu	avais-*je* eu?	N'avais-*je* pas eu?
tu n'avais pas eu	avais-*tu* eu?	n'avais-*tu* pas eu?
il n'avait pas eu	avait-*il* eu?	n'avait-*il* pas eu?
nous n'avions pas eu	avions-*nous* eu?	n'avions-*nous* pas eu?
vous n'aviez pas eu	aviez-*vous* eu?	n'aviez-*vous* pas eu?
ils n'avaient pas eu	avaient-*ils* eu?	n'avaient-*ils* pas eu?

PAST DEFINITE *or* PRETERITE.

I had not, etc.	*Had I? etc.*	*Had I not? etc.*
Je n'eus pas	Eus-*je*?	N'eus-*je* pas?
tu n'eus pas	eus-*tu*?	n'eus-*tu* pas?
il n'eut pas	eut-*il*?	n'eut-*il* pas?
nous n'eûmes pas	eûmes-*nous*?	n'eûmes-*nous* pas?
vous n'eûtes pas	eûtes-*vous*?	n'eûtes-*vous* pas?
ils n'eurent pas	eurent-*ils*?	n'eurent-*ils* pas?

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had not had, etc.	*Had I had? etc.*	*Had I not had? etc.*
Je n'eus pas eu	Eus-*je* eu?	N'eus-*je* pas eu?
tu n'eus pas eu	eus-*tu* eu?	n'eus-*tu* pas eu?
il n'eut pas eu	eut-*il* eu?	n'eut-*il* pas eu?
nous n'eûmes pas eu	eûmes-*nous* eu?	n'eûmes-*nous* pas eu?
vous n'eûtes pas eu	eûtes-*vous* eu?	n'eûtes-*vous* pas eu?
ils n'eurent pas eu	eurent-*ils* eu?	n'eurent-*ils* pas eu?

* The e of *je* is not dropped in the interrogation before a vowel.

FUTURE.

I shall not have, etc.	*Shall I have? etc.*	*Shall I not have? etc.*
Je n'aurai pas	Aurai-*je*?	N'aurai-*je* pas?
tu n'auras pas	auras-*tu*?	n'auras-*tu* pas?
il n'aura pas	aura-*t-il*?	n'aura-*t-il* pas?
nous n'aurons pas	aurons-*nous*?	n'aurons-*nous* pas?
vous n'aurez pas	aurez-*vous*?	n'aurez-*vous* pas?
ils n'auront pas	auront-*ils*?	n'auront-*ils* pas?

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall not have had, etc.	*Shall I have had? etc.*	*Shall I not have had? etc.*
Je n'aurai pas eu	Aurai-*je* eu?	N'aurai-*je* pas eu?
tu n'auras pas eu	auras-*tu* eu?	n'auras-*tu* pas eu?
il n'aura pas eu	aura-*t-il* eu?	n'aura-*t-il* pas eu?
nous n'aurons pas eu	aurons-*nous* eu?	n'aurons-*nous* pas eu?
vous n'aurez pas eu	aurez-*vous* eu?	n'aurez-*vous* pas eu?
ils n'auront pas eu	auront-*ils* eu?	n'auront-*ils* pas eu?

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should not have, etc.	*Should I have? etc.*	*Should I not have? etc.*
Je n'aurais pas	Aurais-*je*?	N'aurais-*je* pas?
tu n'aurais pas	aurais-*tu*?	n'aurais-*tu* pas?
il n'aurait pas	aurait-*il*?	n'aurait-*il* pas?
nous n'aurions pas	aurions-*nous*?	n'aurions-*nous* pas?
vous n'auriez pas	auriez-*vous*?	n'auriez-*vous* pas?
ils n'auraient pas	auraient-*ils*?	n'auraient-*ils* pas?

PAST.

I should not have had, etc.	*Should I have had? etc.*	*Should I not have had, etc.*
Je n'aurais pas eu	Aurais-*je* eu?	N'aurais-*je* pas eu?
tu n'aurais pas eu	aurais-*tu* eu?	n'aurais-*tu* pas eu?
il n'aurait pas eu	aurait-*il* eu?	n'aurait-*il* pas eu?
nous n'aurions pas eu	aurions-*nous* eu?	n'aurions-*nous* pas eu?
vous n'auriez pas eu	auriez-*vous* eu?	n'auriez-*vous* pas eu?
ils n'auraient pas eu	auraient-*ils* eu?	n'auraient-*ils* pas eu?

or	*or*	*or*
Je n'eusse pas eu	Eussé-*je* eu ?	N'eussé-*je* pas eu ?
tu n'eusses pas eu	eusses-*tu* eu ?	n'eusses-*tu* pas eu ?
il n'eût pas eu	eût-*il* eu ?	n'eût-*il* pas eu ?
nous n'eussions pas eu	eussions-*nous* eu ?	n'eussions-*nous* pas eu ?
vous n'eussiez pas eu	eussiez-*vous* eu ?	n'eussiez-*vous* pas eu ?
ils n'eussent pas eu	eussent-*ils* eu ?	n'eussent-*ils* pas eu ?

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Negatively.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Have not.	*Have not had.*
N'aie pas	N'aie pas eu
n'ayons pas	n'ayons pas eu
n'ayez pas	n'ayez pas eu

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Negatively.

PRESENT *or* FUTURE.	PAST.
That I may not have, etc.	*That I may not have had, etc.*
Que je n'aie pas	Que je n'aie pas eu
que tu n'aies pas	que tu n'aies pas eu
qu'il n'ait pas	qu'il n'ait pas eu
que nous n'ayons pas	que nous n'ayons pas eu
que vous n'ayez pas	que vous n'ayez pas eu
qu'ils n'aient pas	qu'ils n'aient pas eu

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
That I might not have, etc.	*That I might not have had, etc.*
Que je n'eusse pas	Que je n'eusse pas eu
que tu n'eusses pas	que tu n'eusses pas eu
qu'il n'eût pas	qu'il n'eût pas eu
que nous n'eussions pas	que nous n'eussions pas eu
que vous n'eussiez pas	que vous n'eussiez pas eu
qu'ils n'eussent pas	qu'ils n'eussent pas eu

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb **être** (=to be) *negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negative.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Negatively.

PRESENT.—**Ne pas être** *or* **n'être pas**, *not to be.*
PAST.— **N'avoir pas été**, *not to have been.*

PARTICIPLES.

Negatively.

PRESENT.—**N'étant pas**, *not being.*
PAST.— **N'ayant pas été**, *not having been.*
FUTURE.— **Ne devant pas être**, *not about to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Negatively.	*Interrogatively.*	*Interrog. with a neg.*
I am not, etc.	*Am I? etc.*	*Am I not? etc.*
Je **ne** suis **pas**	Suis-*je*?	**Ne** suis-*je* **pas**?
tu **n'**es **pas**	es-*tu*?	**n'**es-*tu* **pas**?
il **n'**est **pas**	est-*il*?	**n'**est-*il* **pas**?
nous **ne** sommes **pas**	sommes-*nous*?	**ne** sommes-*nous* **pas**?
vous **n'**êtes **pas**	êtes-*vous*?	**n'**êtes-*vous* **pas**?
ils **ne** sont **pas**	sont-*ils*?	**ne** sont-*ils* **pas**?

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have not been, etc.	*Have I been? etc.*	*Have I not been? etc.*
Je **n'**ai **pas** été	Ai-*je* été?	**N'**ai-*je* **pas** été?
tu **n'**as **pas** été	as-*tu* été?	**n'**as-*tu* **pas** été?
il **n'**a **pas** été	a-*t-il* été?	**n'**a-*t-il* **pas** été?
nous **n'**avons **pas** été	avons-*nous* été?	**n'**avons-*nous* **pas** été?
vous **n'**avez **pas** été	avez-*vous* été?	**n'**avez-*vous* **pas** été?
ils **n'**ont **pas** été	ont-*ils* été?	**n'**ont-*ils* **pas** été?

IMPERFECT.

I was not, etc.	*Was I? etc.*	*Was I not? etc.*
Je n'étais pas	Étais-*je*?	N'étais-*je* pas?
tu n'étais pas	étais-*tu*?	n'étais-*tu* pas?
il n'était pas	était-*il*?	n'était-*il* pas?
nous n'étions pas	étions-*nous*?	n'étions-*nous* pas?
vous n'étiez pas	étiez-*vous*?	n'étiez-*vous* pas?
ils n'étaient pas	étaient-*ils*?	n'étaient-*ils* pas?

PLUPERFECT.

I had not been, etc.	*Had I been, etc.*	*Had I not been? etc.*
Je n'avais pas été	Avais-*je* été?	N'avais-*je* pas été?
tu n'avais pas été	avais-*tu* été?	n'avais-*tu* pas été?
il n'avait pas été	avait-*il* été?	n'avait-*il* pas été?
nous n'avions pas été	avions-*nous* été?	n'avions-*nous* pas été?
vous n'aviez pas été	aviez-*vous* été?	n'aviez-*vous* pas été?
ils n'avaient pas été	avaient-*ils* été?	n'avaient-*ils* pas été?

PAST DEFINITE *or* PRETERITE.

I was not, etc	*Was I? etc.*	*Was I not? etc.*
Je ne fus pas	Fus-*je*?	Ne fus-*je* pas?
tu ne fus pas	fus-*tu*?	ne fus-*tu* pas?
il ne fut pas	fut-*il*?	ne fut-*il* pas?
nous ne fûmes pas	fûmes-*nous*?	ne fûmes-*nous* pas?
vous ne fûtes pas	fûtes-*vous*?	ne fûtes-*vous* pas?
ils ne furent pas	furent-*ils*?	ne furent-*ils* pas?

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had not been, etc.	*Had I been? etc.*	*Had I not been? etc.*
Je n'eus pas été	Eus-*je* été?	N'eus-*je* pas été?
tu n'eus pas été	eus-*tu* été?	n'eus-*tu* pas été?
il n'eut pas été	eut-*il* été?	n'eut-*il* pas été?
nous n'eûmes pas été	eûmes-*nous* été?	n'eûmes-*nous* pas été?
vous n'eûtes pas été	eûtes-*vous* été?	n'eûtes-*vous* pas été?
ils n'eurent pas été	eurent-*ils* été?	n'eurent-*ils* pas été?

FUTURE.

I shall not be, etc.	*Shall I be? etc.*	*Shall I not be? etc.*
Je **ne** serai **pas**	Serai-*je*?	**Ne** serai-*je* **pas**?
tu **ne** seras **pas**	seras-*tu*?	**ne** seras-*tu* **pas**?
il **ne** sera **pas**	sera-*t-il*?	**ne** sera-*t-il* **pas**?
nous **ne** serons **pas**	serons-*nous*?	**ne** serons-*nous* **pas**?
vous **ne** serez **pas**	serez-*vous*?	**ne** serez-*vous* **pas**?
ils **ne** seront **pas**	seront-*ils*?	**ne** seront-*ils* **pas**?

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall not have been, etc.	*Shall I have been? etc.*	*Shall I not have been? etc.*
Je **n'**aurai **pas** été	Aurai-*je* été?	**N'**aurai-*je* **pas** été?
tu **n'**auras **pas** été	auras-*tu* été?	**n'**auras-*tu* **pas** été?
il **n'**aura **pas** été	aura-*t-il* été?	**n'**aura-*t-il* **pas** été?
nous **n'**aurons **pas** été	aurons-*nous* été?	**n'**aurons-*nous* **pas** été
vous **n'**aurez **pas** été	aurez-*vous* été	**n'**aurez-*vous* **pas** été?
ils **n'**auront **pas** été	auront-*ils* été?	**n'**auront-*ils* **pas** été?

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should not be, etc.	*Should I be? etc.*	*Should I not be? etc.*
Je **ne** serais **pas**	Serais-*je*?	**Ne** serais-*je* **pas**?
tu **ne** serais **pas**	serais-*tu*?	**ne** serais-*tu* **pas**?
il **ne** serait **pas**	serait-*il*?	**ne** serait-*il* **pas**?
nous **ne** serions **pas**	serions-*nous*?	**ne** serions-*nous* **pas**?
vous **ne** seriez **pas**	seriez-*vous*?	**ne** seriez-*vous* **pas**?
ils **ne** seraient **pas**	seraient-*ils*?	**ne** seraient-*ils* **pas**?

PAST.

I should not have been, etc.	*Should I have been? etc.*	*Should I not have been? etc.*
Je **n'**aurais **pas** été	Aurais-*je* été?	**N'**aurais-*je* **pas** été?
tu **n'**aurais **pas** été	aurais-*tu* été?	**n'**aurais-*tu* **pas** été?
il **n'**aurait **pas** été	aurait-*il* été?	**n'**aurait-*il* **pas** été?
nous **n'**aurions **pas** été	aurions-*nous* été?	**n'**aurions-*nous* **pas** été?
vous **n'**auriez **pas** été	auriez-*vous* été?	**n'**auriez-*vous* **pas** été?
ils **n'**auraient **pas** été	auraient-*ils* été?	**n'**auraient-*ils* **pas** été?

or	*or*	*or*
Je n'eusse pas été	Eussé-*je* été?	N'eussé-*je* pas été?
tu n'eusses pas été	eusses-*tu* été?	n'eusses-*tu* pas été?
il n'eût pas été	eût-*il* été?	n'eût-*il* pas été?
nous n'eussions pas été	eussions-*nous* été?	n'eussions-*nous* pas été?
vous n'eussiez pas été	eussiez-*vous* été?	n'eussiez-*vous* pas été?
ils n'eussent pas été	eussent-*ils* été?	n'eussent-*ils* pas été?

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Negatively.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Do thou not be.	*Have not been.*
Ne sois pas	N'aie pas été
ne soyons pas	n'ayons pas été
ne soyez pas	n'ayez pas été

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Negatively.

PRESENT *or* FUTURE.	PAST.
That I may not be, etc.	*That I may not have been, etc.*
Que je ne sois pas	Que je n'aie pas été
que tu ne sois pas	que tu n'aies pas été
qu'il ne soit pas	qu'il n'ait pas été
que nous ne soyons pas	que nous n'ayons pas été
que vous ne soyez pas	que vous n'ayez pas été
qu'ils ne soient pas	qu'ils n'aient pas été

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
That I might not be.	*That I might not have been.*
Que je ne fusse pas	Que je n'eusse pas été
que tu ne fusses pas	que tu n'eusses pas été
qu'il ne fût pas	qu'il n'eût pas été
que nous ne fussions pas	que nous n'eussions pas été
que vous ne fussiez pas	que vous n'eussiez pas été
qu'ils ne fussent pas	qu'ils n'eussent pas été

Models of Reflexive Verbs conjugated negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negative.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Negatively.

Ne pas se réjouir, *not to rejoice*	*ne pas* s'apercevoir, *not to perceive*	*ne pas* se perdre, *not to lose oneself*

PAST.

Ne pas s'être réjoui, *not to have rejoiced*	*ne pas* s'être aperçu, *not to have perceived*	*ne pas* s'être perdu, *not to have lost oneself*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Negatively.

Ne se réjou*issant pas*, *not rejoicing*	*ne* s'apercevant *pas*, *not perceiving*	*ne* se perdant *pas*, *not losing oneself*

PAST.

Réjoui, -ie, -is *or* -ies, *rejoiced*	aperçu, -ue, -us *or* -ues *perceived*	perdu, -ue, -us, *or* -ues, *lost*
ne s'étant *pas* réjoui, *not having rejoiced*	*ne* s'étant *pas* aperçu, *not having perceived*	*ne* s'étant *pas* perdu, *not having lost oneself*

FUTURE.

Ne devant *pas* se réjouir, *not about to rejoice*	*ne* devant *pas* s'apercevoir, *not about to perceive*	*ne* devant *pas* se perdre, *not about to lose oneself*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Negatively.	*Interrogatively.*	*Interrog. with a neg.*
I do not rejoice, etc.	*Do I perceive? etc.*	*Do I not lose myself?*
Je *ne* me réjouis *pas*	M'aperçois-je?	Est-ce que je *ne* me perds *pas*?
tu *ne* te réjouis *pas*	t'aperçois-tu?	*ne* te perds-tu *pas*?
il *ne* se réjouit *pas*	s'aperçoit-il?	*ne* se perd-il *pas*?
nous *ne* nous réjouissons *pas*	nous apercevons-nous?	*ne* nous perdons-nous *pas*?
vous *ne* vous réjouissez *pas*	vous apercevez-vous?	*ne* vous perdez-vous *pas*?
ils *ne* se réjouissent *pas*	s'aperçoivent-ils?	*ne* se perdent-ils *pas*?

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have not rejoiced, etc.	*Have I perceived? etc.*	*Have I not lost myself? etc.*
Je *ne* me suis *pas* réjoui	Me suis-je aperçu?	*Ne* me suis-je *pas* perdu?
tu *ne* t'es *pas* réjoui	t'es-tu aperçu?	*ne* t'es-tu *pas* perdu?
il *ne* s'est *pas* réjoui	s'est-il aperçu?	*ne* s'est-il *pas* perdu?
nous *ne* nous sommes *pas* réjouis	nous sommes-nous aperçus?	*ne* nous sommes-nous *pas* perdus?
vous *ne* vous êtes *pas* réjouis	vous êtes-vous aperçus?	*ne* vous êtes-vous *pas* perdus?
ils *ne* se sont *pas* réjouis	se sont-ils aperçus?	*ne* se sont-ils *pas* perdus?

IMPERFECT.

I was not rejoicing, etc.	*Was I perceiving? etc.*	*Was I not losing myself? etc.*
Je *ne* me réjouissais *pas*	M'apercevais-je?	*Ne* me perdais-je *pas*?
tu *ne* te réjouissais *pas*	t'apercevais-tu?	*ne* te perdais-tu *pas*?
il *ne* se réjouissait *pas*	s'apercevait-il?	*ne* se perdait-il *pas*?
nous *ne* nous réjouissions *pas*	nous apercevions nous?	*ne* nous perdions-nous *pas*?
vous *ne* vous réjouissiez *pas*	vous aperceviez-vous?	*ne* vous perdiez-vous *pas*?
ils *ne* se réjouissaient	s'apercevaient-ils?	*ne* se perdaient-ils *pas*?

PLUPERFECT.

I had not rejoiced, etc.	*Had I perceived? etc.*	*Had I not lost myself? etc.*
Je *ne* m'étais *pas* réjoui	M'étais-je aperçu?	*Ne* m'étais-je *pas* perdu?
tu *ne* t'étais *pas* réjoui	t'étais-tu aperçu?	*ne* t'étais-tu *pas* perdu?
il *ne* s'était *pas* réjoui	s'était-il aperçu?	*ne* s'était-il *pas* perdu?
nous *ne* nous étions *pas* réjouis	nous étions-nous aperçus?	*ne* nous étions-nous *pas* perdus?
vous *ne* vous étiez *pas* réjouis	vous étiez-vous aperçus?	*ne* vous étiez-vous *pas* perdus?
ils *ne* s'étaient *pas* réjouis	s'étaient-ils aperçus?	*ne* s'étaient-ils *pas* perdus?

PAST DEFINITE *or* PRETERITE.

I did not rejoice, etc.	*Did I perceive? etc.*	*Did I not lose myself? etc.*
Je *ne* me réjouis *pas*	M'aperçus-je?	*Ne* me perdis-je *pas*?
tu *ne* te réjouis *pas*	t'aperçus-tu?	*ne* te perdis-tu *pas*?
il *ne* se réjouit *pas*	s'aperçut-il?	*ne* se perdit-il *pas*?
nous *ne* nous réjouîmes *pas*	nous aperçûmes-nous?	*ne* nous perdîmes-nous *pas*?
vous *ne* vous réjouîtes	vous aperçûtes-vous?	*ne* vous perdîtes-vous
ils *ne* se réjouirent *pas*	s'aperçurent-ils?	*ne* se perdirent-ils *pas*?

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had not rejoiced, etc.	*Had I perceived? etc.*	*Had I not lost myself? etc.*
Je *ne* me fus *pas* réjoui	Me fus-je aperçu?	*Ne* me fus-je *pas* perdu?
tu *ne* te fus *pas* réjoui	te fus-tu aperçu?	*ne* te fus-tu *pas* perdu?
il *ne* se fut *pas* réjoui	se fut-il aperçu?	*ne* se fut-il *pas* perdu?
nous *ne* nous fûmes *pas* réjouis	nous fûmes-nous aperçus?	*ne* nous fûmes-nous *pas* perdus?
vous *ne* vous fûtes *pas* réjouis	vous fûtes-vous aperçus?	*ne* vous fûtes-vous *pas* perdus?
ils *ne* se furent *pas* réjouis	se furent-ils aperçus?	*ne* se furent-ils pas perdus?

FUTURE.

I shall not rejoice, etc.	*Shall I perceive? etc.*	*Shall I not lose myself? etc.*
Je *ne* me réjouirai *pas*	M'apercevrai-je?	*Ne* me perdrai-je *pas*?
tu *ne* te réjouiras *pas*	t'apercevras-tu?	*ne* te perdras-tu *pas*?
il *ne* se réjouira *pas*	s'apercevra-t-il?	*ne* se perdra-t-il *pas*?
nous *ne* nous réjouirons *pas*	nous apercevrons-nous?	*ne* nous perdrons-nous *pas*?
vous *ne* vous réjouirez *pas*	vous apercevrez-vous?	*ne* vous perdrez-vous *pas*?
ils *ne* se réjouiront *pas*	s'apercevront-ils?	*ne* se perdront-ils *pas*?

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall not have rejoiced, etc.	*Shall I have perceived? etc.*	*Shall I not have lost myself? etc.*
Je *ne* me serai *pas* réjoui	Me serai-je aperçu?	*Ne* me serai-je *pas* perdu?
tu *ne* te seras *pas* réjoui	te seras-tu aperçu?	*ne* te seras-tu *pas* perdu?
il *ne* se sera *pas* réjoui	se sera-t-il aperçu?	*ne* se sera-t-il *pas* perdu?
nous *ne* nous serons *pas* réjouis	nous serons-nous aperçus?	*ne* nous serons-nous *pas* perdus?
vous *ne* vous serez *pas* réjouis	vous serez-vous aperçus?	*ne* vous serez-vous *pas* perdus?
ils *ne* se seront *pas* réjouis	se seront-ils aperçus?	*ne* se seront-ils *pas* perdus?

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should not rejoice, etc.	*Should I perceive? etc.*	*Should I not lose myself? etc.*
Je *ne* me réjouirais *pas*	M'apercevrais-je?	*Ne* me perdrais-je *pas*?
tu *ne* te réjouirais *pas*	t'apercevrais-tu?	*ne* te perdrais-tu *pas*?
il *ne* se réjouirait *pas*	s'apercevrait-il?	*ne* se perdrait-il *pas*?
nous *ne* nous réjouirions *pas*	nous apercevrions-nous?	*ne* nous perdrions-nous *pas*?
vous *ne* vous réjouiriez *pas* [*pas*	vous apercevriez-vous?	*ne* vous perdriez-vous *pas*? [*pas*?
ils *ne* se réjouiraient	s'apercevraient-ils?	*ne* se perdraient-ils

PAST.

I should not have rejoiced, etc.	*Should I have perceived? etc.*	*Should I not have lost myself? etc.*
Je *ne* me serais *pas* réjoui	Me serais-je aperçu?	*Ne* me serais-je *pas* perdu? [du?
tu *ne* te serais *pas* réjoui	te serais-tu aperçu?	*ne* te serais-tu *pas* perdu?
il *ne* se serait *pas* réjoui	se serait-il aperçu?	*ne* se serait-il *pas* perdu?
nous *ne* nous serions *pas* réjouis	nous serions-nous aperçus?	*ne* nous serions-nous *pas* perdus?
vous *ne* vous seriez *pas* réjouis [réjouis	vous seriez-vous aperçus?	*ne* vous seriez-vous *pas* perdus? [perdus?
ils *ne* se seraient *pas*	se seraient-ils aperçus?	*ne* se seraient-ils *pas*
or	*or*	*or*
je *ne* me fusse *pas* réjoui	me fussé-je aperçu?	*ne* me fussé-je *pas* perdu? [du?
tu *ne* te fusses *pas* réjoui	te fusses-tu aperçu?	*ne* te fusses-tu *pas* perdu?
il *ne* se fût *pas* réjoui	se fût-il aperçu?	*ne* se fût-il *pas* perdu?
nous *ne* nous fussions *pas* réjouis	nous fussions-nous aperçus?	*ne* nous fussions-nous *pas* perdus?
vous *ne* vous fussiez *pas* réjouis	vous fussiez-vous aperçus?	*ne* vous fussiez-vous *pas* perdus?
ils *ne* se fussent *pas* réjouis	se fussent-ils aperçus?	*ne* se fussent-ils *pas* perdus?

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Negatively.

PRESENT.

Do not rejoice, etc.	*Do not perceive, etc.*	*Do not lose thyself, etc.*
Ne te réjouis *pas* [*pas*	*Ne* t'aperçois *pas* [*pas*	*Ne* te perds *pas*
Ne nous réjouissons	*Ne* nous apercevons	*Ne* nous perdons *pas*
Ne vous réjouissez *pas*	*Ne* vous apercevez *pas*	*Ne* vous perdez *pas*

PAST.

Have not rejoiced, etc.	*Have not perceived, etc.*	*Have not lost thyself, etc.*
Ne te sois *pas* réjoui	*Ne* te sois *pas* aperçu	*Ne* te sois *pas* perdu
Ne nous soyons *pas* réjouis [jouis	*Ne* nous soyons *pas* aperçus [perçus	*Ne* nous soyons *pas* perdus [dus
Ne vous soyez *pas* ré-	*Ne* vous soyez *pas* a-	*Ne* vous soyez *pas* per-

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Negatively.

PRESENT.

That I may not rejoice, etc.	*That I may not perceive, etc.*	*That I may not lose myself, etc.*
Que je *ne* me réjouisse *pas* [*pas*	Que je *ne* m'aperçoive *pas* [*pas*	Que je *ne* me perde *pas*
que tu *ne* te réjouisses	que tu *ne* t'aperçoives	que tu *ne* te perdes *pas*
qu'il *ne* se réjouisse *pas*	qu'il *ne* s'aperçoive *pas*	qu'il *ne* se perde *pas*
que nous *ne* nous réjouissions *pas*	que nous *ne* nous apercevions *pas*	que nous *ne* nous perdions *pas*
que vous *ne* vous réjouissiez *pas* [*pas*	que vous *ne* vous aperceviez *pas* [*pas*	que vous *ne* vous perdiez *pas*
qu'ils *ne* se réjouissent	qu'ils *ne* s'aperçoivent	qu'ils *ne* se perdent *pas*

PAST.

That I may not have rejoiced, etc.	*That I may not have perceived, etc.*	*That I may not have lost myself, etc.*
Que je *ne* me sois *pas* réjoui	Que je *ne* me sois *pas* aperçu	Que je *ne* me sois *pas* perdu
que tu *ne* te sois *pas* réjoui	que tu *ne* te sois *pas* aperçu	que tu *ne* te sois *pas* perdu
qu'il *ne* se soit *pas* réjoui	qu'il *ne* se soit *pas* aperçu	qu'il *ne* se soit *pas* perdu
que nous *ne* nous soyons *pas* réjouis	que nous *ne* nous soyons *pas* aperçus	que nous *ne* nous soyons *pas* perdus
que vous *ne* vous soyez *pas* réjouis	que vous *ne* vous soyez *pas* aperçus	que vous *ne* vous soyez *pas* perdus
qu'ils *ne* se soient *pas* réjouis	qu'ils *ne* se soient *pas* aperçus	qu'ils *ne* se soient *pas* perdus

IMPERFECT.

That I might not rejoice, etc.	*That I might not perceive, etc.*	*That I might not lose myself, etc.*
Que je *ne* me réjouisse *pas* [*pas*	Que je *ne* m'aperçusse *pas* [*pas*	Que je *ne* me perdisse *pas* [*pas*
que tu *ne* te réjouisses	que tu *ne* t'aperçusses	que tu *ne* te perdisses
qu'il *ne* se réjouît *pas*	qu'il *ne* s'aperçût *pas*	qu'il *ne* se perdît *pas*
que nous *ne* nous réjouissions *pas*	que nous *ne* nous aperçussions *pas*	que nous *ne* nous perdissions *pas*
que vous *ne* vous réjouissiez *pas*. [*pas*	que vous *ne* vous aperçussiez *pas* [*pas*	que vous *ne* vous perdissiez *pas* [*pas*
qu'ils *ne* se réjouissent	qu'ils *ne* s'aperçussent	qu'ils *ne* se perdissent

PLUPERFECT.

That I might not have rejoiced, etc.	*That I might not have perceived, etc.*	*That I might not have lost myself, etc.*
Que je *ne* me fusse *pas* réjoui	Que je *ne* me fusse *pas* aperçu	Que je *ne* me fusse *pas* perdu
que tu *ne* te fusses *pas* réjoui	que tu *ne* te fusses *pas* aperçu	que tu *ne* te fusses *pas* perdu
qu'il *ne* se fût *pas* réjoui	qu'il *ne* se fût *pas* aperçu	qu'il *ne* se fût *pas* perdu
que nous *ne* nous fussions *pas* réjouis	que nous *ne* nous fussions *pas* aperçus	que nous *ne* nous fussions *pas* perdus
que vous *ne* vous fussiez *pas* réjouis	que vous *ne* vous fussiez *pas* aperçus	que vous *ne* vous fussiez *pas* perdus
qu'ils *ne* se fussent *pas* réjouis	qu'ils *ne* se fussent *pas* aperçus	qu'ils *ne* se fussent *pas* perdus

INDEX

The numbers refer to the paragraphs when the word page is not expressed.

able (suffix), 73.
accents, 6, 20; tonic, 24.
active verbs, 134; used impersonally, 163.
ade (suffix), 40, 44.
adjective, 49; qualifying, 50; determinative, 50, 77; indefinite, 50, 84, 111; formation of fem. in, 52 and foll.; plural of, 62 and foll.; place of, 64A; formation of, 69 and foll.; derivative, 70 and foll.; agreement of, 74 and foll.; numeral, 78 and foll.; demonstrative, 82; possessive, 83; indefinite, 84, 111; interrogative. 107; used as adverb, 193.
adverb, 187; of place, 189; of time, 190; of manner, 191; how formed, 191, 192; adjectives used as, 193; comparison of, 194; where placed, 194; of quantity, 195; of interrogation, 196; of affirmation, 197; of negation, 198; of doubt, 199.
adverbial locutions, 200.
age (suffix), 40, 44.
aille (suffix), 42.
ain (suffix), 40, 71.
aller, 169; **s'en aller**, 169.
alphabet, 2.
ance (suffix), 44.
anti (prefix), 69.
apostrophe, 21.
après (prefix), 39.
Arabic words, Introd., 9.
archi (prefix), 69.
ard (suffix), 40, 73.
arrière (prefix), 39.
article, 45; definite, 46 and foll.; indefinite, 48; used in French when *some* or *any* is meant in English, 48.
as (suffix), 42.
asse (suffix), in verbs, 179.
at (suffix), 40.
âtre (suffix), 72.
aud (suffix), 72.
auxiliary verbs, 127, 132; with neuter verbs, 153; with reflexive verbs, 158.
avoir, 132; **y avoir**, page 117.
avant (prefix), 39.

Basque, Introd., 1.
bénir, 170.
bien (prefix), 69; adverb, 67, 195.
bis (prefix), 39.
Breton (Bas-), Introd. 1.
Burgundian, Introd., 1, 6.

cardinal adjectives, 79, 81.
Catalonian, Introd., 1.
ce, 100.
cedilla, 22.
Celtic, Introd., 1, 2, 4, 8.
celui qui, 98.
cer, verbs ending in, 167.
collective numbers, 81.
comparative in adjectives, 66; irregular, 67; in adverbs, 194.

complement, 113, 114; direct, 115; indirect, 116.
conditional mood, 121.
conjugation, 130, 131; first, page 82; second, page 86; third, page 89; fourth, page 93; interrogative, 136 and foll.; negative, 141; interrogative and negative, 142; passive, page 104; neuter, page 108; reflexive, page 111; impersonal, page 116; observations on first conj., 166 and foll.; on second conj., with imperfect in *issais*, 170; on 2nd (direct) conj., 171; irregular, page 117 and foll.; models of, page 167 and foll.
conjunction, 211 and foll.; government of, 216.
conjunctive locutions, 214.
consonants, 3, 11 and foll.
contre (prefix), 39.

defective verbs, 165.
demi (prefix), 69.
demonstrative, *see* adjective and pronoun.
derivative tenses, 147.
determinative, *see* adjective and pronoun.
devoir, 148.
dialects and patois, Introd., 6.
diæresis, 21.
diphthongs, 9, 10.

é, ée (suffix), 40, 71.
eau, elle (suffix), 42.
éger, verbs ending in, 166.
eler, verbs ending in, 166.
elet (suffix), 72.
en (pronoun), 92.
English words, Introd., 9.
entre (prefix), 39.
envoyer, 169.
er, ier (suffix), 40, 71.
esse (suffix), 40, 43.
et (suffix), 42, 72.
eter, verbs ending in, 166.
être, page 78; with neuter verbs, 153.
eur (suffix), 44.
eux (suffix), 71.

faire as auxiliary, 148; *see* bouillir.
feminine (formation of) in nouns, 30 and foll.; in adjectives, 52 and foll.
Flemish, Introd., 1.
fleurir, 170.
foreign words, Introd., 9, 10.
formation; see noun, adjective, tenses, verb, adverb.
French patois, Introd., 1; dialect, Introd., 1,; learned, Introd., 9, 10; popular, Introd. 8, 10.
future tense, 123, 126.

Gascon, Introd., 1, 7.
gender, 29; formation of fem. in nouns, 30 and foll.; in adjectives, 52 and foll.
ger, verbs ending in, 167.
German words, Introd., 8, 9.
grammar (definition), page 6.

haïr, 170.
he who = celui qui, 98.
hyphen, 23.

idiomatic tenses, 148.
ie (erie) (suffix), 40, 43.
if (suffix), 73.
imperative mood, 121.
imperfect tense, 125.
impersonal verbs, 161; their pronoun subject, 162; active or neuter verbs used as impersonal, 163.
in (prefix), 69; (suffix), 71.

indefinite, *see* adjective and pronoun.
indicative mood, 121.
infinitive mood, 121.
interjection, 217; how formed, 218.
interrogative, *see* adjective, pronoun, and conjugation.
irregular verbs, 165; 1st conj., 166 and foll.; 2nd conj. with imperfect in *issais*, 170; 2nd conj. (direct), 171; 3rd conj., 173; 4th conj., 175.
is (suffix), 44.
ise (suffix), 44.
ison (suffix), 44.
isseur (suffix), 44.
iste (suffix), 40.
Italian, Introd., 5.
Italian words, Introd., 9.

Languedocian, Introd., 1, 7.
Latin, popular, Introd., 3, 4, 5, 8; classical, Introd., 3, 9.
leur, 92.
Limousin, Introd., 1, 7.
locutions, adverbial, 200; prepositive, 203; how formed, 206; conjunctive, 214.
Lorrain, Introd., 1.

mal (prefix), 69.
ment (suffix), 44.
mi (prefix), 39.
moods, 121.

neuter verbs, 152; their auxiliary, 153; used impersonally, 163.
non (prefix), 39.
Norman, Introd., 1, 6.
noun, *see* substantive.
number, 31; formation of plur. in nouns, 32 and foll.; in adjectives, 62 and foll.; in verbs, 119.
numbers, 81.
numeral adjectives, 78, 81.

object, 113; direct, 115; indirect, 116.
Oc (langue d'), Introd., 5, 7.
Oïl (langue d'), Introd., 5, 7.
oir (suffix), 44.
on (suffix), 42, 44; in verbs, 179.
ordinal adjectives, 80, 81.
orthographic signs, 20.
ot (suffix), 42, 72; in verbs, 179.

participle, 183; present, 184 used as an adjective, 185.
passive verbs, 149 and foll.; the active or the reflexive used instead, 149, 160.
past anterior, 125.
past definite, 125.
past indefinite, 125.
past participle of passive verbs, 151; of neuter verbs, 154; of reflexive verbs, 159; used as an adjective, 186, rules of agreement, 186.
past tense, 123.
patois and dialects, Introd., 6.
periphrastic tenses, 148.
personal pronouns, *see* pronouns.
persons in verbs, 120.
Picard, Introd., 1, 6.
pluperfect, 125.
plural (formation of) in nouns, 32 and foll.; in adjectives, 62 and foll.
positive, 65.
possessive, how expressed in French, 48; *see* adjective and pronoun.
pouvoir, page 102, note.
prefixes, 39.
prepositions, 201 and foll.; how formed, 205; government of, 207, 210; their place, 208; repetition of, 209.

prepositive locutions, 203, 206.
present participle, 184; used as an adjective, 185.
present tense, 123.
preterite, *see* past.
primitive tenses, 147.
pronouns, 85; personal, 88; conjunctive, 89; where placed, 90, 91; disjunctive or emphatic, 93; used as subject, 94; used as object, 95; reflexive, 96; demonstrative, 97 and foll.; possessive, 101; relative, 102 and foll.; interrogative, 106 and foll.; indefinite, 109 and foll.
Provençal, Introd., 1, 7.

qualifying adjectives, *see* adjectives.
que, 104, 105, 106.
qui, 104, 106.

reflexive verbs, 155; how conjugated, 157; their auxiliary, 158; their past participle, 159; instead of the passive, 149, 160.
Romance language, Introd., 4, 8.

sans (prefix), 39.
some, translated by *du*, etc., 48.
sous (prefix), 39, 69.
Spanish, Introd., 5, 9.
speech, parts of, 25.
stem, 118.
subject, 113; agreement of verb with, 180 and foll.
subjunctive mood, 121.
substantive, 26 and foll.; formation of the fem., 29 and foll.; of the plural, 31 and foll.; formation of substantives, 37; derivative, 38; compound, 39; formed from adjectives, 43; from verbs, 44.
suffixes, 40; diminutive, 41, 42.
superlative, 68.
sur (prefix), 69.
syllable, 19; tonic, 24.
syllables, division of words into, 19.

té (suffix), 43.
tenses, 122; simple, 128; compound, 129; formation of, 143 and foll.; primitive and derivative, 147; idiomatic, 148.
termination (of verbs), 118.
trait d'union, 23.
tréma, 21.

u (suffix), 71.
ultra (prefix), 69.
ure (suffix), 43, 44.

venir de, 148.
Verb, 112; auxiliary, 127, 132; active, 134; passive, 149 and foll.; neuter, 152 and foll.; reflexive, 155 and foll.; impersonal, 161; irregular, 164; defective, 165; like *mener*, *celer*, *céder*, etc., 166; formation of, 177 and foll.; agreement with the subject, 180 and foll.
vice (prefix), 39.
vouloir, page 102, note.
vous, used for **tu**, 92.
vowels, 3 and foll.

y (pronoun), 92.
y avoir, page 117.
yer, verbs ending in, 168.

FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A

À, prep. *at, to*
a, v.a. avoir, (*page* 74)
abattement, s.m. *prostration*
abattre, v.a. *to cast down*
abolir, v.a. *to abolish*
abonnement, s.m. *subscription*
abonner (s') v.r. *to subscribe to*
aboucher, v.a. *to bring together*
aboutir, v.n. *to lead*
abreuver, v.a. *to water*
abreuvoir, s.m. *horse pond, watering-place*
abrutir, v.a. *to make a brute of, to stultify, to besot*
absoudre, v.a. *to absolve*
absurde, adj. *absurd*
absurdité, s.f. *absurdity*
acajou, s.m. *mahogany*
accablement, s.m. *despondency, dejection*
accabler, v.a. *to weigh down*
accident, s.m. *accident*
accompagner, v.a. *to accompany*
accomplir, v.a. *to accomplish*
accomplissement, s.m. *accomplishment, fulfilment*
accourir, v.n. *to run*
acheter, v.a. *to buy*
acheteur, s.m. *buyer, purchaser*
acide, adj. *acid*
acidité, s.f. *acidity*
acier, s.m. *steel*
aciérie, s.f. *steel works*
acolyte, s.m. *acolyte, clerk*
acquéreur, s.m. *buyer, purchaser*
acquérir, v.a. *to acquire*
acquitter (s'), v.r. *to perform*
âcre, adj. *acrid, sour*
âcreté, s.f. *acridity, sourness*
acteur, s.m. *actor*
actrice, s.f. *actress*
admirateur, -trice, s.m.f. *admirer*
admirer, v.a. *to admire*
adorateur, -trice, s.m.f. *worshipper, adorer*
adorer, v.a. *to adore, to worship*
adoucir, v.a. *to soften*
adresser (s'), v.r. *to apply, to address, to speak to*
affadir, v.a. *to make tasteless*
affaiblir, v.a. *to weaken*
affaire, s.f. *affair, business, difficulty*
affaissement, s.m. *sinking*
affaisser, v.a. *to sink*
affermir, v.a. *to strengthen*
africain, s.m. *African*
Afrique, s.f. *Africa*
âge, s.m. *age*
âgé, e, adj. *old, aged*
agencement, s.m. *arrangement*
agencer, v.a. *to dispose*
agile, adj. *nimble*
agilité, s.f. *nimbleness, agility*
agir, v.n. *to act*
agrandir, v.a. *to enlarge*
agrandissement, s.m. *enlargement*
aïeul, s.m. *grandfather, ancestor*
aigle, s.m. *eagle*
aiglon, s.m. *eaglet*
aigre, adj. *sour*
aigrelet, adj. *sourish*
aiguille, s.f. *needle*
aiguillon, s.m. *goad*
aile, s.f. *wing*
ailé, e, adj. *winged*
aileron, s.m. *pinion, fin*
aimable, adj. *kind, amiable, gentle*
aimant, aimé, aiment. Part. pres. ; part. past. ; ind. pr. of aimer
aimer, v.a. *to like, to love, to be fond of*
ainsi, adv. *thus, so*
aisément, adv. *easily, readily*
alarmer, v.a. *to alarm*
allée, s.f. *path, alley, going*
aller, v.n. *to go*
allure, s.f. *gait*
amaigrir, v.a. *to make thin*
amande, s.f. *almond*

amandier, s.m. *almond-tree*
ambition, s.f. *ambition*
amener, v.a. *to bring, to bring along*
américain, s.m. *American*
Amérique, s.f. *America*
ami, s.m. *friend*
amincir, v.a. *to make thin*
amiral, s.m. *admiral*
amollir, v.a. *to soften*
amollissement, s.m. *softening*
amusement, s.m. *amusement*
amuser, v.a. *to amuse*
amuser (s') v.r. *to amuse oneself*
analyse, s.f. *analysis, parsing, outline*
ancien, -ne, adj. *ancient*
ancienneté s.f. *antiquity, seniority*
ancrage, s.m. *anchorage*
ancre, s.f. *anchor*
âne, s.m. *ass*
ânon, s.m. *young ass*
Anglais, s.m. *Englishman, Briton*
annexion, s.f. *annexation*
antifébrile, adj. *antifebrile*
antimonarchique, adj. *anti-monarchical*
antireligieux, adj. *anti-religious*
antisocial, adj. *anti-social*
août, s.m. *August*
apaiser, v.a. *to appease, to calm, to soothe*
apercevoir, v.a. *to perceive, to see*
s'apercevoir, v.r. *to perceive oneself, to see each other*
s'apercevoir, v.r. [de], *to notice, to discover*
aperçu, s.m. *glimpse*
apostrophe, s.f. *apostrophe, address, reproach*
apostropher, v.a. *to apostrophize, to address (roughly)*
apôtre, s.m. *apostle*
appauvrir, v.a. *to impoverish*
appauvrissement, s.m. *impoverishment*
appel, s.m. *call*
appeler, v.a. *to call*
applaudir, v.a. *to applaud*
applaudissement, s.m. *applause*
appliquer (s'), v.r. *to apply oneself*
apporter, v.a. *to bring*
apprécier, v.a. *to value, to appreciate*
âpre, adj. *rough, sour, eager*
après, prep. *after*
après coup, loc. adv. *when too late, afterwards*
après-demain, loc. adv. *the day after to-morrow*
après-dîner s.m. *after dinner, evening*
après-midi, s.m.f. *afternoon*
âpreté, s.f. *roughness, tartness, eagerness*
arc, s.m. *arc*
arcade, s.f. *arcade*
archidiaconal, adj. *archidiaconal*
archiducal, adj. *archducal*
archiepiscopal, adj. *archiepiscopal*
archi fou, adj. *stark mad*
argent, s.m. *silver, money*
argenterie, s.f. *plate*
armée, s.f. *army*
arracher, v.a. *to tear*
arranger, v.a. *to put in order, to arrange*
arrérages, s.m. *arrears*
arrêt, s.m. *stoppage, decree*
arrêter, v.a. *to arrest*
arrière-boutique, s.f. *back-shop*
arrière-garde, s.f. *rear-guard, rear*
arrière-neveu, s.m. *grand-nephew*
arrière-pensée, s.f. *mental reservation*
arrière-saison, s.f. *latter end of the season, autumn, decline (of life)*
arrivée, s.f. *arrival*
arriver, v.n. *to arrive*
arroser, v.a. *to water*
arsenal, s.m. *arsenal*
art, s.m. *art*
artiste, s.m. *artist*
aspect, s.m. *aspect*
assassin, s.m. *murderer*
assassinat, s.m. *assassination, murder*
asseoir (s'), v.r. *to sit down*
asservir, v.a. *to enslave, to subdue*
assiégeant, s.m. *besieger*
assiéger, v.a. *to besiege*
assiette, s.f. *plate*
assiettée, s.f. *plateful*
assistance, s.f. *assistance*
assistant, s.m. *assistant, bystander*
assister, v.a.n. *to assist, to be present*
assortir, v.a. *to match, to sort, to suit*
s'attabler, v.r. *to sit at table*
attaquer, v.a. *to attack*
attendre, v.a. *to wait for, to expect*
s'attendre, v.r. *to expect*
attendrir, v.a. *to soften, to move*
attendu, prep. *considering*
attentif, adj. *attentive*
attention, s.f. *attention*
attirail, s.m. *implements, apparatus, train*
attitude, s.f. *attitude*
aubade, s.f. *morning-serenade*
aube, s.f. *dawn*
auberge, s.f. *inn*
aubergiste, s.m. *innkeeper*
aucun, -e, adj., *any, no, none*
aujourd'hui, adv. *to-day*

autre, adj. and pr. ind. *other*
autrui, pr. ind. *others, our neighbour*
Auvergnat, s.m. *native of Auvergne*
Auvergne, s.f. *Auvergne*
avancé, -e, adj. *advanced, forward, clear*
avancer, v.a.n. *to advance*
avant, prep. *before*
avantage, s.m. *advantage*
avant-coureur, s.m. *forerunner*
avant-goût, s.m. *foretaste*
avant-poste, s.m. *outpost*
avant-propos, s.m. *preface*
avertir, v.a. *to warn*
avide, adj. *greedy*
avidité, s.f. *greediness*
avis, s.m. *advice, opinion*
avoine, s.f. *oats*
avoir, v. aux. and act., *to have*
avoir, s.m. *property*

B

Bagatelle, s.f. *trifle*
baigner (se), v.a. *to bathe*
baigneur, -euse, s.m.f. *bather*
bail, s.m. *lease*
bâillement, s.m. *yawning*
bâiller, v.n. *to yawn*
baillon, s.m. *gag*
bal, s.m. *ball (dancing)*
balancer, v.a. *to balance*
balançoire, s.f. *swing, seesaw*
balayer, v.a. *to sweep*
balle, s.f. *ball*
ballon, s.m. *balloon*
ballot, s.m. *package*
balustrade, s.f. *railing*
balustre, s.f. *railing*
bambou, s.m. *bamboo*
banal, adj. *trite*
banalité s.f. *commonplace saying*
bandage, s.m. *bandage*
bande, s.f. *band*
bandelette, s.f. *bandelet*
bannir, v.a. *to banish, to exile*
barbare, adj. *barbarous,* s.m. *barbarian*
barbarie, s.f. *barbarity, rudeness*
barbe, s.f. *beard*
barbier, s.m. *barber*
barbouiller, v.a. *to besmear*
barbu, -e, adj. *bearded*
barbue, s.f. *brill*
barre, s.f. *bar, cross-bar*
barreau, s.m. (*small bar*), *grating*
bas, s.m. *stocking*
bassiner, v.a. *to warm*
bât, s.m. *pack-saddle*
bataille, s.f. *battle*
bâté, -e, adj. *pack saddled*; un âne bâté, *a downright ass*
bateau, s.m. *boat*
batelier, s.m. *boatman*
battant, -e, adj. porte battante, *slamming door*
battre, v.a. *to beat*
bavard, adj. *talkative*
baver, v.n. *to slobber*
beau, bel (m.), belle (f.), adj. *beautiful, handsome, fine*
beaucoup, adv. *much*
beauté, s.f. *beauty*
bellâtre, adj. *of insipid beauty*
bénir, v.a. *to bless*
berger, s.m. *shepherd*
bergerie, s.f. *fold*
Berlin, n.p. *Berlin*
beurre, s.m. *butter*
bible, s.f. *bible*
bibliothèque, s.f. *library, book-case*
bien, adv. *well, very, much, really*
bien, s.m. *goods, property, wealth*
bien-aimé, adj. *well-beloved, dearest*
bienfaisant, adj. *beneficent*
bienfaiteur, -rice, s.m.f. *benefactor* (m.), *benefactress* (f.)
bienheureux, -se, adj. *blessed*
bijou, -x, s.m. *jewel*
bijouterie, s.f. *jewellery*
billard, s.m. *billiards*
bille, s.f. *ball*
billet, s.m. *ticket*; billet de banque, *bank-note*
billot, s.m. *block, clog*
bisaïeul, s.m. *great-grandfather*
bissac, s.m. *wallet*
blâmer, v.a. *to blame*
blanc, -che, adj. *white*
blanchir, v.a. *to whiten*
blanchisseur, s.m. *bleacher*
blé, s.m. *corn, wheat*
blesser, v.a. *to wound*
blessure, s.f. *wound*
bleu, adj. *blue*
bleuir, v.n. *to become blue*
bocal, s.m. *glass jar, glass globe*
boire, v.a. *to drink*
boire, s.m. *drink, drinking*
bois, s.m. *wood*
boiserie, s.f. *wainscot*
boiteux, -se, adj. *lame, crippled*
bombarde, s.f. *bombard*
bombe, s.f. *bomb*
bon, adj. *good, kind*; les bons, *the good*
bord, s.m. *edge*
bordage, s.m. *planking*
border, v.a. *to hem*
bordure, s.f. *edging, border, frame*
bosse, s.f. *hump, hunch*
bossu, -e, adj. *hump-backed, hunch-backed*
botte, s.f. *boot*
bottier, s.m. *bootmaker*
bouche, s.f. *mouth*
bouchée, s.f. *mouthful*
boucher, s.m. *butcher*; boucherie, s.f. *butcher's shop*

boucher, v.a. *to stop*
bouchon, s.m. *cork, stopper*
boucle, s.f. *buckle, tie, ring*
bouffée, s.f. *puff*
bouffer, v.n. *to swell*
bouffir, v.n. *to swell out*
bouffissure, s.f. *swelling, bombast*
bouillir, v.n. *to boil* (*page* 121)
boulanger, s.m. *baker*
boulangerie, s.f. *bakery*
boule, s.f. *ball*
boulet, s.m. *cannon ball*
boulette, s.f. *ball* (*of bread or paper*), *pellet*
bourg, s.m. *borough, market-town*
bourgade, s.f. *small market-town, village*
bourrade, s.f. *blow* (*with the butt-end of a musket*)
bourre, s.f. *flock, wad*
bourse, s.f. *purse*
boursier, s.m. *bursar, treasurer, stock-jobber*
bouteille, s.f. *bottle*
boutique, s.f. *shop*
bracelet, s.m. *bracelet*
branchage, s.m. *branches, boughs*
branche, s.f. *branch*
branchu, -e, adj. *branched, branchy*
bras, s.m. *arm*
brigand, s.m. *brigand*
brigandage, s.m. *brigandage*
broche, s.f. *brooch*
brochette, s.f. *skewer*
broder, v.a. *to embroider*
brouillard, adj. *for blotting*; papier-brouillard, *blotting-paper*
brouiller, v.a. *to mix together, to upset*
brouillon, s.m. *rough draft, blunderer*
bruit, s.m. *noise, fame, rumour*
brume, s.f. *mist, fog*
brute, s.f. *brute*
brut, -e, *brutish*
bruyant, adj. *noisy* (*see* bruire, *p.* 134)
bûche, s.f. *log of wood*
bûcher, s.m. *log-house, stake*
bûcheron, s.m. *wood-cutter*
bûchette, s.f. *small log of wood*
bureau, s.m. *office*
but, s.m. *aim, end*

C

cache, s.f. *hiding-place*
cachette, s.f. *hiding-place*
cabine, s.f. *cabin*
cabinet, s.m. *cabinet, closet, study*
cacheter, v.a. *to seal*
cahier, s.m. *copy-book*
caillou, s.m. *flint, pebble*
caisse, s.f. *case*
caisson, s.m. *waggon*
camail, s.m. *camail: a mantle worn by a Catholic bishop*
camp, s.m. *camp*
campagnard, s.m. *countryman*
campagne, s.f. *country*
canal, s.m. *canal, channel*
canard, s.m. *duck*
canne, s.f. *cane, stick*
cannelle, s.f. *cinnamon*
capital, s.m. *main point, capital, stock*
capitaliste, s.m. *capitalist*
car, conj. *for*
caractère, s.m. *character, temper*
carafe, s.f. *flagon*
carafon, s.m. *decanter*
cardinal, s.m. *Cardinal*
cardinalat, s.m. *cardinalate*
carnaval, s.m. *carnival*
carpe, s.f. *carp*
carpillon, s.m. *little carp*
carrosse, s.m. *carriage*
carrossier, s.m. *carriage or coach maker*
cascade, s.f. *cascade, waterfall, fall*
cause, s.f. *cause*
cave, s.f. *cellar, wine vault*
caveau, s.m. *cellar, burial vault*
ce, cet (m.), cette (f.), ces, pl. adj.dem. *this, these, that, those*
ce, c', pr. dem. 1. *he, she, they*; 2. *it*; 3. expletive, ce qui, ce que, *what*
ceinture, s.f. *girdle*
ceinturon, s.m. *belt*
cela, pr. dem. *that*
céleste, adj. *heavenly, celestial*
celui (m.), celle (f.), ceux, celles, pl. pr. dem. subj. *he, she, one*; pl. *they or those*; obj. *him, her, the one*; pl. *those*
celui-ci (m.), celle-ci (f.), ceux-ci, celles-ci, (m.f.pl.) pr. dem. (*see page* 61)
celui-là (m.), celle-là (f.), ceux-là, celles-là (m.f.pl.), pr. dem. (*see page* 61)
cendre, s.f. *ashes*
cendrier, s.m. *fender*
cent, adj. num. *hundred*
centaine, s.f. *about a hundred*
cerise, s.f. *cherry*
cerisier, s.m. *cherry-tree*
certain, -e, adj. *sure, certain*; (ind.) *one, some*
cerveau, s.m. *brain*
cervelas, s.m. *saveloy*
chacal, s.m. *jackal*
chagrin, s.m. *sorrow*
chaîne, s.f. *chain*
chaînette, s.f. *little chain*
chaise, s.f. *chair, seat*
chaleur, s.f. *heat*
chambre, s.f. *room*
champ, s.m. *field*
chandelle, s.f. *candle*
change, s.m. *exchange, change*; lettre de change, *bill of exchange, bill*

chanoine, s.m. *canon, prebendary*
chanoinesse, s.f. *canoness*
chant, s.m. *song, singing*
chanter, v.a.n. *to sing*
chanteur, -euse, s.m.f. *singer*; cantatrice, *a professional singer*
chantonner, v.n. *to hum*
chape, s.f. *cope*
chapeau, s.m. *hat*
chaperon, s.m. *hood, chaperon*
chaque, adj. ind. *each*
charger, v.a. *to load*
charitable, adj. *charitable*
Charles, s.m. *Charles*
Charlot, s.m. *Charlie*
charmant, adj. *charming, delightful*
charrue, s.f. *plough*
chasse, s.f. *hunting*
châsse, s.f. *shrine*
chasseur, s.m. *hunter, sportsman*
châtaigne, s.f. *chestnut*
châtaignier, s.m. *chestnut-tree*
châtelain, -e, adj.; le seigneur châtelain, *the lord of the manor*; la dame châtelaine, *the lady of the manor*; chaîne châtelaine, *or* châtelaine, *chain*
châtelet, s.m. *little castle*
chaumière, s.f. *cottage*
chausser, v.a. *to shoe*
chaussure, s.f. *boots, shoes*
chemin, s.m. *way, road*
chemise, s.f. *shirt*
cher, adj. *dear*, (adv.) *dear, dearly*
cheval, s.m. *horse*
chevalier, s.m. *knight*
chevelure, s.f. *hair*
chèvre, s.f. *goat*
chevreau, s.m. *kid*
chez, prep. *at* or *to the house of*; allons chez moi, chez vous, *let us go home*
chien, s.m. *dog*
chimère, s.f. *idle dream*
chimie, s.f. *chemistry*
chimiste, s.m. *chemist*
chômer, v.n. *to be without work*
chômage, s.m. *want of work, rest*
chœur, s.m. *chorus, choir*
choisir, v.a. *to choose, to select*
chose, s.f. *thing*
chrétien,-ne, adj. *Christian*
chrétienté, s.f. *Christendom*
chute, s.f. *fall*
ci, adv. *here*; ci-gît, *here lies*
cible, s.f. *target*
cinquante, adj. num. *fifty*
cinquantaine, s.f. *about fifty*
circonstance, s.f. *circumstance*
cirer, v.a. *to wax, to black (shoes), to polish*
citoyen, s.m. *citizen*
citron, s.m. *citron, lemon*
citronelle, s.f. *balm*
clairement, adv. *clearly*
cligner, v.a. *to half-close (the eyes), to wink*
clignoter, v.n. *to wink (repeatedly)*
cliqueter, v.n. *to clack*
cliquetis, s.m. *din, clang*
cloche, s.f. *bell*
clocher, s.m. *bell-tower, steeple*
cœur, s.m. *heart*
coffre, s.m. *coffer*
coffret, s.m. *little coffer*
colère, s.f. *anger*
colline, s.f. *hill*
colombe, s.f. *dove*
colombier, s.m. *dovecot*
colonel, s.m. *colonel*
colonnade, s.f. *colonnade*
colonne, s.f. *column*
colorer, v.a. *to colour*
coloris, s.m. *colouring*
combattant, s.m. *combatant*
combattre, v.a. *to combat*
combinaison, s.f. *combination*
combiner, v.a. *to combine*
comédien, s.m. *comedian, actor*
commandant, s.m. *commander*
commander, v.a.n. *to command*
comme, adv. *how*
comme, conj. *as*
comment, adv. *how*
commerçant, s.m. *trader*
commercer, v.n. *to trade*
compagnie, s.f. *company, society*
comparable, adj. *comparable*
comparaison, s.f. *comparison*
comparer, v.a. *to compare*
compatir, v.n. *to sympathise (with)*
complet, -ète, adj. *complete*
compliment, s.m. *compliment, congratulation*
complot, s.m. *plot*
composer (se), v.r. *to be composed*
comprendre, v.a. *to understand, to comprehend*
compromettre (se), v.r. *to compromise oneself*
compte, s.m. *account*
compter, v.a. *to reckon*
compteur, s.m. *meter (gas)*
comte, s.m. *Count, Earl*
comté, s.m. *earldom, county*
comtesse, s.f. *Countess*
concert, s.m. *concert*
concevoir, v.a. *to conceive, to understand, to have an idea of*
concourir, v.n. (à), *to concur (in)*; concourir pour, *to compete for*
condamner, v.a. *to condemn*

condescendre, v.n. *to condescend*
conducteur, -trice, s.m.f. *conductor, guide, driver*
conduire, v.a. *to lead*
conduite, s.f. *conduct, behaviour*
confiance, s.f. *confidence, trust*
confier, v.a. *to intrust*
confondre, v.a. *to confound, to mistake for*; se confondre, *to be blended*; se confondre en excuses, *to be lost in apologies*
conjugaison, s.f. *conjugation*
conjuguer, v.a. *to conjugate*
connaître, v.a. *to know*
conquérant, s.m. *conqueror*
conquérir, v.a. *to conquer*
conscience, s.f. *conscience*
consentir, v.n. *to consent*
conséquence, s.f. *consequence*
consoler, v.a. *to console*
consul, s.m. *consul*
consulat, s.m. *consulate*
contenir, v.a. *to contain*
contenter, v.a. *to content*
contenu, s.m. *contents*
continuel, -le, adj. *continual*
contre, prep. *against*
contre-amiral, s.m. *rear-admiral*
contre-coup, s.m. *rebound, consequence*
contre-maître, s.m. *foreman*
contre-marque, s.f. *countermark, check*
contre-sens, s.m. *mistranslation*
contrecarrer, v.a. *to thwart*
contredire, v.a. *to contradict*
contrefaire, v.a. *to imitate*
convenance, s.f. *fitness*, pl. *propriety*; manquer aux convenances, *to be guilty of impropriety*
convenir, v.n. *to agree to, to fit*
convoi, s.m. *funeral convoy, train*
copie, s.f. *copy*
copiste, s.m. *copyist*
coquet, -te, adj. *coquettish, elegant*
coquetterie, s.f. *coquetry, flirtation*
coquillage, s.m. *shell-fish*
coquille, s.f. *shell*
corail, s.m. *coral*
cordage, s.m. *cordage, rope*
corde, s.f. *cord, rope*
cordeau, s.m. *cord*
corder, v.a. *to cord*
corderie, s.f. *rope-making*
cordier, s.m. *rope-maker*
cordon, s.m. *string*
correctement, adv. *correctly*
côte, s.f. *rib, cost*
côtelette, s.f. *cutlet, chop*
cotillon, s.m. *under-petticoat*
cotte, s.f. *petticoat*
couleur, s.f. *colour*
coup, s.m. *blow, stroke, knock*; tout à coup, *all at once*
coupable, adj. *guilty*
couper, v.a. *to cut*
couple, s.m. *couple*
couplet, s.m. *verse (of a song)*
coupon, s.m. *coupon*
coupure, s.f. *cut*
courage, s.m. *courage*
courageux, -se, adj. *courageous*
coureur, s.m. *runner*
court, adj. *short*
cousin, s.m. *cousin*
coussin, s.m. *cushion*
coussinet, s.m. *little cushion*
couteau, s.m. *knife*
coutelier, s.m. *cutler*
couvée, s.f. *brood*
couver, v.a. *to hatch*
cracher, v.n. *to spit*
crachoir, s.m. *spittoon*
craignez, v.a. (*see* craindre, p. 136)
craindre, v.a. *to fear*
crainte, s.f. *fear*
cravate, s.f. *cravat, necktie*
crayon, s.m. *pencil*
crédule, adj. *credulous*
crédulité, s.f. *credulity*
cri, s.m. *cry*
crier, v.n. *to cry*
cristal, s.m. *crystal*
critiquer, v.a. *to criticise*
croc, s.m. *hook*
crochet, s.m. *little hook*
croire, v.a.n. *to believe*
crois, croit, ind. pres. of croire
croisée, s.f. *window*
croître, v.n. *to grow*
croix, s.f. *cross*; croisillon, *cross-bar*
croquer, v.a. *to crunch, to sketch*
croquis, s.m. *sketch*
croûte, s.f. *crust*
croyance, s.f. *belief*
croyant, v.a., part. pres. of croire
croyant, s.m. *believer*
croyez, imp. of croire
cru, v., part. past of croire
cru, adj. *raw, crude*
crû, v., part. past. of croître
crû, s.m. *growth, growing*
cruauté, s.f. *cruelty*
cruel, -le, adj. *cruel, unkind*
cueillir, v.a. *to gather, to pluck*
cuiller, s.f. *spoon*
cuillerée, s.f. *spoonful*
cuir, s.m. *leather*
cuisine, s.f. *kitchen*
cuisinier, s.m. *cook*
cyprès, s.m. *cypress*

D

dame, s.f. *lady*
dame, int. *indeed, well*
danger, s.m. *danger*
dans, prep. *in, into*
danser, v.a.n. *to dance*
danseur, -se, s.m.f. *dancer*
de, prep. *of*
de, art., indef. (instead of du, de la, des), *some, any*
déballer, v.a. *to unpack*
débat, s.m. *debate*
débattre, v.a. *to discuss*
débitant, s.m. *retailer*
débiter, v.a. *to retail*
débrouiller, v.a. *to unravel*
début, s.m. *beginning*
débuter, v.n. *to begin*
décacheter, v.a. *to open (a letter)*
décevoir, v.a. *to deceive*
décider, v.a. *to decide*
se décider, v.r. *to come to a decision, to make up one's mind*
déclarer, v.a. *to declare*
déclinaison, s.f. *declension*
décliner, v.a. *to decline*
défaillir, v.n. *to fail, to decay, to faint*
défaire, v.a. *to undo, to defeat, to rout*
défaut, s.m. *defect, fault*
défendeur, s.m. -eresse, s.f. *defendant*
défendre, v.a. *to forbid, to defend*
défiant, adj. *distrustful*
définir, v.a. *to define*
dégât, s.m. *damage, waste*
dégrader (se), v.r. *to degrade or disgrace one's self*
déjeuner, v.n. *to breakfast*
déjeuner, s.m. *breakfast*
délateur, s.m. délatrice, f. *informer*
délicieux, -se, adj. *delicious*
délivrance, s.f. *deliverance*
délivrer, v.a. *to deliver*
demain, adv. *to-morrow*
demande, s.f. *request, question*
demander, v.a. *to ask*
démarche s.f. *step, proceeding*
demeure, s.f. *abode, dwelling*
demeurer, v.n. *to live, to remain, to stay*
demi-fermé, adj. *half-closed, partly closed*
demi-fin, adj. *half-fine*
demi-mort, adj. *half-dead*
demi-nu, adj. *half-naked*
démolir, v.a. *to demolish, to pull down*
dent, s.f. *tooth*
dentelle, s.f. *lace*
dentier, s.m. *set of teeth*
dentiste, s.m. *dentist*
dénué, -e, adj. *destitute, devoid*
dépêcher (se), v.r. *to hasten*
dépendance, s.f. *dependence*
dépendre, v.n. *to depend*
dépens, s.m.pl. *expense, cost, charge*; à mes dépens, *at my expense*
dépenser, v.a. *to spend*
déplaire, v.n. *to displease*
déranger, v.a. *to disturb*
des, art. pl. *of the, of*; *from the, from*; *some, any*
désir, s.m. *desire, wish*
désirer, v.a. *to desire, to wish for*
désobéir, v.n. *to disobey*
dessein, s.m. *design, project*
dessin, s.m. *drawing*
détail, s.m. *detail*, pl. *details, particulars*
détourner (se), v.r. *to go out of one's way, to turn away*
détromper, v.a. *to undeceive*
détruire, v.a. *to destroy*
deuil, s.m. *mourning*
deux, adj. card. *two*
dévoiler, v.a. *to reveal*
devoir, v.a. *to owe*
devoir, s.m. *duty*
diable, s.m. *devil*
diaconal, -e, adj. *diaconal*
dictionnaire, s.m. *dictionary*
Dieu, s.m. *God*
différent, adj. *different, various*
différer, v.a. *to defer, to postpone*
dimanche, s.m. *Sunday*
dinde, s.f. *turkey-hen*
dindon, s.m. *turkey*
dîner, v.n. *to dine*
dîner, s.m. *dinner*
diocésain, s.m. *diocesan*
diocèse, s.m. *diocese*
dire, v.a. *to say*
dire, s.m. *saying, statement*
directeur, s.m. *director, manager*
directrice, s.f. *directress*
discret, -ète, adj. *discreet*
discrétion, s.f. *discretion*
discuter, v.a. *to discuss*
disent, dit, dites, v.a. (from dire, p. 137)
disparaître, v.n. *to disappear*
diviser, v.a. *to divide*
diviseur, s.m. *divisor*
dix, adj.n. *ten*
dizaine, s.f. *about ten*
docile, adj. *docile*
docilité, s.f. *docility*
doigt, s.m. *finger*
doigté, s.m. *fingering*
domestique, s.m.f. *man-servant*; *woman-servant*

donner, v.a. *to give*; donner la parole, *to give leave to speak*
dont, pr. relat. *whose, of* or *from whom, of* or *from which*
dorénavant, adv. *henceforth*
dormir, v.n. *to sleep*
douane, s.f. *custom-house*
douanier, s.m. *custom-house officer*
douceâtre, adj. *sweetish, insipidly sweet*
doux, -ce, adj. *sweet, fresh, soft, mild*
douzaine, s.f. *about twelve, a dozen*
douze, adj. num. *twelve*
droit, adj. *straight, right*; s.m. *duty*
drôle, adj. *droll, funny*
drôlerie, s.f. *drollery*
du, art. (instead of de le), *of the, of*; *from the, from*; *some, any*
dû, s.m. *due*
ducal, adj. *ducal*
dur, adj. *hard*
dureté, s.f. *hardness*

E

Eau, s.f. *water*
ébarber, v.a. *to strip (quills)*
ébène, s.f. *ebony*
ébénier, s.m. *ebony-tree*
ébéniste, s.m. *cabinet-maker*
ébénisterie, s.f. *cabinet-making*
éblouir, v.a. *to dazzle*
échafaud, s.m. *scaffold*
échafaudage, s.m. *scaffolding*
échappée, s.f. *vista, prank*
échapper, v.n. *to escape*
échoir, v.n. *to fall, to befall, to fall due*
éclaircir, v.a. *to enlighten*
éclaircissement, s.m. *explanation*
école, s.f. *school*
écolier, s.m. *schoolboy*
économat, s.m. *stewardship*
économe, adj. *thrifty, saving*
économe, s.m. *steward*
écrire, v.a. *to write*
écrit, s.m. *writing*
écriteau, s.m. *bill, board*
écrivain, s.m. *writer*
écrivassier, s.m. *scribbler*
écueil, s.m. *rock, reef*
écuelle, s.f. *bowl*
écuellée, s.f. *bowlful*
écureuil, s.m. *squirrel*
édenté, adj. *toothless*
édifice, s.m. *edifice*
effacer, v.a. *to efface*
effet, s.m. *effect*
égal, adj. *equal*
égarer (s'), v.r. *to lose one's self, to go astray*
église, s.f. *church*
élargir, v.a. *to enlarge, to widen*
élargissure, s.f. *piece put in to widen*
élégant, adj. *elegant*
élève, s. m.f. *pupil*
élever, v.a. *to raise*
élire, v.a. *to elect*
élu, s.m. *elect*
émail, s.m. *enamel*
emballer, v.a. *to pack up*
embarras, s.m. *encumbrance, trouble*
emboucher, v.a. *to put (a wind instrument) to one's mouth*
embouchure, s.f. *mouth of a river*
embrassade, s.f. *embrace*
embrasser, v.a. *to embrace*
émigrant, s.m. *emigrant*
émigrer, v.n. *to emigrate*
émouvoir, v.a. *to move*
empresser (s'), v.r. *to hasten*
en, prep. *in, into*
en, adv. *from thence*
en, pr.pers. (*page* 57)
enchanteresse, s.f. *enchantress*
enchanteur, s.m. *enchanter*
enchérir, v.a. *to raise (prices)*
enchérisseur, s.m. *bidder*
encore, adv. *still, yet, again*
encre, s.f. *ink*
encrier, s.m. *inkstand*
endenté, adj. *with teeth*
énergique, adj. *energetic*
enfant, s.m. *infant, baby, child*
enfantin, adj. *childish*
enfilade, s.f., *suite of rooms, long string*
enfiler, v.a. *to thread*
enjambée, s.f. *stride*
enjamber, v.a. *to stride*
enjoindre, v.a. *to enjoin, to direct*
ennemi, s.m. *enemy, foe*
ennui, s.m. *wearisomeness, care*
énoncer, v.a. *to express*; s'énoncer, *to express oneself, to be expressed*
enorgueillir (s'), v.r. *to boast*
enquérir (s'), v.r. *to inquire*
enrhumer (s'), v.r. *to catch a cold*
enrichir, v.a. *to enrich*
entablement, s.m. *entablature*
entendre, v.a.n. *to hear, to understand*
entêté, adj. *obstinate*
entrecôte, s.m. *meat between the ribs*
entrée, s.f. *entrance*
entrelarder, v.a. *to interlard*
entremets, s.m. *side-dish*
entremettre (s'), v.r. *to interpose*
entrepont, s.m. *between decks*
entreprendre, v.a. *to undertake*

entreprise, s.f. *enterprise, undertaking*
entrer, v.n. *to enter*
entresol, s.m. *mezzanine*
envahir, v.a. *to invade*
envers, prep. *towards, to*
envi (à l'), adv. *in emulation of each other, vying with each other*
envie, s.f. *envy, wish, longing*
envoyer, v.a. *to send*
épais, -se, adj. *thick*
épanchement, s.m. *discharge, overflow,* (fig.) *overflow, outburst*
épancher, v.a. *to pour out,* (fig.) *to vent, to discharge*
épée, s.f. *sword*
épiscopal, adj. *episcopal*
épître, s.f. *epistle*
équestre, adj. *equestrian*
équivaloir, v.n. *to be equivalent, to be tantamount*
ermitage, s.m. *hermitage*
ermite, s.m. *hermit*
erreur, s.f. *error, mistake*
esclavage, s.m. *slavery*
esclave, s.m.f. *slave*
espérance, s.f. *hope*
espiègle, adj. *frolicsome*
espiéglerie, s.f. *frolic*
esprit, s.m., *wit*; avoir de l'esprit, *to be witty*
esquiver (s'), v.r. *to steal away*
essentiel, -le, adj. *essential*
estime, s.f. *esteem*
estimer, v.a. *to esteem*
établir, v.a. *to establish*
établissement, s.m. *establishment*
été, s.m. *summer*
éteindre, v.a. *to extinguish, to put out*
étendre, v.a. *to extend*
étendue, s.f. *extent*
étoile, s.f. *star*
étranger,-ère, adj. *foreign*
étroit, adj. *narrow, light*
européen, adj. *European*
éventail, s.m. *fan*
éviter, v.a. *to avoid*
excellent, adj. *excellent*
excès, s.m. *excess, abuse*
excuse, s.f. *excuse, apology*
exemple, s.m. *example*
exhaler, v.a. *to exhale, to emit*
exigeant, adj. *particular, unreasonable*
exiger, v.a. *to exact, to require*
exigu, -üe, adj. *small, slender, slight*
expédient, adj. *expedient, advisable*
expédient, s.m. *expedient, device*
expédient, v.a. from expédier, *to despatch*
exposer, v.a. *to dispose*
exprès, -esse, adj. *express*
exprès, adv. *purposely*
express, s.m. *express, courier*
expressément, adv. *expressly*
externat, s.m. *day-school*
externe, s.m. *day-pupil*

F

Façade, s.f. *front (of a building)*
face, s.f. *face*
facette, s.f. *facet*
fâcher (se), v.r. *to get angry*
facile, adj. *easy*
facilité, s.f. *facility, ease*
façon, s.f. *fashion, way*
fade, adj. *tasteless*
faible, adj. *weak, feeble*
faiblesse, s.f. *weakness, feebleness*
fainéant, adj. *idle, lazy*
fainéantise, s.f. *idleness, laziness*
faire, v.a.n. *to do, to make, to cause*
falloir, v. imp. *to be necessary*
famille, s.f. *family*
fatal, adj. *fatal*
fatiguer (se), v.r. *to fatigue* or *to tire oneself*
faucheur,-euse, s.m.f. *mower*; (fem.) *a mowing machine*
faute, s.f. *fault, mistake*
fauteuil, s.m. *arm-chair*
favorable, adj. *favourable*
favori, -te, adj. *favourite*
fébrile, adj. *febrile*
félon, adj. *felonious*
félonie, s.f. *treason*
fendre, v.a. *to split*; fendre la presse, *to squeeze through the throng*
fermage, s.m. *rent (of a farm)*
ferme, s.f. *farm*
ferme, adj. *firm*
fermer, v.a. *to close*
fermeté, s.f. *firmness*
fermier, s.m. *farmer*
fermoir, s.m. *clasp*
féroce, adj. *fierce, ferocious*
ferrer, v.a. *to put iron to, to shoe (a horse)*
ferrure, s.f. *iron-work*
festin, s.m. *feast, banquet*
fête, s.f. *feast, festival*
feu, s.m. *fire*
feuillage, s.m. *foliage*
feuille, s.f. *leaf*
feuillet, s.m. *leaflet*
fidèle, adj. *faithful*
fier, adj. *proud*
fier (se), v.r. (à, sur, en) *to trust, to confide (in), to rely (on)*
figure, s.f. *figure, face*
fil, s.m. *thread*
filasse, s.f. *tow*
fille, s.f. *daughter, child, girl*
filleul, s.m. *godson, godchild*
fils, s.m. *son, boy*
fin, adj. *fine, sharp, shrewd*

finaud, adj. *artful, cunning*
finir, v.a. *to finish, to end*
flâner, v.n. *to lounge*
flâneur, s.m. *lounger*
flatteur, -se, s.m.f. *flatterer*, adj. *flattering*
flétrir (se), v.r. *to wither*
flétrissure, s.f. *withering, disgrace*
fleur, s.f. *flower*
fleurir, v.n. *to blossom, to flourish*
fleuriste, s.m.f. *flower-seller, flower-maker, flower-gardener, florist*
fonction, s.f. *duty, function*
fondateur, -trice, s.m.f. *founder*
fondement, s.m. *foundation*
fondre, v.a. *to melt*
forêt, s.f. *forest*
format, s.m. *size (of a book)*
forme, s.f. *shape, mould*
fortune, s.f. *fortune, wealth*
fou, fol, folle, adj. *mad, foolish*; follet, -te, *playful, foolish*
foudre, s.f. *lightning, thunder, thunderbolt*
foudroyant, adj. *thundering, thunder-striking*
fouet, s.m. *whip*
fourbe, s.m. *knave, cheat*
fourberie, s.f. *knavery*
fourche, s.f. *pitchfork*
fourchette, s.f. *fork*
fournir, v.a. *to furnish*
fournisseur, s.m. *purveyor*
frais, fraîche, adj. *fresh, cool*
franc, -che, adj. *free, frank*
Français, s.m. *Frenchman*
franchise, s.f. *freedom, frankness, franchise*
fraude, s.f. *fraud, deceit*
frémir, v.n. *to shudder, to quiver*
frémissement, s.m. *shudder, thrill*
fréquenter, v.a. *to frequent*
frère, s.m. *brother*
frivole, adj. *frivolous*
froment, s.m. *wheat*
fruiterie, s.f. *fruitery*
fuir, v.a.n. *to flee, to fly*
fumée, s.f. *smoke*
fumer, v.a. *to smoke*
fusil, s.m. *gun*
fusillade, s.f. *firing, volley of musketry*
fût, s.m. *cask*
futaille, s.f. *small cask*
fuyard, adj. *fugitive*

G

Gâcher, v.a. *to mix (mortar), to make a mess of*
gâchis, s.m. *mess*
gagner, v.a. *to gain, to win*
gai, -e, adj. *gay*
galop, s.m. *gallop*
galoper, v.n. *to gallop*
garçon, s.m. *boy, servant, waiter, bachelor*
garde, s.f. *guard*; se tenir sur ses gardes, *to be on one's guard*
garde, s.m. *guard, guardian*
garder, v.a. *to keep, to guard*
gardien, s.m. *keeper, guardian*
garnir, v.a. *to fill, to trim*
garnison, s.f. *garrison*
Gascogne, s.f. *Gascony*
gascon, s.m. and adj. *Gascon*
gâteau, s.m. *cake*
géant, s.m. *giant*
gémir, v.n. *to groan, to lament*
gendarme, s.m. *gendarme*
gendarmerie, s.f. *gendarmery*
gêne, s.f *trouble, uneasiness*
général, s.m. *general*
généreux, -se, adj. *generous*
générosité, s.f. *generosity*
gens, s.m. *folks, persons, men*; les jeunes gens, *young people*
gésir, v.n. *to lie*
gibier, s.m. *game*
glace, s.f. *ice*
glaçon, s.m. *icicle*
glissade, s.f. *slip*
glisser, v.n. *to glide, to slip*
golfe, s.m. *gulf*
gomme, s.f. *gum*
gommier, s.m. *gum-tree*
gorgée, s.f. *mouthful (of a liquid), draught*
gorger, v.a. *to gorge, to glut*
gourmand, -e, adj. *greedy*
goût, s.m. *taste*
goûter, v.a. *to taste*
goûter, s.m. *lunch*
goutte, s.f. *drop*
gouttelette, s.f. *little drop*
gouvernail, s.m. *rudder, helm*
grammaire, s.f. *grammar*
grand, -e, adj. *great, large, wide*
graver, v.a. *to engrave*
gravir, v.a. *to ascend, to climb*
gravure, s.f. *engraving*
grec, -que, adj. *Greek*
grenade, s.f. *pomegranate, grenade*
grenadier, s.m. *pomegranate-tree, grenadier*
griffer, v.a. *to claw, to scratch*
griffonner, v.n. *to scribble*
grillade, s.f. *broiled meat*
grillage, s.m. *wire-work*
grille, s.f. *grating, railing*
griller, v.a. *to broil*
grogner, v.n. *to grumble*
grognon, s.m. *grumbler*
gros, -se, adj. *big*
groseille, s.f. *currant*

groseillier, s.m. *currant-tree*
grossir, v.n. *to become big*
guérir, v.a. *to cure*
guérison, s.f. *recovery*
guerre, s.f. *war*
guerrier, s.m. *warrior*
guêtre, s.f. *gaiter*
guide, s.m. *guide*
guidon, s.m. *guidon, sight of a gun, flag, cornet*
Guillaume, s.p.m. *William*

H

Habile, adj. *clever, skilful, able*
habiller, v.a. *to dress*; s'habiller, *to dress oneself*
habit, s.m. *clothes, coat, dress-coat*
habitant, s.m. *inhabitant*
habitation, s.f. *habitation, abode*
habiter, v.a.n. *to inhabit*
habituer (s'), v.r. *to accustom oneself*
hache, s.f. *axe, hatchet*
hacher, v.a. *to mince*
hachis, s.m. *hash*
hagard, adj. *haggard, wild*
haie, s.f. *hedge, row, line*
haine, s.f. *hatred*
haïr, v.a. *to hate*
hardi, adj. *bold*
hardiesse, s.f. *boldness*
hasard, s.m. *chance, hazard*
haut, adj. *high*
hautesse, s.f. *highness*
hélas! int. *alas! ah!*
hennir, v.n. *to neigh*
herbage, s.m. *herbage*
herbe, s.f. *herb*
héritier, s.m. *heir*
heur, s.m. *luck*
heure, s.f. *hour*
heureux, -se, adj. *happy, lucky, fortunate*
hibou, s.m. *owl*
hier, adv. *yesterday*
histoire, s.f. *history*
hiver, s.m. *winter*
hommage, s.m. *homage*
homme, s.m. *man*
honnête, adj. *honest*
honnêteté, s.f. *honesty*
honteux, -se, adj. *ashamed, shameful*
horloge, s.f. *clock*
horloger, s.m. *clock-maker*
hors, prep. *out*
hospitalier, adj. *hospitable*
hôte, s.m. *host*
houille, s.f. *coal*
houiller, adj. *coal-bearing*; bassin houiller, *coal-basin*
huile, s.f. *oil*
huilier, s.m. *oil-cruet*
huit, adj.num. *eight*
huitaine, s.f. *about eight, a week*
humilier, v.a. *to humble*

I

Ici, adv. *here*
île, s.f. *island*
îlot, s.m. *islet*
imaginer (s'), v.r. *to imagine*
immense, adj. *immense*
immensité, s.f. *immensity*
impatient, adj. *impatient*
impertinence, s.f. *impertinence*
importance, s.f. *importance*
impôt, s.m. *tax*
imprimer, v.a. *to print*
imprudemment, adv. *imprudently*
impunément, adv. *with impunity*
incendie, s.m. *fire, conflagration*
inconstant, adj. *inconstant, unsettled*
indifférent, adj. *indifferent*
infirme, adj. *infirm*
infirmerie, s.f. *infirmary*
inflexible, adj. *inflexible*
ingénieux, -se, adj. *ingenious, clever*
ingrat, adj. *ungrateful*
inquiet, -ète, adj. *uneasy*
insensible, adj. *insensible, unfeeling*
insignifiant, adj. *insignificant*
instituteur, s.m. *founder, tutor, schoolmaster*
institutrice, s.f. *governess, school-mistress*
insuffisant, adj. *insufficient*
intendant, s.m. *steward*
intention, s.f. *intention, design*
intéressant, adj. *interesting*
intérêt, s.m. *interest*
internat, s.m. *boarding-school*
interne, s.m. *boarder*
intervalle, s.m. *interval*; loc., à de longs intervalles, *at long intervals*
intime, adj. *intimate*
intimité, s.f. *intimacy*
invariable, adj. *invariable*
invité, adj. *invited*
inviter, v.a. *to invite*
irai, v.n. *see* aller, p. 118
Italien, s.m. *Italian*

J

Jalousie, s.f. *jealousy*
jaloux, -se, adj. *jealous*
jamais, adv. *ever*; ne . . . jamais, *never*
jambage, s.m. *stroke (of a pen), jamb*
jambe, s.f. *leg*
jambon, s.m. *ham*
jardin, s.m. *garden*
jardinage, s.m. *gardening*
jardiner, v.n. *to garden*
jardinier, s.m. *gardener*
jatte, s.f. *bowl*
jattée, s.f. *bowlful*
jaune, adj. *yellow*
jaunir, v.n. *to become yellow*

je, j', pr. pers. *I*
jeune, adj. *young*
jeûne, s.m. *fast, fasting*
joie, s.f. *joy*
joli, -e, adj. *pretty*
jouet, s.m. *toy, plaything*
joueur, s.m. *player* (fem. joueuse)
joujou, s.m. *toy*
jour, s.m. *day*; loc. de jour en jour, *from day to day*
journal, s.m. *journal, newspaper*
journaliste, s.m. *journalist*
joûte, s.f. *joust, tilt, fight*
joyeux, -se, adj. *joyous, joyful*
jugement, s.m. *judgment*
juillet, s.m. *July*
jumeau, s.m. *twin*
jumeau, adj. m. (fem. jumelle), *twin*
jupe, s.f. *skirt*
jupon, s.m. *petticoat*
jurer, v.a.n. *to swear*
juron, s.m. *oath*
jusque (à), pr. *to, as far as*
juste, adj. *just, correct*; (adv.) chanter juste, *to sing in tune*
justesse, s.f. *justness, accuracy, propriety*
justice, s.f. *justice*
justification, s.f. *justification*

K

Kilomètre, s.m. *kilometer*

L

La, l', art. f. *the*
la, l', pr. pers. comp. dir. *her, it*
là, adv. *there, thither*; là-bas, *yonder*
laborieux, -se, adj. *laborious, industrious*
lait, s.m. *milk*
laite, s.f. *soft-roe*
laité, -e, adj. *soft-roed*
laiterie, s.f. *dairy*
lancer, v.a. *to dart, to throw, to cast*
langage, s.m. *language*
langue, s.f. *tongue*
languette, s.f. *tongue*
lard, s.m. *bacon*
lardon, s.m. *slice of bacon*
latin, s.m. *Latin*
latiniste, s.m. *Latin scholar*
lavage, s.m. *washing*
laver, v.a. *to wash*
laveur, s.m. *washer*; laveuse, s.f. *washer-woman*
lavis, s.m. *wash* (*drawing*)
le, l', art. m. *the*
le, l', pr. pers. masc. comp. dir. *him, it*
leçon, s.f. *lesson*
lecteur, s.m. *reader, lecturer*
lectrice, s.f. *reader*
lecture, s.f. *reading*; cabinet de lecture, *reading-rooms*
légèreté, s.f. *lightness*
les, art. pl. *the*
les, pr. pers. comp. dir. pl. *them*
lettre, s.f. *letter*
lever (se), v.r. *to rise*
liaison, s.f. *union, joining*
libre, adj. *free*
lier, v.a. *to tie*
lignage, s.m. *lineage*
ligne, s.f. *line*
limon, s.m. *lemon*
limonade, s.f. *lemonade*
limonier, s.m. *lemon-tree*
lion, s.m. *lion*
liquide, s.m. and adj. *liquid*
lire, v.a. *to read*
lit, s.m. *bed*
livre, s.m. *book*
livre, s.f. *pound*
livret, s.m. *little book*
loger, v.a.n. *to lodge*
logis, s.m. *dwelling*
loi, s.f. *law*
Londres, s.p. *London*
louage, s.m. *letting out, hire*
Louis, s.p.m. *Lewis*
lourd, -e, adj. *heavy*
louve, s.f. *she-wolf*
loyal, -e, adj. *loyal*
loyer, s.m. *rent*
lu, past part. of lire, *read*
luxe, s.m. *luxury*

M

Mâcher, v.a. *to chew*
machine, s.f. *machine*
machiniste, s.m. *machinist*
mâchoire, s.f. *jaw*
magasin, s.m. *shop, warehouse*
magasinage, s.m. *warehousing*
magicien, s.m. *magician*
magnifique, adj. *magnificent*
maigre, adj. *thin*
maille, s.f. *stitch, mesh, mail*
maillot, s.m. *swaddling clothes*
maint, -e, adj. *many*
maintenir, v.a. *to maintain*
maison, s.f. *house*
maître, s.m. *master*
mal, s.m. *evil*
malade, adj. *ill, sick*
malformé, adj. *badly made, ill-shaped*
malhabile, adj. *awkward*
malheur, s.m. *misfortune*
malheureux, -se, adj. *unhappy*
malin, maligne, adj. *malicious*
malintentionné, adj. *evil-minded*
malmener, v.a. *to ill-treat*
malsain, adj. *unhealthy*
maltraiter, v.a. *to ill-treat*

malverser, v.n. *to be guilty of malversations*
mangeoire, s.f. *manger*
manger, v.a. *to eat*
manger, s m. *eating*
manquer, v.n. *to fail, to miss;* manquer à, *to be deficient or wanting (in), to fall short of*
manteau, s.m. *mantle*
mantelet, s.m. *mantlet*
marbre, s.m. *marble*
marbrerie, s.f. *marble-cutting, marble yard*
marchand, -e, adj. *saleable, trading*
marchand, s.m *dealer, tradesman, merchant*
marchandise, s.f. *merchandise, goods*
maréchal, s.m. *farrier, marshal*
mari, s.m. *husband*
mariage, s.m. *marriage*
marin, s.m. *seaman, sailor*
Maroc, s.m. *Morocco*
Marocain, s.m. *native of Morocco*
marque, s.f. *mark*
marquis, s.m. *marquis*
marquisat, s.m. *marquisate*
marteau, s.m. *hammer*
martelet, s.m. *little hammer*
martyr, s.m. *martyr*
matin, s.m. *morning*
matinée, s.f. *morning, forenoon*
méchanceté, s.f. *wickedness*
méchant, adj. *wicked, bad, naughty*
méchant, s.m. *wicked (person)*
médaille, s.f. *medal*
médailler, v.a. *to give a medal to*
médaillier, s.m. *cabinet of medals*
médailliste, s.m. *medallist*
médaillon, s.m. *medallion*
médiocre, adj. *middling, indifferent*
médiocre, s.m. *mediocrity*
médire, v.n. *to speak ill*
médisance, s.f. *slander*
même, adj. (*see* paragraph 84), *same, self*
même, adv. *even*
ménage, s.m. *household, housekeeping, household furniture*
ménager, v.a. *to husband, to take care of*
mendiant, s.m. *beggar*
mendier, v.a. *to beg*
mener, v.a. *to lead*
mensonge, s.m. *falsehood, story, lie*
mensonger, -ère, adj. *untrue, delusive*
mentir, v.n. *to lie, to tell a falsehood*
menton, s.m. *chin*
mer, s.f. *sea*
mercier, s.m. *haberdasher, mercer*
mériter, v.a. *to deserve, to merit*
message, s.m. *message*
messager, -ère, s.m.f. *messenger, courier*; adj. pigeon messager, *carrier-pigeon*
mesure, s.f. *measure*
mets, s.m. *dish*
meurtrir, v.a. *to bruise*
meurtrissure, s.f. *bruise*
merveille, s.f. *wonder, marvel*; à merveille, *wonderfully well*
midi, s.m. *noon, midday*
mie, s.f. *crumb*
miette, s.f. *crumb*
mieux, adv. *better*
mi-jambe (à), *half-way up the leg*
mi-juillet, s.f. *middle of July*
mince, adj. *thin*
minuit, s.m. *midnight*
mi-partie, s.f. *half*
mirer, v.n. *to aim*
miroir, s.m. *looking-glass*
mis, past part. of mettre, *to put*
mode, s.f. *fashion*
modéré, -e, adj. *moderate*
modeste, adj. *modest*
modiste, s.f. *milliner*
moi, pron. pers. 1. subject *I*; 2. object (instead of à moi), *to me, me*
moindre, adj. comp. *lesser, less*; le moindre, *the least*
moins, adv. *less*; le moins, *the least*
moisir, v.n. *to mould*
moisissure, s.f. *mouldiness*
mollesse, s.f. *softness, indolence*
mollet, -ette, dim. adj. *soft*; pain mollet, *roll*
mon, ma, mes, adj. poss. *my*
monarchie, s.f. *monarchy*
monarchique, adj. *monarchical*
monarchiste, s.m. *monarchist*
mondain, adj. *worldly, mundane*
monde, s.m. *world, people, company*; tout le monde, pr. ind. *everybody*
monotone, adj. *monotonous*
monotonie, s.f. *monotony*
monsieur, s.m. (pl. messieurs) *sir, gentleman*
montagnard, s.m. *mountaineer, highlander*
montagne, s.f. *mountain*
montant, s.m. *amount, upright*
montée, s.f. *ascent, rise*
monter, v.n. *to mount*
montre, s.f. *watch*
montrer, v.a. *to show*
moquer (se), v.r. (de), *to laugh (at)*
moqueur, -se, adj. *sarcastic*

morale, s.f. *morals*
moraliste, s.m. *moralist*
morceau, s.m. *bit, piece, morsel, extract, passage*
mordre, v.a. *to bite*
mort, s.f. *death*
mot, s.m. *word*
moteur, motrice, s.m.f. *motor, moving-power*
motif, s.m. *motive*
mou, mol, molle, adj. *soft*
mouche, s.f. *fly*
moucher (se), v.r. *to blow one's nose*
moucheron, s.m. *gnat*
mouchoir, s.m. *handkerchief*
mouiller, v.a. *to wet*
moule, s.m. *shape, mould*
moulage, s.m. *moulding*
mourir, v.n. *to die;* se mourir (ref.) *to be dying*
moût, s.m. *must, unfermented wine*
moutarde, s.f. *mustard*
moutardier, s.m. *mustard-pot*
mouvoir, v.a. *to move*
munir, v.a. *to provide*
mur, s.m. *wall*; muraille, *thick wall*
mûr, adj. *ripe*
musicien, -ne, s.m.f. *musician*

N

Nageoire, s.f. *fin*
nager, v.n. *to swim*
nageur, s.m. *swimmer*
naissance, s.f. *birth*
naître, v.n. *to be born*
nation, s.f. *nation, people*
nature, s.f. *nature*
navigation, s.f. *navigation*
navire, s.m. *ship*
ne, adv. 1. before or after aucun, rien, jamais, etc.; *no, not.* 2. instead of ne pas; *not.* 3. ne . . . pas, ne . . . . point; *not,* loc. ne . . . que, *but, only*
néanmoins, adv. *nevertheless*
nègre, s.m. *negro*
négresse, s.f. *negress*
négrillon, -ne, s.m.f. *negro-boy; negro-girl*
net, nette, adj. *clean, clear, plain*
netteté, s.f. *cleanness, plainness*
nettoiement, nettoyage, s.m. *cleaning, clearing*
nettoyer, v.a. *to clean*
neuf, adj. *new*; *nine*
neveu, s.m. *nephew*
ni, conj. *neither, nor*
niche, s.f. *niche, kennel*
nichée, s.f. *brood*
nœud, s.m. *knot*
noir, adj. *black*
noirâtre, adj. *blackish*
noiraud, adj. *dark (complexion), darkish*
noix, s.f. *walnut, nut*
nombreux, -se, adj. *numerous*
non-payement, s.m. *non-payment*
non-sens, s.m. *nonsense*
non-valeur, s.f. *thing without value, loss, bad debt*
nord, s.m. *north*
Normand, s.m. *Norman*
notre, nos, adj. *our*
nôtre (le, la), pr. poss. *ours*
nourrir, v.a. *to nourish, to feed*
se nourrir, v.r. *to feed, to live*
nouvelle, s.f. *news, tidings, intelligence*
nuire, v.n. *to injure, to to harm, to do harm*
nuit, s.f. *night*
nul, nulle, adj. and pr. ind. *no, none*

O

Obéir, v.n. *to obey*
obéissance, s.f. *obedience*
obéissant, -e, adj. *obedient*
obligeance, s.f. *kindness*
obliger, v.a. *to oblige*
obstacle, s.m. *obstacle*
occasion s.f. *occasion, opportunity*
occuper (s'), v.r. *to occupy oneself*
œil, s.m. *eye*
œillade, s.f. *glance, ogle*
œuf, s.m. *egg*
œuvre, s. f. *work*
officier, s.m. *officer*
offre, s.f. *offer, tender*
oiseau, s.m. *bird*
oisif, -ve, adj. *idle*
ombre, s.f. *shade, shadow*
ombrelle, s.f. *parasol*
oncle, s.m. *uncle*
opiniâtre, adj. *obstinate*
opinion, s.f. *opinion*
orange, s.f. *orange*
orangé, adj. *orange-colour*
orangeade, s.f. *orangeade*
orangeat, s.m. *candied orange-peel*
oranger, s.m. *orange-tree*
orangerie, s.f. *orange-house*
oreille, s.f. *ear*
oreiller, s.m. *pillow*
orgueil, s.m. *pride*
orme, s.m. *elm*
ormeau, s.m. *young elm, elm*
orphelin, s.m. *orphan (boy)*
où, adv. *where, whither*
ou, conj. *or*
oubli, s.m. *forgetfulness*
oublier, v.a. *to forget*
ouïr, v.a. *to hear;* ouïr dire, *to hear (it said)*
ours, s.m. *bear*
ouvrage, s.m. *work*
ouvrer, v.a. *to work*
ouvrier, s.m. *workman*

P

Pain, s.m. *bread*
pair, s.m. *equal, fellow, peer*

pair, adj. *equal*; *even*
paire, s.f. *pair*
palais, s.m. *palace*
pâle, adj. *pale*
pâlot, -te adj. *palish*
paperasse, s.f. *waste paper*
papier, s.m. *paper*
parade, s.f. *parade, show*
pardon, s.m. *pardon*
parenté, s.f. *relationship*
parents, s.m.pl. *parents, relations*
parer, v.a. *to adorn*
parler, v.a.n. *to speak*
parloir, s.m. *parlour*
parole, s.f. *word*
parti, s.m. *party, decision*
partie, s.f. *part, portion*
partir, v.n. *to set out*
partout, adv. *everywhere*
pas, adv. *not*; *see* ne
passage, s.m. *passage*
passager, -ère, adj. *passing, short-lived, transitory*
passer, v.n. *to pass*
passant, s.m. *passer-by*
pâte, s.f. *paste*
pâté, s.m. *pie*
pâtée, s.f. *paste, mess*
patience, s.f. *patience*
patin, s.m. *skate*
pauvre, adj. *poor*; les pauvres, *the poor*
pauvreté, s.f. *poverty*
payement, s.m. *payment*
pays, s.m. *country, birthplace*
paysage, s.m. *landscape*
paysagiste, s.m. *landscape painter*
paysan, s.m. *peasant, countryman*
péage, s.m. *toll, toll-house*
péager, s.m. *toll-gatherer*; taxe-péagère, *tax, toll*
pêche, s.f. *peach*
pêcher, s.m. *peach-tree*
pêcher, v.a.n. *to fish*
pécher, v.n. *to sin*
pêcheur, s.m. *fisherman*
pécheur, s.m. *sinner*
peigner, v.a. *to comb*
peignoir, s.m. *dressing-gown (lady's)*
pèlerin, s.m. *pilgrim*
pèlerinage, s.m. *pilgrimage*
penchant, s.m. *leaning*
pencher, v.n. *to lean*
pendant, prep. *during*
pendre, v.a. *to hang*
pendu, s.m. *hanged man*
pensée, s.f. *thought*
penser, v.a.n. *to think*
pensif, -ve, adj. *pensive, thoughtful*
percevoir, v.a. *to gather in, to collect*
percher, v.n. *to perch*
perchoir, s.m. *roost*
perdrix, s.f. *partridge*
perdu, p.p. of perdre, *to lose*
père, s.m. *father*
perfide, adj. *perfidious, treacherous*
perfidie, s.f. *perfidy, treacherousness*
péril, s.m. *peril, danger*
période, s.m.f. *period*
permettre, v.a. *to allow, to permit, to suffer*
persévérance, s.f. *perseverance*
persister, v.n. *to persist*
personne, s.f. *person*, pl. *people, persons*; loc. une jeune personne, *a young lady*
personne, pr. ind. page 66
perte, s.f. *loss*
petit, adj. *small, little*
petitesse, s.f. *littleness, meanness*
peu, adv. *little, few*
peu, s.m. *a little, a few*
peuplade, s.f. *tribe*
peuple, s.m. *people*
pierraille, s.f. *broken stone*
pierre, s.f. *stone*
pierreux, -se, adj. *stony*
pillage, s.m. *plunder*
pillard, adj. *plundering*
piller, v.a. *to plunder*
pis, adv. comp. *worse*
pis, sup. *the worst*
pistolet, s.m. *pistol*
pitié, s.f. *pity*
place, s.f. *place*
plaindre, v.a. *to pity*
plainte, s.f. *complaint*
plaire, v.n. *to please*
se plaire, v.r. *to please oneself* or *each other, to take delight, to be delighted*
plaisir, s.m. *pleasure*
plancher, s.m. *floor, ceiling*
plat, s.m. *dish*
plateau, s.m. *tray*; *tableland*
plein, -e, adj. *full*
pleurer, v.a. *to mourn over*
pleurer, v.n. *to weep, to cry*
pleuvoir, v.imp. *to rain*
pli, s.m. *fold*
pliage, s.m. *folding*
plier, v.a. *to fold*
plomb, s.m. *lead*
plombier, s.m. *plumber*
plongeon, s.m. *diver (bird)*
plonger, v.a.n. *to plunge*
plumage, s.m. *plumage*
plumasserie, s.f. *feather-trade*
plumassier, s.m. *feather-seller*
plume, s.f. *feather, pen*
plumeau, s.m. *feather-broom*
plumée, s.f. *penful*
plumer, v.a. *to pluck the feathers*
plumet, s.m. *plume*
plumetis, s.m. *needle-embroidery*
plus, adv. *more* (p. 42, 43)
plusieurs, adj. ind. *several*
plutôt, adv. (que), *rather (than)*

poète, s.m. *poet*
pointe, s.f. *point, top*
pointu, adj. *pointed, sharp*
poire, s.f. *pear*
poirier, s.m. *pear-tree*
pois, s.m. *pea*
poivrade, s.f. *pepper sauce*
poivre, s.m. *pepper*
poivrer, v.a. *to pepper*
poivrier, s.m. *pepper-tree*
poivrière, s.f. *pepper-box*
pôle, s.m. *pole*
polir, v.a. *to polish*
polisseur, s.m. *polisher*
polissure, s.f. *polishing*
pomme, s.f. *apple*
pommeau, s.m. *pommel*
pommier, s.m. *apple-tree*
pont, s.m. *bridge, deck*
porcelaine, s.f. *china, porcelain*; de *or* en porcelaine, *china* (adj.)
port, s.m. *port, harbour*
porte, s.f. *door*
porter, v.a. *to bear, to carry, to wear*
se porter, v.r. *to be, to do*; comment vous portez-vous? *how do you do?* je me porte assez bien, *I am pretty well*
portier, s.m. *door-keeper*
possible, adj. *possible*
possible, s.m. *possibility, what is possible*; je ferai tout mon possible, *I will do my utmost, all I can*
poste, s.f. *post-house, post, post-office*
poste, s.m. *post (situation), guard-house, station*
potage, s.m. *soup*
potager, -ère, adj. jardin-potager, *kitchen-garden*
poularde, s.f. *fat pullet*
poule, s.f. *hen*
poulet, s.m. *chicken*
pour, prep. *for (before an infinitive), to, in order to*
pourquoi? conj. and adv. *why? wherefore? what . . . for?*
poursuivre, v.a. *to pursue*
pourvoir, v.n. *to provide*
poussée, s.f. *push*
pousser, v.a. *to push*
pouvoir, v.a.n. *to be able (to do)*
pouvoir, s.m. *power*
prairie, s.f. *meadow*
pratiquer, v.a. *to practise*
précipité, s.m. *precipitate*
précipiter (se), v.r. *to fling oneself headlong, to run headlong*
précipiter, v.a. *to precipitate*
précoce, adj. *precocious*
préférer, v.a. *to prefer*
préfet, s.m. *prefect*
prendre, v.a. *to take*
près, prep. (de), *near*
presbytère, s.m. *parsonage, vicarage*
présent, s.m. *present, gift*
présent, adj. *present*
présenter, v.a. *to present, to offer*
président, s.m. *president*
présider, v.n. *to preside*
presque, adv. *almost, nearly*
prêt, adj. *ready*
prétendre, v.a.n. *to pretend, to pretend to, to claim*
prêter, v.a. *to lend*
preuve, s.f. *proof*
prévaloir, v.n. *to prevail*
prévenant, adj. *prepossessing, obliging, attentive*
prévenir, v.a. *to precede, to prevent, to anticipate, to inform*
prévoir, v.a. *to foresee*
prévôt, s.m. *provost*
prévôté, s.f. *provostship*
prévoyance, s.f. *foresight*
prince, s.m. *prince*
princesse, s.f. *princess*
prise, past part. fem. *of* prendre, *to take*
procédé, s.m. *proceeding, operation*
procéder, v.n. *to proceed*
prochain, adj. *near, nearest, next*
proche, adj. *near, nigh*
proches, s.m.pl. *kindred*
profiter, v.n. *to profit*
projet, s.m. *project*
promener (se), v.r. *to walk*
promenoir, s.m. *place for walking*
prompt, -e, adj. *prompt, quick*
prononcer, v.a. *to pronounce*
prophète, s.m. *prophet*
propos, s.m. *speech, talk, tattle, purpose*; à propos, *to the purpose*
proposer, v.a. *to propose*
proposer (se), v.r. *to purpose*
propre, adj. *clean, own, proper*
propriété, s.f. *property*
protestant, s.m. *protestant*
protester, v.a.n. *to protest*
prudence, s.f. *prudence*
prudent, -e, adj. *prudent*
prune, s.f. *plum*
pruneau, s.m. *small plum, French plum*
prunelle, s.f. *sloe, eyeball*
public (publique, f.), *public*
publicain, s.m. *publican*
puis, conj. and adv. *then, afterwards*
puis, v.a.n., ind. pres. *of* pouvoir, *to be able*
puisque, conj. *since*
puissant, adj. *powerful*
punir, v.a. *to punish*
punissable, adj. *punishable*
punition, s.f. *punishment*
pureté, s.f. *purity*

Q

Quand, adv. *when*
quand, conj. *though*
quant (à), adv. *with regard to, as to*
quarantaine, s.f. *about forty, quarantine*
quarante, adj. *forty*
quatrain, s.m. *quatrain*
quatre, adj. *four*
que, p.rel. *whom, that, which,* (interr.) *what?*
que, conj. *that, than, as*
que, adv. *how, how much, how many, why*
quel, quelle, adj. *what* (parag. 107)
quelconque, adj. ind. *whatever, whatsoever*
quelquefois, adv. *sometimes*
question, s.f. *question*
queue, s.f. *tail, end*
qui, pr.rel.sub. *who, that*; obj. *whom, which*; interr. *who, whom, which*
quille, s.f. *keel, skittle*
quinzaine, s.f. *about fifteen, a fortnight*
quinze, adj. *fifteen*
quoique, conj. *though, although*

R

Rabat, s.m. *band* (*for the neck*)
rabattre, v.a. *to beat down*
rabot, s.m. *plane*
raboteux, adj. *uneven, rugged*
raconter, v.a. *to relate*
raffinage, s.m. *refining*
raffiner, v.a. *to refine*
rafraîchir, v.a. *to cool, to refresh*
rail, s.m. *rail*
raisin, s.m. *grapes*
rallonge, s.f. *lengthening piece, leaf* (*of a table*)
rallonger, v.a. *to lengthen*
ramer, v.n. *to row*
rameur, s.m. *rower*
rang, s.m. *rank*
rangée, s.f. *row*
ranger, v.a. *to put in a row, in order*
râpe, s.m. *rasp*
râper, v.a. *to rasp*
rapidement, adv. *rapidly*
rayon, s.m. *ray, beam, shelf*
rebut, s.m. *refuse*
rebuter, v.a. *to repel, to rebuff*
recevoir, v.a. *to receive*
récompenser, v.a. *to reward, to recompense*
reconnaissance, s.f. *gratitude*
reconnaître, v.a. *to recognise*
recul, s.m. *recoil*
reculade, s.f. *backing, retreat*
redevoir, v.a. *to owe still*
réduire, v.a. *to reduce*
réduit, s.m. *small habitation*
réformer, v.a. *to reform*
refus, s.m. *refusal*
régal, s.m. (pl. régals), *entertainment, feast, treat*
régir, v.a. *to administer*
régisseur, s.m. *administrator, steward*
règle, s.f. *rule*
règne, s.m. *reign*
reine, s.f. *queen*
rejet, s.m. *rejection, shoot*
rejeter, v.a. *to throw again, to throw back* or *away, to reject, to set aside*
rejeton, s.m. *sprout, scion, offspring*
réjouir, (se), v.r. *to rejoice*
relancer, v.a. *to start anew*
relier, v.a. *to bind*
relieur, s.m. *binder*
religieux, -se, adj. *religious*
remarque, s.f. *remark*
remarquer, v.a. *to remark, to notice*
remercîment, s.m. *thanks*
remontrance, s.f. *remonstrance*
remontrer, v.n. *to remonstrate*
remplir, v.a. *to fill again, to fill up*; remplir un devoir, *to fulfil a duty*
remplumer, v.a. *to feather again*
renard, s.m. *fox*
renchérir, v.a. *to raise the price of*
rencontrer, v.a. *to meet*
rendre, v.a. *to render, to give back*
se rendre, v.r. 1. *to repair, to betake oneself*; 2. *to yield*; 3. *to give oneself up, to surrender*
renforcer, v.a. *to strengthen, to reinforce*
renommée, s.f. *fame*
renommer, v.a. *to name again*
renoncer, v.n. *to renounce*
repaître (se), v.r. (de) *to feed on*
répandre, v.a. *to pour, to spill, to spread*
répondre, v.a. *to answer*
reposer, v.n. reposer (se), v.r. *to rest*
repousser, v.a. *to repulse*
repoussoir, s.m. *driving bolt*
reprendre, v.a. *to resume*
reprise, s.f. *retaking, renewal*; à deux reprises différentes, *on two separate occasions*
républicain, s.m. *republican*
république, s.f. *republic*

répugnance, s.f. *repugnance*
répugner, v.n. *to be repugnant*
réputation, s.f. *reputation, fame*
requérir, v.a. *to request, to demand, to require*
requête, s.f. *request, petition*
réserver, v.a. *to reserve*
réservoir, s.m. *reservoir, cistern*
ressemblance, s.f. *likeness*
ressembler, v.n. *to resemble*
ressentir, v.a. *to feel, to resent*
ressort, s.m. *spring*
ressource, s.f. *resource*
rester, v.n. *to stay, to remain*
retirer (se), v.r. *to retire, to withdraw*
retrancher, v.a. *to retrench*
réussir, v.n. *to succeed*
rêvasser, v.n. *to muse*
revenir, v.n. *to come back*
revenu, s.m. *income, revenue*
rêver, v.a.n. *to dream*
revers, s.m. *back, reverse*
revêtir, v.a. *to clothe again*
revoir, v.a. *to see again*
revue, s.f. *review*
riche, adj. *rich, wealthy*
richesse, s.f. *riches, wealth*
ridicule, adj. *ridiculous*
rien, s. and pr. (page 67)
rieur, s.m. *laugher*
rire, v.n. *to laugh*
rire, s.m. *laughter*
rivage, s.m. *shore, bank*
robe, s.f. *dress*
roc, s.m. *rock*
rocaille, s.f. *rock-work*
rodomont, s.m. *swaggerer, bully*
rodomontade, s.f. *swaggering*
roi, s.m. *king*
romain, -e, adj. *Roman*
Rome, s.f. *Rome*
rond, -e, adj. *round*
rondelet, adj. *plump*
rose, s.f. *rose*
rosier, s.m. *rose-tree*
roue, s.f. *wheel*
rouge, adj. *red*
rougeâtre, adj. *reddish*
rougeaud, -e, adj. *ruddy, red-faced*
rougir, v.a.n. *to redden*
roulade, s.f. *trill*
rouler, v.a. *to roll*
roulis, s.m. *rolling (of ships)*
route, s.f. *road, route, way*
roux, -sse, adj. *sandy (of the hair)*
ruade, s.f. *kick*
rude, adj. *rough, rude*
rudesse, s.f. *roughness, rudeness*
rue, s.f. *street*
ruelle, s.f. *lane, bedside*
ruer, v.n. *to kick*
rugir, v.n. *to roar*
rugissement, s.m. *roaring*
rumeur, s.f. *rumour*

S

Sable, s.m. *sand*
sablier, s.m. *hour-glass, sand-box*
sac, s.m. *sack, bag*
sachet, s.m. *little bag*
sacrifier, v.a. *to sacrifice*
sage, adj. *wise*
sagesse, s.f. *wisdom*
saison, s.f. *season*
salade, s.f. *salad*
saladier, s.m. *salad-dish*
salaud, adj. *slovenly*
sale, adj. *dirty*
saler, v.a. *to salt*
salir, v.a. *to soil*
saloir, s.m. *salting-tub*
salutaire, adj. *salutary*
sangle, s.f. *strap, band, girth*
sanglé, p.part. of sangler, *to strap, to give blows*
sans, prep. *without*
sans-dent, s.f. *toothless old woman*
sans-façon, loc. adv. *unceremoniously*
sans-gêne, s.m. *free manners*; adv. *unceremoniously*
satisfait, -e, adj. *satisfied, pleased*
sauteur, -se, s.m.f. *leaper, jumper*
sauvage, adj. *wild*
savant, -e, adj. *learned*
savoir, v.a. *to know*
savoir, s.m. *knowledge*
savonnage, s.m. *washing with soap*
savonner, v.a. *to lather*
scie, s.f. *saw*
science, s.f. *science*
scier, v.a. *to saw*
se, soi, pr.pers. (parag. 95, 96)
secours, s.m. *succour, help, aid*
Seigneur, s.m. *Lord*
séjour, s.m. *stay*
semer, v.a. *to sow*
semis, s.m. *seed-plot*
sens, s.m. *sense, meaning*
sentence, s.f. *sentence*
sentiment, s.m. *sensation, feeling, sentiment*
sentir, v.a. *to feel*
seoir, v.n. *to be becoming*
séparable, adj. *separable*
séparer, v.a. *to separate*
serrure, s.f. *lock*
serrurier, s.m. *locksmith*
servir, v.n. *to serve, to be useful*
si, conj. *if, whether*
si, adv. *so*
siècle, s.m. *century, age, time, world*
siège, s.m. *seat*
siéger, v.n. *to preside*

signal, s.m. *signal*
sincère, adj. *sincere*
sincérité, s.f. *sincerity*
singe, s.m. *monkey*
singerie, s.f. *apishness, mimicry*
situation, s.f. *situation*
sobre, adj. *sober*
sobriété, s.f. *sobriety*
social, -e, adj. *social*
société, s.f. *society, company*
sœur, s.f. *sister*
soigneux, -se, adj. *careful*
soin, s.m. *care*
soir, s.m. *evening*
soirée, s.f. *evening, evening party*
soixantaine, s.f. *about sixty*
soixante, adj. *sixty*
sol, s.m. *soil, ground*
soldat, s.m. *soldier*
solde, s.f. *pay*
somme, s.m. *nap, sleep*
somme, s.f. *sum*
sommeil, s.m. *sleep*
son, sa, ses, adj.poss. *his, her, its, one's*
sortir, v.n. *to go out*
sot, sotte, adj. *foolish, silly*
sottise, s.f. *folly, foolery*
souci, s.m. *care, anxiety*
soucier (se), v.r. *to care*
souffrance, s.f. *suffering*
souffrir, v.n. *to suffer*
souhait, s.m. *wish*
souhaiter, v.a. *to wish*
soulèvement, s.m. *hearing, rising, insurrection*
soulier, s.m. *shoe*
soumis, adj. *obedient*
souper, v.n. *to sup*
souper, s.m. *supper*
soupir, s.m. *sigh*
soupirail, s.m. *air-hole*
soupirer, v.n. *to sigh*
sourire, v.n. *to smile*
sous, prep. *under*
sous-axillaire, adj. *sub-axillary*
sous-intendant, s.m. *under-steward*
sous-jacent, -e, adj. *subjacent*
sous-maître, s.m. *under-master, usher*
sous-marin, adj. *submarine*
sous-officier, s.m. *non-commissioned officer*
sous-préfet, s.m. *sub-prefect*
sous-sol, s.m. *basement*
souvenir s.m. *remembrance*
souvenir (se), v.r. *to remember*
souvent, adv. *often*
stimulant, s.m. *stimulant*
stimuler, v.a. *to stimulate*
studieux, -se, adj. *studious*
style, s.m. *style*
succès, s.m. *success*
sucre, s.m. *sugar*
sucrier, s.m. *sugar-basin*
suffire, v.n. *to suffice*
suffisance, s.f. *sufficiency*
Suisse, s.m. *Swiss*
Suissesse, s.f. *Swiss-woman*
suivre, v.a. *to follow*
sujet, s.m. *subject*
suppliant, adj. (pers.) *suppliant*, (things) *beseeching*
sur, prep. *on, upon, over, above*
sûr, -e, adj. *sure, certain, safe*
sûreté, s.f. *safety*
surface, s.f. *surface*
surmonter, v.a. *to overcome, to surmount*
surnager, v.n. *to float (upon the surface), to swim*
surpasser, v.a. *to surpass*
surprendre, v.a. *to surprise*
surseoir, v.n. *to respite*
surveiller, v.a. *to watch*
suspendre, v.a. *to suspend*
syllabe, s.f. *syllable*
symbole, s.m. *symbol*
syndic, s.m. *syndic*
syndicat, s.m. *syndicate*

T

Table, s.f. *table*
tableau, s.m. *picture, painting, table, board*
tablée, s.f. *tableful*
tablette, s.f. *tablet*
tablier, s.m. *apron*
tache, s.f. *spot, stain, blot*
tâche, s.f. *task*
tacher, v.a. *to spot*
tâcher, v.n. *to endeavour*
tailler, v.a. *to cut*
tailleur, s.m. *tailor*
taillis, s.m. *copse*
tante, s.f. *aunt*
taper, v.a. *to smack, to hit*
tapis, s.m. *carpet*
tapissier, s.m. *upholsterer*
tapoter, v.a. *to pat*
tard, adv. *late*
tarte, s.f. *tart*
tartelette, s.f. *tartlet*
teindre, v.a. *to dye*
tel, telle, adj. and pr. ind *such*
télégramme, s.m. *telegram*
témoignage, s.m. *testimony*
témoigner, v.a. *to testify*
tempérance, s.f. *temperance*
température, s.f. *temperature*
tempérer, v.a. *to temper*
tempête, s.f. *tempest, storm*
tendre, v.a. *to stretch*
tendre, adj. *tender*
tendresse, s.f. *tenderness*
tenir, v.a. *to hold*
terminaison, s.f. *termination*
terminer, v.a. *to end*
ternir, v.a. *to tarnish, to stain*
terrain, s.m. *ground*
terrasse, s.f. *terrace*

terre, s.f. *land, earth*
texte, s.m. *text*
thé, s.m. *tea*
thème, s.m. *exercise*
tige, s.f. *stalk, stem*
tigre, s.m. *tiger*
timide, adj. *timid*
timidité, s.f. *timidity*
tirage, s.m. *drawing (of a lottery), pulling (printing)*
tirer, v.a. *to draw, to pull*
tiroir, s.m. *drawer*
tombe, s.f. 1. *tomb, tombstone*; 2. *tomb, grave*
tombeau, s.m. 1. *tomb (monument)*; 2. *tombstone*
tonne, s.f. *tun*
tonneau, s.m. *cask*
tonnelle, s.f. *arbour*
tonnerre, s.m. *thunder*
tordre, v.a. *to wring, to twist*
tort, s.m. *wrong*; avoir tort, *to be wrong*
tôt, adv. *soon*; tôt ou tard, *sooner or later*
touchant, -e, adj. *affecting, touching*
toucher, v.a. *to touch*
toucher, s.m. *touch (the sense)*
touffe, s.f. *tuft*
toujours, adv. *always*
Toulousain, s.m. *native of Toulouse*
Toulouse, s.p. *Toulouse*
tour, s.m. *turn, trip, tour, trick, lathe*
tour, s.f. *tower*
tourelle, s.f. *turret*
tourmenter, v.a. *to torment*
tout, adj. and pr.ind. *every, all*; loc. tous les jours, *every day*
tracer, v.a. *to trace, to draw out*
trahir, v.a. *to betray*
trahison, s.f. *treason*
train, s.m. *train*
traînée, s.f. *trail*
traire, v.a. *to milk*
traître, s.m. traîtresse, s.f. *traitor, traitress*
tranchant, s.m. *edge*
tranchée, s.f. *trench, cutting*
trancher, v.a. *to cut*
tranquille, adj. *tranquil*
tranquillité, s.f. *tranquillity*
travail, s.m. *work*
travailler, v.a.n. *to work*
travailleur, s.m. *labourer, workman, hard worker*
travailleuse, s.f. *workwoman, painstaking person (woman, girl)*
trentaine, s.f. *about thirty*
trente, adj. num. *thirty*
très, adv. *very, very much*
triage, s.m. *sorting*
tribun, s.m. *tribune*
tribunat, s.m. *tribuneship*
tribut, s.m. *tribute*
tricher, v.a. *to cheat*
tricheur, s.m. *trickster, cheat*
trier, v.a. *to sort*
triste, adj. *sad*
tristesse, s.f. *sadness*
trivial, adj. *trivial*
trivialité, s.f. *triviality*
tromper, v.a. *to deceive*
se tromper, v.r. *to be mistaken, to make a mistake*
trop, adv. *too, too much, too many, too far, too long*
trou, s.m. *hole*
trouble, s.m. *trouble, confusion*
trouver, v.a. *to find, to think, to like*
tuer, v.a. *to kill*
tuile, s.f. *tile*
turbulent, adj. *noisy*

U

Ultra-libéral, adj. *ultra-liberal*
ultra-mondain, adj. *ultra mundane*
ultra-royaliste, adj. *ultra-royalist*
ultra-zodiacal, adj. *ultra-zodiacal*
un, -e, adj. *one*
un, -e, art. ind. *a, an*
unir, v.a. *to unite, to join*
user, v.a. *to wear out*
usure, s.f. *wear and tear, usury*
utile, adj. *useful*

V

Va, 3. p.ind. of aller (p. 118)
vache, s.f. *cow*
vacher, s.m. *cow-keeper*
vagabond, s.m. *vagabond*
vagabondage, s.m. *vagrancy*
vain, -e, adj. *vain;* loc. en vain, *in vain, vainly*
vaincre, v.a. *to conquer*
vainqueur, s.m. *conqueror*
vaisseau, s.m. *ship, vessel*
valeur, s.f. *value, valour*
valoir, v.n. *to be worth*
vantard, -e, adj. *boastful*
vanter, v.a. *to praise*
vapeur, s.f. *vapour, steam*, s.m. *steamer*
varié, adj. *varied*
variété, s.f. *variety*
vassal, s.m. *vassal*
vaut, 3 p.pres. ind. of valoir, *to be worth*
végétal, s.m. *vegetable*
veille, s.f. *to watch*
veiller, v.a. *to watch*; v.n. *to sit up*
vendange, s.f. *vintage*
vendanger, v.a. *to gather the grapes*
vendre, v.a. *to sell*

vendredi, s.m. *Friday*
vengeance, s.f. *vengeance*
venger, v.a. *to avenge*
vengeur, s.m. *avenger*
vengeur, -eresse, adj. *avenging*
venir, v.n. *to come*
venue, s.f. *coming*
verbe, s.m. *verb*
verdir, v.n. *to become green*
véritable, adj. *true*
vérité, s.f. *truth*
vermeil, -le, adj. *vermilion, ruddy*
vermeil, s.m. *silver-gilt*
verre, s.m. *glass*
verrou, s.m. *bolt*
vers, s.m. *verse*
verset, s.m. *verse (in Scripture)*
vert, adj. *green*
vertu, s.f. *virtue*
vertueux, adj. *virtuous*
vestiaire, s.m. *robing-room, cloakroom*
veux, v.a.n., ind. pres. of vouloir (p. 132)
vexer, v.a. *to vex*
viande, s.f. *meat*
vice, s.m. *vice*
vice-amiral, s.m. *vice-admiral*
vice-président, s.m. *vice-president*
vice-roi, s.m. *viceroy*
vieux, vieil, vieille, adj. *old*
vieillot, -te, adj. *oldish*
vigne, s.f. *vine*
vigneron, s.m. *vine-dresser*
vilain, -e, adj. *ugly, nasty, villainous*
vin, s.m. *wine*
vingt, adj. num. *twenty*
vingtaine, s.f. *about twenty*
violent, -e, adj. *violent*
visite, s.f. *visit*
vite, adj. *quick, swift*
vite, adv. *quickly, swiftly, fast*
vitrail, s.m. *stained glass-window*
vivre, v.n. *to live*
vœu, s.m. *vow, wish*
voici, adv. *here is, here are*
voilà, adv. *there is, there are*
voiler, v.a. *to veil*
voilure, s.f. *set of sails*
voir, v.a.n. *to see*
voiture, s.f. *carriage*
volable, adj. 1. (*persons*) *to be robbed*; 2. (*things*) *easily stolen*
volée, s.f. *flight, volley*
voler, v.a. *to steal, to rob*
voler, v.n. *to fly*
volet, s.m. *shutter*
voleur, -euse, s.m.f. *thief*
volume, s.m. *volume*
voter, v.a.n. *to vote*
votre, (pl. vos.), adj. pos. *your, thy*
vôtre (le, la), vôtres (les), pron.pos. *yours*
vouloir, v.a. *will, to be willing*
vous, pron.pers. *you, to you*
voyage, s.m. *travel, journey, voyage*
voyageur, s.m. *traveller*

Y

Y, adv. *there, thither, at home, within*
y, pron. (*things*), *it, them*, (pers.) *him, her, them* (with the preposition required by the verb)

Z

Zéro, s.m. *naught, cipher*
zone, s.f. *zone*

ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY.

A

A, art. ind., un (m.), une (f.)
abolish, v.t. *abolir*
abominable, adj. *abominable*
above, prep. *au-dessus de, sur*; above all, *surtout*
absolve, v.t. *absoudre*
accept, v.t. *accepter*
accusation, s. *accusation* (f.)
act, v.t. *agir*
admire, v.t. *admirer*
advantage, s. *avantage* (m.)
advice, s. *avis*
affair, s. *affaire* (f.)
afflicted, s. and adj. *affligé*
again, adv. *de nouveau, encore*
agreement, s. *convention* (f.)
aim, v.intr. (at), *tendre* (*à*)
alarm, v.t. *alarmer*
alarming, adj. *alarmant*
Algeria, s. *Algérie* (f.)
all, adj.ind. *tout, -e, tous* (m. pl.)
already, adv. *déjà*
alter, v.t. *changer*
although, conj. *quoique*
always, adv. *toujours*
amiable, adj. *aimable*
ancestor, s. *ancêtre* (m.), *aïeul* (pl. *aïeux*)
and, conj. *et*
another, adj.ind. *un -e, autre*
answer, v.t. *répondre*
answer, s. *réponse* (f.)
anxiety, s. *inquiétude* (f.)
any, adj.ind. *tout, n'importe lequel*
applaud, v.t. *applaudir*
apply, v.int. *s'appliquer*
apprehend, v.t. *pressentir*
argument, s. *argument* (m.)
arm, v.t. *armer*
army, s. *armée* (f.)
arrive, v.int. *arriver*
as, prep. (for), *quant* (*à*)
as, adv. *comme, aussi*; as forward as they, *aussi avancé qu'eux*
assault, v.t. *assaillir*
assess, v.t. *répartir, évaluer*
attack, v.t. *attaquer*
attention, s. *attention* (f.)
attentive, adj. *attentif*
aunt, s. *tante* (f.)
avenging, adj. *vengeur, -eresse* (m.f.)
avoid, v.t. *éviter*

B

Bad, adj. *mauvais, méchant*
bank-note, s. *billet de banque* (m.)
battle, s. *bataille* (f.)
be, v.aux. *être* (p. 78)
beautiful, adj. *beau, bel* (m.) *belle* (f.)
because, conj *parce que*
become, v. int. *devenir seoir* (*à*)
bed, s. *lit* (m.)
before, prep. *avant*
behave, v.int. *se conduire*
believe, v.t. *croire* (p. 136)
bell, s. *cloche* (f.)
belong, v.int. *appartenir*
bend, v.t. *fléchir*
benefactor, s. *bienfaiteur* (m.)
benefactress, s. *bienfaitrice* (f.)
benevolent, adj. *bienfaisant*
best, adj.sup. (the, my, *le, mon, etc.*), *meilleur*
betray, v.t. *trahir*
better, adj.comp. *meilleur*
better, adv. *mieux*
bill, s. *lettre de change* (f.)
bird, s. *oiseau* (m.)
bite, v.t. *mordre*
blow, s. *coup* (m.)
boast, v.int. *s'enorgueillir, se vanter*
boat, s. *bateau* (m.)
bonnet, s. *chapeau* (m.)
book, s. *livre* (m.)
boot, s. *botte* (f.)
born, adj. *né*; to be born, *naître*
bottle, s. *bouteille* (f.)
bow, s. *arc* (m.)
branch, s. *branche* (f.)
bread, s. *pain* (m.)
break, v.t. *casser, rompre*
breakfast, v.int. *déjeuner*

bring, v.t. *apporter, amener*; to bring to confusion, *confondre*; to bring back, *rapporter*; to bring down, *descendre*
brother, s. *frère* (m.)
bullet, s. *balle* (f.)
burn, v.t. *brûler*
burst, v.int. *éclater*; burst into tears, *fondre en larmes*
but, conj. *mais*
button, s. *bouton* (m.)
buy, v.t. *acheter*
by, prep. *par, de, en*

C

Cake, s. *gâteau* (m.)
call, v.t. *appeler*
calumniate, v.t. *calomnier*
camp, s. *camp* (m.)
can, v.def. *pouvoir*
candlestick, s. *chandelier* (m.)
care, s. *soin* (m.)
cargo, s. *cargaison* (f.)
carriage, s. *voiture* (f.)
castle, s. *château* (m.)
cat, s. *chat* (m.)
catastrophe, s. *catastrophe* (f.)
cautious, adj. *prudent*
cellar, s. *cave* (f.)
ceremony, s. *cérémonie* (f.)
certainly, adv. *certainement*
chair, s. *chaise* (f.)
charming, adj. *charmant*
cherish, v.t. *chérir*
child, s. *enfant* (m.)
choice, s. *choix* (m.)
choose, v.t. *choisir*
church, s. *église* (f.)
circumstance, s. *circonstance* (f.)
citadel, s. *citadelle* (f.)
cloak, s. *manteau* (m.); cloakroom, *vestiaire* (m.)
close, v.t. *fermer*
cloth, s. *drap* (m.)
clothe, v.t. *vêtir*; oneself, *se vêtir*
coal, s. *charbon* (m.)
coat, s. *habit* (m.)
cold, s. *rhume* (m.); to catch cold, *s'enrhumer*
collar, s. *col* (m.)
collect, v.t. *percevoir*
collection, s. *collection* (f.)
colonel, s. *colonel* (m.)
colour, s. *couleur* (f.)
come, v.int. *venir*; to come down, *descendre*
comfortable, adj. *commode*
commerce, s. *commerce* (m.)
commission, s. *commission* (f).
company, s. *compagnie* (f.), *société* (f.)
compassionate, adj. *compatissant*
complain, v.int. *se plaindre*
conceited, adj. *suffisant*
conceive, v.t. *concevoir*
concert, s. *concert* (m.)
condemn, v.t. *condamner*
conduct, s. *conduite* (f.)
confess, v.t. *avouer, confesser*
confidence, s. *confiance* (f.)
confound, v.t. *confondre*
confusedly, adv. *confusément*
conquered, p.part. *conquis*
consecrate, v.t. *bénir*
consent, v.int. *consentir*
consent, s. *consentement* (m.)
consequence, s. *conséquence* (f.)
consider, v.t. *considérer*, as, *regarder comme*
consoler, s. *consolateur* (m.)
contempt, s. *mépris* (m.)
continual, adj. *continuel, -le*
correspond, v.int. *correspondre*
cost, v.int. *coûter*
country, s. *pays* (m.), *campagne* (f.); country-house, *maison de campagne*; in the country, *à la campagne*
country woman, s. *paysanne* (f.)
court, s. *cour* (f.)
cousin, s. *cousin* (m.)
cousin, s. *cousine* (f.)
cow, s. *vache* (f.)
criticise, v.t. *critiquer*
cross, v.t. *traverser*
crown, s. *couronne* (f.)
cruel, adj. *cruel, -le*
crystal, s. *cristal* (m.); Crystal Palace, *Palais de Cristal*
cup, s. *tasse* (f.)
curtain, s. *rideau* (m.)
custom, s. *coutume* (f.)

D

Danger, s. *danger* (m)
dangerous, adj. *dangereux, -se*
day, s. *jour* (m.); *journée* (f.)
deal, s. *quantité* (f.); a great deal, *beaucoup*
dear, adj. *cher*, (adv.) *cher*
death, s. *mort* (f.)
deceive, v.t. *tromper*
defeat, v.t. *défaire*
defend, v.t. *défendre*
delicious, adj. *délicieux*
departure, s. *départ* (m.)
depth, s. *profondeur* (f.)
deserve, v.t. *mériter*
design, s. *dessein* (m.)
despair, s. *désespoir* (m.)
detail, s. *détail* (m.)
devote, v.t. *consacrer*
dictionary, s. *dictionnaire* (m.)
die, v.int. *mourir*
difficult, adj. *difficile*
difficulty, s. *difficulté* (f.)
diligent, adj. *appliqué*
dine, v.int. *dîner*
dinner, s. *dîner* (m.)

disappear, v.int. *disparaître*
discharge, v.t. *accomplir*
discouraged, adj. and part. *découragé*
discreet, adj. *discret* (m.), *discrète* (f.)
discuss, v.t. *discuter*
disgrace, v.t. *déshonorer*
disguise, v.t. *déguiser*
disobey, v.int. *désobéir*
disown, v.int. *disconvenir de*
disposition, s. *disposition* (f.), *nature* (f.)
distribute, v.t. *répartir*
distrustful, adj. *méfiant*
do, v.t. *faire* (p. 138)
door, s. *porte* (f.)
dozen, s.coll. *douzaine* (f.)
drawer, s. *tiroir* (m.)
drawing, s. *dessin* (m.)
dream, s. *rêve* (m); idle dream, *chimère* (f.)
dress, s. *robe* (f.)
drink, v.t. *boire*
drive, v.t. *conduire, mener, pousser*; to drive to despair, *réduire au désespoir*
dumb, adj. *muet*
during, prep. *pendant*
dust, s. *poussière* (f.)
dust, v.t. *épousseter*; to dust a coat, *battre un habit*
duty, s. *devoir* (m.)

E

Each, adj.ind. *chaque*
each, pr.ind. *chacun*; each other, *l'un l'autre*
early, adv. *de bonne heure*; as early as, *dès*
eat, v.t. *manger*
effort, s. *effort* (m.)
either, adj. *and* pr. *l'un ou l'autre*
embroider, v.t. *broder*
end, s. *but* (m.), *fin* (f.)
enemy, s. *ennemi* (m.)
England, s.p. *Angleterre* (f.)
engrave, v.t. *graver*
engraving, s. *gravure* (f.)
enjoy, v.int. *jouir de*
enslave, v.t. *asservir*
entreat, v.t. *supplier*
envy, s. *envie* (f.)
equal, adj. *égal*
equivalent (to be), *équivaloir*
error, s. *erreur* (f.)
essential, adj. *essentiel*
establish, v.t. *établir*
estate, s. *terre* (f.) *propriété* (f.)
event, s. *événement* (m.)
every, adj.ind. *chaque, tout*; *tous les*; everybody, *tout le monde*
everywhere, adv. *partout*
examine, v. (into) *approfondir*
excellent, adj. *excellent*
exercise, s. *thème* (m.)
explain, v.t. *expliquer*
expose, v.t. *dévoiler*
extremely, adv. *extrêmement*
eye, s. *œil* (m.), (pl. *yeux*); eye-glass, s. *lorgnon* (m.)

F

Face, s. *face*, (f.), *visage* (m.), *figure* (f.)
fail, v.int. *faillir*
faint, v.int. (away) *s'évanouir*
fall, s. *chute* (f.)
fall, v.int. *tomber*; to fall due, *échoir*
false, adj. *faux* (m.), *fausse* (f.)
fan, s. *éventail* (m.)
far, adv. *loin*
farm, s. *ferme* (f.)
fatal, adj. *fatal*
father, s. *père* (m.)
fault, s. *faute* (f.)
favour, s. *faveur* (f.)
favourite, adj. *favori* (m.) *-te* (f.)
fear, s. *crainte* (f.)
fear, v.t. *craindre*
feed, v.t. (on) *se repaître de*
fell, v.t. *abattre*
field, s. *champ* (m.)
fill, v.t. *remplir*
find, v.t. *trouver*
fine, adj. *beau, bel, belle*
finish, v.t. *finir, terminer*
fire, s. *feu* (m.)
firm, adj. *ferme*
fish, s. *poisson* (m.)
flattering, adj. *flatteur*
fleet, s. *flotte*, (f.)
flourish, v.int. *fleurir*
flower, s. *fleur* (f.); flower bed, *planche* (f.)
follow, v.t. *suivre*
fond, adj. *cher*
food, s. *nourriture* (f.)
for, prep. *pour, à*
forbid, v.t. *défendre*
force, s. *force* (f.)
foresee, v.t. *prévoir*
forget, v.t. *oublier*
fork, s. *fourchette* (f.)
formerly, adv. *autrefois*
forward, adj. *avancé*
fox, s. *renard* (m)
franc, s. *frank* (m)
France, s. *France* (f.)
French, adj. *français*
frequent, v.t. *fréquenter*
Friday, s. *vendredi* (m.)
friend, s. *ami* (m), *amie* (f.)
friendship, s. *amitié* (f.)
from, prep. *de*
fruit, s. *fruit* (m.)
full, adj. *plein*
future, s. *avenir* (m.)

G

Gain, v.t. *gagner*
garden, s. *jardin* (m.)
gardener, s. *jardinier* (m.)
general, s. *général* (m.)
gentle, adj. *doux, -ce*

gentleman, s. *monsieur* (pl. *messieurs*)
get (up), v.int. *se lever*
give, v.t. *donner*; to give up, *abandonner*
glass, s. *verre* (m.)
glove, s. *gant* (m.)
go, v.int. *aller*; go out, *sortir*
God, s. *Dieu* (m.)
good, adj. *bon, bonne*
goods, s. *marchandises* (fem. pl.)
goose, s. *oie* (f.)
government, s. *gouvernement* (m.)
grammar, s. *grammaire* (f.)
grandfather, s. *grand-père, aïeul* (m.)
grape, s. *raisin* (m.)
grass, s. *herbe* (f.)
grateful, adj. *reconnaissant*
great, adj. *grand*
greatness, s. *grandeur* (f.)
Greek, adj. *grec, grecque*
grief, s. *chagrin* (m.)
grind, v.t. *moudre*, (a knife) *émoudre*
grow, v.int. *croître*
guilty, s. and adj. *coupable*
guinea, s. *guinée* (f.)
gun, s. *fusil* (m.)

H

Hand, s. *main* (f.)
hang, v.t. and int. *pendre*, (up) *suspendre*
happen, v.int. *arriver*
happiness, s. *bonheur* (m.)
happy, adj. *heureux, -se*
haste, s. *hâte* (f.), to make haste, *se hâter*
hasty, adj. *emporté*
hat, s. *chapeau* (m.)
hate, v.t. *haïr*
he, pr.pers. *il*; *lui*; *celui*
health, s. *santé* (f.)
hear, v.t. *entendre*
heart, s. *cœur* (m.)
heat, s. *chaleur* (f.)
heaven, s. *ciel* (m.)
heavy, adj. *pesant, lourd*
her, pr.pers. *elle, la, lui, à elle*: (adj.) *son, sa, ses*
here, adv. *ici*
hers, pr.poss. *le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes*; *à elle, d'elle*
him, pr.pers. *le, lui, celui*; himself, *se, lui-même, lui*
his, adj.poss. *son, sc, ses*
his, pr.poss. *le sien, la sienne*; *les siens, les siennes*; *à lui, de lui*
history, s. *histoire* (f.)
holiday, s. *congé* (m.)
honest, adj. *honnête*
honourably, adv. *honorablement*
hope, s. *espérance* (f.)
horse, s. *cheval* (m.)
house, s. *maison* (f.)
how, adv. *comment*; how much, *combien*
human, adj. *humain*
hundred, adj.num. *cent*
hungry, adj. *affamé*; to be—, *avoir faim*
hurt, v.t. *blesser*
hypocrite, s. *hypocrite* (m.)

I

I, pr.pers. *je, moi* (m.f.)
ice, s. *glace* (f.)
idea, s. *idée* (f.)
if, conj. *si*
ill, adj. *malade*
immediately, adv. *immédiatement*
importance, s. *importance* (f.)
impossible, adj. *impossible*
in, pr. *dans, en, à*
inconsiderate, adj. *indiscret*
industrious, adj. *laborieux*
infirm, adj. *infirme*
infirmity, s. *infirmité* (f.)
infringe, v.t. *enfreindre*
inhabit, v.t. *habiter*
inkstand, s. *encrier* (m.)
insult, s. *insulte* (f.)
interest, s. *intérêt* (m.)
intrenchment, s. *retranchement* (m.)
invade, v.t. *envahir*
it, pr.nom. *il, elle*; (acc.) *le, la*: (dat.) *lui* (m.f.); (imp.) *il, ce*

J

January, s. *janvier* (m.)
jealous, adj. *jaloux, -se*
jewel, s. *bijou* (m.)
join, v.t. *joindre*
journal, s. *journal* (m.)
judge, s. *juge* (m.)
justice, s. *justice* (f.)

K

Keep, v.t. *garder, tenir, conserver*
kill, v.t. *tuer*
kind, adj. *bon, bonne*
kindness, s. *bonté* (f.)
king, s. *roi* (m.)
knife, s. *couteau* (m.)
know, v.t. *savoir, connaître*

L

Ladder, s. *échelle* (f.)
lady, s. *dame* (f.); young lady, *demoiselle* (f.)
lamp, s. *lampe* (f.)
landscape, s. *paysage* (m.)
large, adj. *grand*
last, adj. *dernier*
late, adj. *en retard*
lately, adv. *dernièrement*
laugh, v.int. *rire*;—at, *se moquer de*
law, s. *loi* (f.)

learned, adj. *instruit, savant*
lease, s. *bail* (m.), (pl.) *baux*
least, adj. *moindre, plus petit*
least, adv. *moins*; at least, *au moins, du moins*
leave, v.t. *laisser, quitter*
leg, s. (of mutton), *gigot* (m.)
legal, adj. *légal*
leisure, s. *loisir* (m.)
lemon, s. *citron* (m.)
less, adj. *moindre, plus petit*
less, adv. *moins*
lesson, s. *leçon* (f.)
letter, s. *lettre* (f.)
liable, adj. *sujet*
library, s. *bibliothèque* (f.); circulating library, *cabinet de lecture* (m.)
lie, v.int. *gésir*
like, v.tr. *aimer*
like, adj. *pareil, semblable, tel*; like master, like man, *tel maître, tel valet*
linen, s. *linge* (m.)
little, adj. *petit* (adv.) *peu*
ive, v.int. *vivre*; *demeurer*
long, adj. *long*; all day long, *toute la journée*
lose, v.t. *perdre*; to lose oneself, *s'égarer*
loss, s. *perte* (f)
love, v.t. *aimer*
loyal, adj. *loyal*
luck, s. *bonheur* (m.)

M

Machine, s. *machine* (f.)
magnificent, adj. *magnifique*
make, v.t. *faire*; to make happy, *rendre heureux*
man, s. *homme* (m.)
many, adv. *beaucoup* (*de*); *bien* (*des*); many a time, *maintes fois*
marriage, s. *mariage* (m.)
master, s. *maître* (m.)
mayor, s. *maire* (m.)
means, s. *moyen* (m.)
meat, s. *viande* (f.)
meet, v.t. *rencontrer*; (ref.) *se rencontrer*
meeting, s. *rencontre* (f.), *séance* (f.)
melt, v.t. *fondre*
mend, v.t. *réformer*
mention, v.t. *mentionner*
merchant, s. *marchand* (m.)
merit, s. *mérite* (m.)
merry, adj. *gai*
mild, adj. *doux*
milk, v.t. *traire*
mind, s. *esprit*; to make up one's mind, *se décider*
mine, pr.poss. *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes, à moi*
my, adj.poss. *mon, ma, mes*
minister, s. *ministre* (m.)
minute, s. *minute* (f.)
misfortune, s. *malheur* (m.)
mistake, s. *faute* (f.): *erreur* (f.); to make a mistake, *se tromper*
moderate, adj. *modéré*
money, s. *argent* (m.)
month, s. *mois* (m.)
moral, adj. *moral*
more, adv. *plus*
morning, s. *matin* (m.)
morrow, s. *demain; le lendemain;* (adv.) tomorrow, *demain*
mother, s. *mère* (f.)
mouse, s. *souris* (f.)
move, v.t. *mouvoir, émouvoir*
much, adv. *beaucoup* (*de*), *bien* (*du*); too much, *trop*
murder, v.t. *massacrer*
museum, s. *musée* (m.)
music, s. *musique* (f.)
must, v.n.def. *falloir*
mutton, s. *mouton* (m.)

N

Nation, s. *nation* (f.)
nature, s. *nature* (f.)
near, prep. *près de*
necessary, adj. *nécessaire*; to be necessary, *falloir*
needle, s. *aiguille* (f.)
neglect, v.t. *négliger*
negotiate, v.t. *négocier*
neither, adj. and pr. *ni l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une ni l'autre*
neither, conj. *ni*
never, adv. *ne . . . . jamais*
new, adj. *neuf, -ve, nouveau, nouvel, -le*
news, s. *nouvelle* (f.)
no, adj. *ne pas . . . de, nul, ne . . . aucun, pas un, ne . . . pas* or *point*
no, adv. *non, ne . . . pas*
none, pr. pers. *nul, aucun, pas un, personne ne*
nor, conj. *ni*
nosegay, s. *bouquet* (m.)
not, adv. *ne . . . pas, ne . . . point, non, pas*
note, s. *billet* (m.)
nothing, s. and pr. *rien*; good-for-nothing, *bon à rien*
notice, v.t. *remarquer*
nut, s. *noisette* (f.)

O

Oar, s. *rame* (f.)
obedient, adj. *obéissant*
obey, v.int. *obéir*
oblige, v.t. *obliger*
observe, v.t. *observer*
obstinate, adj. *obstiné*
obstinately, adv. *opiniâtrément*
obtain, v.t. *obtenir*
of, pr. *de*
offence, s. *offense* (f.)
offend, v.t. *offenser*; to be offended, *s'offenser*

offensive, adj. *offensant*
offer, s. *offre* (f.)
office, s. *bureau* (m.)
officer, s. *officier* (m.)
often, adv. *souvent*
old, adj. *vieux, vieil, vieille, ancien, ancienne*; old man, *vieillard*, s.m.
on, pr. *sur*
one, adj. and s. *un*, (pr.) *on, se, soi, en*
open, v.t. *ouvrir*; open again, *rouvrir*; half-open, *entr'ouvrir*
opinion, s. *opinion* (f.)
orchard, s. *verger* (m.)
order, v.t. *commander*
original, adj. *original*
other, pr.ind. *autre*, pl. *autres, d'autres, autrui*
other, adj. *autre*
our, adj.poss. *notre, nos*
ours, pr.poss. *le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres, à nous*
ourselves, pr.pl. *nous-mêmes, nous*
out, prep. *hors*
over, prep. *sur*
owe, v.t. *devoir*; owe again, *redevoir*
owl, s. *hibou* (m.)
own, adj. *propre*

P

Pair, s. *paire* (f.)
palace, s. *palais* (m.)
paper, s. *papier* (m.)
pardon, v.t. *pardonner* (*à*)
parents, s. *parents* (m.pl.)
Paris, s.p. *Paris* (m.)
parish, s. *paroisse* (f.)
parish, adj. *paroissial, communal*; parish school, *école communale*
park, s. *parc* (m.)
party, s. *parti* (m.)
pass, v.int. *passer*
past, prep. *au delà de*; it is past six, *il est six heures passées*; half-past two, *deux heures et demie*
path, s. *chemin* (m.)
patient, s. *malade* (m.f.)
pear, s. *poire* (f.)
pen, s. *plume* (f.)
penknife, s. *canif* (m.)
perceive, v.t. *apercevoir* (act.), *s'apercevoir de* (ref.)
perform, v.t. *s'acquitter de*
perish, v.int. *périr*
perseverance, s. *persévérance* (f.)
person, s. *personne* (f.)
pickle, v.t. *confire*
picture, s. *tableau* (m.)
piece, s. *morceau* (m.)
pistol, s. *pistolet* (m.)
pity, v.t. *plaindre*
place, s. *place* (f.)
plan, s. *plan* (m.)
play, v.int. *jouer*
play, s. *comédie* (f.)
please, v.int. *plaire*
pleased, adj. *content*
pleasure, s. *plaisir* (m.)
plot, s. *complot* (m.)
poem, s. *poème* (m.)
poet, s. *poète* (m.)
polish, v.t. *polir*
politeness, s. *politesse* (f.)
pond, s. *étang* (m.)
poor, adj. *pauvre*; the poor, *les pauvres* (m.)
pope, s. *pape* (m.); Pope Sixtus the Fifth, *le Pape Sixte-Quint*
possession, s. *possession* (f.); to take possession, *s'emparer de*
postpone, v.t. *différer*
praise, v.t. *louer*
prefer, v.t. *préférer*
pretend, v.t. *feindre*
pretty, adj. *joli*
prevail v.int. *prévaloir*
priest, s. *prêtre* (m.)
princess, s. *princesse* (f.)
principal, adj. *principal*
print, v.t. *imprimer*
printer, s. *imprimeur* (m.)
proposal, s. *proposition* (f.)
propose, v.t. *proposer*
protect, v.t. *protéger*
protest, s. *protestant* (m.)
provide, v.int. *pourvoir* (for . . . *à*)
provided, conj. *pourvu que*
prudent, adj. *prudent*
punish, v.t. *punir*
punishment s. *punition* (f.)
pupil, s. *élève* (m.)
put, v.t. *placer, mettre*; put out, *éteindre*

Q

Quality, s. *qualité* (f.)
queen, s. *reine* (f.)
question, s. *question* (f.)
quiet, adj. *tranquille*
quire, s. *main* (f.)
quite, adv. *tout à fait, tout, -e*

R

Railway, s. *chemin de fer* (m.)
rain, v.imp. *pleuvoir*
read, v.t. *lire* (past part. *lu*)
ready, adj. *prêt*
reason, s. *raison* (f.)
rebel, s. *rebelle* (m.)
recast, v.t. *refondre*
receive, v.t. *recevoir*
recompense, v.t. *récompenser*
red, adj. *rouge*; red (head of) hair, *chevelure rousse*
reflect, v.int. (on), *réfléchir* (*à*)

regularly, adv. *régulièrement*
reign, s. *règne* (m.)
rejoice, v.int. *se réjouir* (*de*)
relate, v.t. *raconter*
remain, v.int. *rester*
remember, v. *se rappeler*, *se souvenir de*
reputation, s. *réputation* (f.)
request, v.t. *requérir*
resell, v.t. *revendre*
reserve, v.t. *réserver*
resolve, v.t. *résoudre*
resound, v.int. *retentir*
retract, v.t. *se rétracter*
return, v.t. *rendre*
review, s. *revue* (f.)
reward, s. *récompense* (f.)
rich, adj. *riche*
ridiculous, adj. *ridicule*
right, adj. *juste*
ripe, adj. *mûr*
rise, v.int. (in price), *enchérir*
river, s. *rivière* (f.)
roast, v.t. *rôtir*
room, s. *salle* (f.), *chambre* (f.)
root, s. *racine* (f.)
rope, s. *corde* (f.)
royal, adj. *royal*
ruddy, adj. *rouge*, *vermeil*, *le*
rule, s. *règle* (f.)
rumour, s. *bruit* (m.)
rush, v.int. *se précipiter*

S

Sail, v.i. *mettre à la voile*, *appareiller*, *partir*
sailor, s. *marin* (m.)
same, adj. *même*
sarcastic, adj. *moqueur*, *-se*
satisfy, v.t. *satisfaire* (irr.)
say, v.t. *dire* (p. 137)
scarf, s. *écharpe* (f.)
scatter, v.t. *répandre*
school, s. *école* (f.)
schoolmaster, s. *maître d'école* (m.)
scold, v.t. *gronder*
scribbler, s. *écrivassier* (m.)
seal, v.t. *cacheter*
see, v.t. *voir* (irr.)
seem, v.int. *paraître* (irr.)
sell, v.t. *vendre*
send, v.t. *envoyer*
sense, s. *sentiment* (m.)
servant, s. *domestique* (m.)
serve, v.t. *servir* (irr.)
several, adj. ind. *plusieurs*
severely, adv. *sévèrement*
sew, v.t. (on), *coudre* (*à*)
share, s. *part* (f.), *action* (f.)
she, pr.pers.f. *elle*
shear, v.t. *tondre*
sheep, s. *brebis* (f.)
shilling, s. *shilling* (m.)
ship, s. *vaisseau* (m.)
shirt, s. *chemise* (f.)
shoe, s. *soulier* (m.)
shore, s. *rivage* (m.)
show, v.t. *montrer*
shut, v.t. *fermer*
shutter, s. *volet* (m.)
sincere, adj. *sincère*
sing, v.t. *chanter*
sister, s. *sœur* (f.)
sit, v.int. sit down, *s'asseoir*
situation, s. *situation* (f.)
skate, s. *patin* (m.)
slave, s. *esclave* (m.f.)
sleep, v.int. *dormir* (irr.)
small, adj. *petit*
smile, v.int. *sourire*
smooth, v.t. *aplanir*
so, adv. *aussi*; so . . . (as), *aussi*, *si*; *autant*, *tant* (*que*)
society, s. *société* (f.)
soften, v.t. *adoucir*
soldier, s. *soldat* (m.)
some, art. *du*, *de la*, *des*
some, adj. *quelque*
some, pr. *quelques-uns*, *quelques-unes*, *en*
son, s. *fils* (m)
sorrowful, adj. *chagrin*
sound, adj. a sound advice, *un avis salutaire*
spacious, adj. *spacieux*, *-se*
Spain, s.p. *l'Espagne* (f.)
speak, v.t. and int. *parler*
speech, s. *discours* (m.)
spend, v.t. *dépenser*
splendour, s. *splendeur* (f.)
split, v.t. *fendre*
sport, s. *jeu* (m.)
spring, s. *ressort* (m.)
spur, s. *éperon* (m.)
stain, s. *tache* (f.)
staircase, s. *escalier* (m.)
start, v.int. *tressaillir* (with . . . *de*)
steady, adj. *posé*
steal, v.t. *voler*, — away (v.int.) *s'esquiver*
steeple, s. *clocher* (m.)
stocking, s. *bas* (m.)
street, s. *rue* (f.)
strengthen, v.t. *affermir*, *fortifier*
stretch, v.t. *étendre*
strike, v.t. *atteindre*
studious, adj. *studieux*, *-se*
stupid, adj. *stupide*
subscribe, v.int. *s'abonner*
succeed, v.int. *réussir*
success, s. *succès* (m.)
such, adj. *tel*, *telle*
suddenly, adv. *soudainement*, *tout à coup*
suffer, v.t. *souffrir*
sully, v.t. *ternir*
sum, s. *somme* (f.)
supply, v.t. *fournir*
suppose, v.t. *supposer*
supreme, adj. *suprême*
surprised, pr. and adj. *surpris* (at . . . *de*)
suspect, v.t. *soupçonner*
suspend, v.t. *suspendre*
sweep, v.t. *balayer*
sweet, adj. *doux*, *douce*
sword, s. *épée* (f.)

T

Table, s. *table* (f.)
take, v.t. *prendre*; take back, *reprendre*; (somebody in a carriage) *reconduire*
talent, s. *talent* (m.)
tax, s. *impôt* (m.)
tea, s. *thé* (m.)
tea-pot, s. *théière* (f.)
tear, v.t. *déchirer*
tear, s. *larme* (f.)
tedious, adj. *ennuyeux, -se*
telegram, s. *télégramme* (m.)
tell, v.t. *dire*
temper, s. *caractère* (m.)
than, conj. *que, de*
thanks, s. *remercîment* (m.)
that, adj. dem. *ce, cet, cette, ces*
that, pr. dem. *celui-là, celle-là, cela, ça, le*
that, pr.rel. *qui*; *que*; *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*
that, conj. *que, afin que*; in order that, *afin que*
the, art. *le, la, les*
their, adj. poss. *leur, leurs*
theirs, pr. poss. *le leur, la leur, les leurs, à eux, à elles*
themselves, pr. pers. *se, eux - mêmes, elles - mêmes, mêmes*
there, adv. *là, y*
they, pr.pers. (subj.) *ils, elles*; (when alone) *eux, elles*; they who, *ceux* (m.) *celles* (f.) *qui*
thick, adj. *épais, épaisse*
thine, pr.pers. *le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes, à toi*
thing, s. *chose* (f.): everything, *tout*
think, v.t. and int. *croire, penser*
this, adj. dem. *ce, cet* (m.) *cette* (f.)
thoroughly, adv. *complètement*
thou, pr.pers. *tu, toi*
thought, s. *pensée* (f); to collect one's thoughts, *se recueillir*
threaten, v.t. *menacer*
three, adj. num. *trois*
through, prep. *à travers*
thunder, s. *tonnerre* (m.)
thunderstorm, s. *orage* (m.)
thy, adj.poss. *ton, ta, tes*
ticket, s. *billet* (m.)
tiger, s. *tigre* (m.)
time, s. *temps* (m.)
timid, adj. *timide*
to, prep. *à*
together, adv. *ensemble*
too, adv. *trop*
torment, v.t. *tourmenter*; torment oneself, *se tourmenter*
towards, prep. *envers, vers*
town, s. *ville* (f.)
toy, s. *joujou* (m.)
train, s. *train* (m.)
translate, v.t. *traduire*
treachery, s. *trahison* (f.)
treatise, s. *traité* (m.)
tree, s. *arbre* (m.)
tribute, s. *tribut* (m.)
trifling, adj. *léger*
troop, s. *troupe* (f.)
trunk, s. *malle* (f.), (of a tree), (m.) *tronc*
trust, v.t. *se fier à*
truth, s. *vérité* (f.)
tune (in), loc. *juste*
Turkish, adj. *turc, turque*
two, adj.num. *deux*

U

Undeceive, v.t. *détromper*; undeceive oneself, *se détromper*
under, prep. *sous*
undergo, v.t. *subir*
understand, v.t. *comprendre*
undertaking, s. *entreprise* (f.)
unfeeling, adj. *insensible*
unfurnish, v.t. *dégarnir*
ungrateful, adj. *ingrat*
unless, conj. *à moins que*
unpolite, adj. *impoli*
unravel, v.t. *débrouiller*
unwell, adj. *indisposé, souffrant*
use, s. *usage* (m.)
useful, adj. *utile*
uselessly, adv. *en vain, inutilement*

V

Vegetable, s. *légume* (m.)
very, adv. *très*
village, s. *village* (m.)
vinegar, s. *vinaigre* (m.)
virtuous, adj. *vertueux, -se*
visit, v.t. *visiter*
voice, s. *voix* (f.)

W

Wait, v. *attendre*
walk, v.int. *marcher*
walking, s. *marche* (f.) *promenade* (f.); walking-stick, s. *canne* (f.)
want, s. *besoin* (m.)
warm (a bed), v.t. *bassiner (un lit)*
warn, v.t. *avertir*
warrior, s. *guerrier* (m.)
watch, s. *montre* (f.)
watch, v. *surveiller*
water, s. *eau* (f.)
water, v.t. *arroser*
way, s. *chemin* (m.)
we, pr.pers. *nous*
weak, adj. *faible*
week, s. *semaine* (f.)
weep, v.t. *pleurer*
well, adv. *bien*

what, pr.rel. *ce qui, ce que, qui, que*
what, pr.adj. *quel*
what, pr.int. *que, quoi*
what? adj.int. *quel, lequel?*
when, adv. *quand*
whence, adv. *d'où*
whereas, conj. *tandis que*
whether, conj. *si*; *soit que . . . ou*; *que . . . ou*
which, pr.rel. 1. *qui, que, lequel, laquelle*; 2. *ce qui, ce que*; 3. (int.) *qui, lequel, laquelle?* 4. (adj.) *ce, cette, etc.*
whimsical, adj. *capricieux, -se*
whip, s. *fouet* (m.)
who, pr.pers. 1. *qui, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*; 2. *quel*; 3. (int.) *qui?* 4. *celui qui*
whoever, pr.ind. *quiconque*
whom, pr.obj. *que, qui,* (interr.) *qui?*
wicked, adj. *méchant*
wide, adj. *large*
wilderness, s. *désert* (m.)
win, v.t. *gagner*
window, s. *fenêtre* (f.)
wine, s. *vin* (m.)
wing, s. *aile* (f.)
wise, adj. *sage*
wish, v.t. *désirer*
with, prep. *avec*
withdraw, v.t. *se dédire de,* v.int. *se retirer*
wither v.int. *flétrir*
without, pr. *sans*
woman, s. *femme* (f.)
wonderful, adj. *merveilleux, -se*
wonderfully adv. *merveilleusement*
wood, s. *bois* (m.)
word, s. *parole* (f.)
work, s. *ouvrage, travail*; work-box, s. *boîte* (f.) *à ouvrage*
work, v.t. *travailler*
worship, v.t. *adorer*
worth (to be), *valoir* (v.t.)
wound, v.t. *blesser*
wring, v.t. *tordre*
write, v.t. *écrire*

Y

Year, s. *an* (m.), *année* (f.)
yesterday, adv. *hier*
yet, adv. *encore*
yield, v.int. *céder, se rendre (à)*
you, pr.pers. *vous*
young, adj. *jeune*
your, adj.poss. *votre, vos*
yours, pr.poss. *le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres, à vous*
yourself, pr.pers. *vous-même, vous*

Z

Zeal, s. *zèle* (m.)

Printed by T. and A. Constable, Printers to Her Majesty,
at the Edinburgh University Press.

Brachet's Public School Elementary French Grammar.

WITH EXERCISES

By **A. BRACHET**, Lauréat de l'Académie française.

And adapted for English Schools by the late

Rev. P. H. E. BRETTE, B.D., & GUSTAVE MASSON, B.A.,
Officiers d'Académie, etc.

New and Revised Edition. Complete in 1 vol. Cloth.
Price 2s. 6d., or

Part I.—ACCIDENCE. With Examination Questions and Exercises. Cloth. 214 pages, small 8vo. With a complete French-English and English-French Vocabulary. *Price* 1*s.* 6*d.*

Part II.—SYNTAX. With Examination Questions and Exercises, and a complete French-English and English-French Vocabulary. *Price* 1*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO THE EXERCISES. For Teachers only. Price 1s. 6d.

A SUPPLEMENTARY SERIES OF EXERCISES,

Vol. I.—ACCIDENCE. With a Supplement to Grammar and a Vocabulary to the Exercises. Cloth. *Price* 1*s.*

Vol. II.—SYNTAX. Cloth. *Price* 1*s.*

KEY TO THE ACCIDENCE. Price 2s. KEY TO THE SYNTAX. Price 2s.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"A good school-book. The type is as clear as the arrangement."—*Athenæum*, Jan. 6, 1877.

"We are not astonished to hear that it has met with the most flattering reception."—*School Board Chronicle*, March 10, 1877.

"We have no hesitation in stating our opinion that no more useful or practical introduction to the French language has been published than this."—*Public Opinion*, March 24, 1877.

"England is fortunate in the services of a small knot of French Masters like MM. Masson and Brette, who have, alike by their teaching and their school-books, done much for the scientific study of the language and literature of France. After successfully introducing into English form the *Public School French Grammar*, in which M. Littré's researches are happily applied by M. Brachet so as to show the relation of modern French to Latin, MM. Brette and Masson here translate and adapt the Petite or Elementary French Grammar. That has at once proved as popular as the more elaborate treatise."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*, March 20, 1877.

"Of this excellent school series we have before us the *Public School Elementary French Grammar*—(1) Accidence and (2) Syntax. Brachet's work is simply beyond comparison with any other of its class; and its scientific character is not sacrificed in the very judicious adaptation which has made it available for English students.—*There is no better elementary French Grammar, whether for boys or for girls.*"—*Hereford Times*, April 11, 1887.

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL
FRENCH GRAMMAR

Giving the latest Results of Modern Philology, and based upon the "Nouvelle Grammaire Française" of

AUGUSTE BRACHET,

Lauréat de l'Académie française et de l'Academie des Inscriptions.

Part I.—ACCIDENCE

New Edition, revised and enlarged

BY

REV. P. H. ERNEST BRETTE, B.D.,
of Christ's Hospital, London,

GUSTAVE MASSON, B.A.,
of Harrow School,
Officiers d'Académie;

H. C. LEVANDER, M.A.,
of University College School, London,

AND

ELPHÈGE JANAU,
Assistant French Master, Christ's Hospital, London.

1 vol. Small 8vo. 464 Pages. Cloth. Price 3s. 6d.

EXERCISES.

ACCIDENCE.—Part I. Price 1s. 6d.

KEY TO THE EXERCISES ON ACCIDENCE, by E. JANAU.
For Teachers only. Cloth. Price 1*s.* 6*d.*

OPINIONS.

"The best Grammar of the French language that has been published in England."—PROFESSOR ATTWELL.

"It is certainly the fullest and most elaborate, and repeated revision seems to have made it one of the most accurate and scholarly of all English-French grammars—a class of book not too frequently distinguished by these qualities."—*Saturday Review*, July 28, 1883.

"We have nothing but praise for the new edition of this excellent Grammar, which gives, as it professes to do, all the latest results of modern philology, and which is remarkably clear and attractive in its arrangement."—*The Tablet*, June 23, 1883.

"I have much pleasure in being able to compliment you on the publication of such an excellent work. The historical portion of the work is clearly brought out, and contains much valuable information. To all those accustomed to the preparation of our higher Examinations such information is of the greatest importance. The transition from the Latin to the French of the present day is so clearly shown, that it reads more like a pleasing story than an exposition of grammar. The author has a happy knack of putting his details in a most interesting form; and he has certainly succeeded in proving that French Grammar is not so repulsive as some of the old cut-and-dried books make it. . . ."—F. GARSIDE, M.A., *Head Master, St. Luke's Middle Class School, Torquay.*

"C'est bien certainement l'ouvrage le plus complet et le plus sérieux de ce genre écrit en anglais."—DR. L. PARROT, *Uppingham School.*

"*The last and most scientific French Grammar we know has just been published by* Hachette & Co. The Etymology and the Syntax are specially good, and the entire volume is admirable."—*The Freeman.*

"Like the great work on whose lines it is built, the *Public School Latin Grammar*, it not merely gives the latest outcome of philological research, but it reduces it to a system with definite simple rules and principles, for the easy understanding of the student, and for ready application in the general reading of his authors."—*The Standard*, February 15, 1876.

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

Publishers and Foreign Booksellers.

LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.

HACHETTE'S NEW SERIES OF LATIN CLASSICS.

Compiled from the best texts available, and edited for Schools and Candidates preparing for Examinations.

Cæsar, De Bello Gallico. Edited by J. F. DAVIS, D.Lit., M.A., (Lond.); *Assistant Examiner in the University of London; Examiner of Schools for the same University, etc.* :—

Book I. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 1s. 6d.
Books II. and III. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. (*In preparation*).
* Book IV. With Notes, Vocabulary and Map. 1s. 6d.
* Book IV. With Vocabulary only. 9d
* Books IV. and V. (in one vol.). With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 2s.
* Books IV. and V. (in one vol.). With Vocabulary and Map only. 1s. 6d.
* Book V. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 1s. 6d.
Book V. With Vocabulary only. 9d.
Books V. and VI. (in one vol.). With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 2s.
Book VI. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Map. 1s. 6d.
Book VII. With Vocabulary. 9d.

* *The Latin-English Vocabularies in the above Latin Classics include numerous Idiomatic Phrases and Notes on personal and geographical Names. The Vocabularies to the Volumes indicated by asterisks can likewise be had separately without the Text. Price, each, in Paper Covers, 6d.; or the Vocabularies to Books IV. and V. of* Cæsar, "De Bello Gallico," *together in one Volume, Paper Cover 9d.*

Cicero, Catiline. Edited with Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, etc., by Rev. RALPH HARVEY, M.A. (Lond.); *Head Master of Cork Grammar School*:—

Vol. I. (Books I. and II.) *Shortly.* Vol. II. (Books III. and IV.) *Shortly.*

Cicero, Pro Lege Manilia. Edited with Introduction, Notes, a full Analysis, Index of Proper Names, and Vocabulary, by the Rev. RALPH HARVEY, M.A. (Lond.), etc. Cloth. 2s.

"The 'Pro Lege Manilia' is here, in Mr. Harvey's beautifully printed little volume, treated with the greatest scholastic ease, fulness, and judgment. The copious Notes make every doubtful point plain and supply all necessary links of information. There could not possibly be a better text-book, nor one more complete for the young scholar's purpose."—*Irish Times.*

Ovid, Metamorphoses. Book XIII. With Introduction, Notes, Index of Proper Names, and Vocabulary, by the Rev. RALPH HARVEY, M.A. (Lond.); *Head Master of Cork Grammar School.* Cloth. 2s.

"The text is elegantly printed. The Notes are those of a scholar who thoroughly appreciates the difficulties that lie in the path of the student; and the editing is most wholesome and careful."—*Irish Times.*

"Could hardly be improved upon. The notes are sound and are judiciously selected, considerable help being given in translation to obviate the use of cribs. An excellent vocabulary and a copious index of proper names add to the value of the book."—*Freeman's Journal.*

Ovid, Metamorphoses. Book XIV. With Life of the Author, Notes, Vocabulary, etc., by the Rev. RALPH HARVEY, M.A. 2s.

Vergil, Æneid. Edited by J. F. DAVIS, D.Lit., M.A. (Lond.), etc. :—

Book V. With Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, and brief Rules on Quantity. 1s. 6d.
Book IX. With Vocabulary. 9d.
The Vocabulary to Book IX. separately, 6d.

HACHETTE'S Catalogue with full particulars of above, free on application.

HACHETTE AND COMPANY

Publishers and Foreign Booksellers,

LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.

Hachette's New Series of German Authors.

(The Editors' Names are placed in Parenthesis.)

"The well-known firm of Hachette and Company, who have done so much to facilitate the study of French, are by their German publications rivalling the success they had long ago attained in regard to French. When one has followed by easy degrees the various steps from simple sentences to the glory of continuous prose he is naturally anxious that the reading should entertain him, as well as add to his knowledge No better books could be devised for such a purpose than some of those issued by Hachette!"—*Freeman's Journal.*

All volumes bound in Cloth unless otherwise indicated.

	s.	d.
*Benedix. Dr. Wespe. (Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A.) Paper cover	0	9
*Freytag. Die Journalisten. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2	6
*Goethe. Faust. (A. J. Ulrich) Paper cover	1	0
*Goethe. Götz von Berlichingen. (A. J. Ulrich) Paper cover	1	0
Goethe. Hermann und Dorothea. (Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A.) Paper cover	0	9
*Goethe. Iphigenie auf Tauris. (Dr. A. Weiss, M.A.)	2	0
Goethe. Prosa. Extracts from the 'Italienische Reise,' 'Aus meinem Leben' 'Götz von Berlichingen, etc., etc. (Dr. Buchheim, F.C.P.)	2	6
*Grimm. Märchen. (First Series.) 22 Popular Fairy Tales. (E. L. Naftel)	1	6
*Grimm. Märchen. (Second Series.) 5 Popular Fairy Tales. (Naftel and Bode.) Paper cover	1	0
*Gutzkow. Zopf und Schwert. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2	6
*Hackländer. Der geheime Agent. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2	0
*Hauff. Das Bild des Kaisers. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2	0
*Hauff. Märchen: Das Wirtshaus im Spessart. (Dr. J. F Davis, M.A.)	2	6
*Hauff. Märchen: Die Karawane. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2	6
*Klee. Die deutschen Heldensagen: 1. Hagen und Hilde. 2. Gudrun. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2	6
Kotzebue. Der gerade Weg der beste. (Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A.) Paper cover	0	9
Kotzebue. Die deutschen Kleinstädter. (E. L. Naftel.) Paper cover	0	9
*Lessing. Minna von Barnhelm. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2	0
*Lessing. Fables in Prose and Verse. (E. L. Naftel.)	1	6
*Lessing und Gellert. Fabeln und Erzählungen. (E. L. Naftel)	1	6
*Lessing. Nathan der Weise. (A. J. Ulrich). Paper cover	1	0
*Niebuhr. Heroen-Geschichten. (A. Voegelin, M.A.)	2	0
*Riehl. Kulturgeschichtliche Novellen. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2	6
*Riehl. Die Ganerben; Die Gerechtigkeit Gottes. (Dr. J. F. Davis, M.A.)	2	0
Schiller. Der Geisterseher. (Rev. C. Merk, M.A., Ph.D.)	2	6
*Schiller. Gustav Adolf in Deutschland, 1630-1632. (From 'History of the Thirty Years War.') (Dr. Bernhardt.)	2	0
*Schiller. Jungfrau von Orleans. (A. J. Ulrich). Paper cover	0	9
Schiller. Maria Stuart. (E. L. Naftel.) Paper cover	0	9
*Schiller. Der Neffe als Onkel. (Dr. L. Hirsch)	1	6
*Schiller. Der Neffe als Onkel. (A. J. Ulrich).	0	9
Schiller. Der Parasit. (Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A.) Paper cover	0	9
Schiller. Prosa. Extracts from 'Der Geisterseher,' 'Der Abfall der Niederlande,' 'Der dreissigjährige Krieg,' 'Scenen aus Fresco, etc. (Dr. Buchheim, F.C.P.)	2	6
*Schiller. Wallenstein's Tod. (A. J. Ulrich). Paper cover	0	9
Schiller. Wilhelm Tell. (E. L. Naftel.) Paper cover	0	9
*Schiller. Wilhelm Tell. (A. J. Ulrich). Paper cover	0	9
*Zschokke. Goldmacherdorf. G. Hein)	2	6

** Volumes indicated by Asterisks have German-English Vocabularies appended.*

Hachette's German Authors and Readers—*Continued.*

(*The Editors' names are placed in Parenthesis.*)

	s.	d.
***Leading Events of Modern Warfare.** Advanced German Readings, selected from Standard Authors, for Army Candidates and others (Dr. A. Weiss.)	2	6
***Half-Hours with Modern German Authors,** including typical extracts from popular Writers of the Day. Choice pieces specially selected to accustom Candidates and others to every kind of style. (Dr. A. Weiss.)		
Part I.—52 Selections. Crown 8vo.	1	6
Part II.—55 Selections. Crown 8vo.	1	6
Selections in Prose and Verse from German Authors of the Day, for Translation at Sight. For the use of Intermediate and Advanced Pupils. (Dr. A. Weiss).		
Part I.—64 pages. Crown 8vo. Paper Cover	1	0
Part II.—72 pages. Crown 8vo. Paper Cover	1	0
Contains the same pieces as *Half-Hours with Modern German Authors* (see above), but without Vocabulary, or any other 'Aid.'		

Hachette's German Readers for Elementary and Intermediate Classes.

	s.	d.
***The Children's Own German Book.** Amusing Stories in Prose for Beginners. With Vocabulary. (Dr. A. L. Meissner, M.A.)	1	6
The First German Reader. Episodes from German History, Short Stories, Legends, etc. (Dr. A. L. Meissner, M.A.)	1	6
Pictures of German Life (Sequel to 'First German Reader'). From Contemporary Authors, including Auerbach, Freytag, Riehl, Wichert, etc. etc. (Dr. A. L. Meissner, M.A.)	1	6
***Practical German Readings for Beginners.** Simply-told Fables, Anecdotes, etc., introducing Matters of Every-day Life (House and School, Games, Animals, Pictures from Nature), Verses, etc., with Special List of Words to each Extract in the First Part, Footnotes, Questions, and Vocabulary. (L. Happé.)	2	6
***Practical German Readings—Intermediate and Advanced.** Scenes from Nature, Descriptive Sketches and Object Lessons, Geographical Pictures, Travels, Tales from History, Biographies, and Special Selections from Authors who have written for young people, including the Brothers Grimm, Hebel, Ramshorn, Schmidt, Herder and Liebeskind. Carefully graduated. (L. Happé.)	3	6
***Lust und Lehre.** A Progressive German Reader in Prose and Poetry. With Notes and Vocabulary. (O. Schlapp.)	1	6
Deutsche Märchen. Popular Tales of Moderate Difficulty, combining the Colloquial Forms of Every-day Speech and the Higher Forms of a Polished Style. With Notes. (M. Homann.)	2	0
***Elementary German Readers for Young Beginners.** Arranged progressively in three Booklets. (A. U. James).		
*Booklet I.—Short Passages in German, with Simple English Sentences for re-translation, etc. Paper Cover	0	3
*Booklet II.—Short Passages in German in Prose and Verse, with English Sentences for re-translation, etc. Paper Cover	0	3
*Booklet III.—**Andersen's Was der Mond sah,** with English Sentences for re-translation, etc. Paper Cover	0	3
Each Booklet contains a few passages *only* so as to permit of the text being easily mastered in a short time. This gives encouragement and confidence—indispensable elements in the early stages of acquiring a difficult language.		

* *The Volumes indicated by Asterisks* (*) *have German-English Vocabularies appended.*